

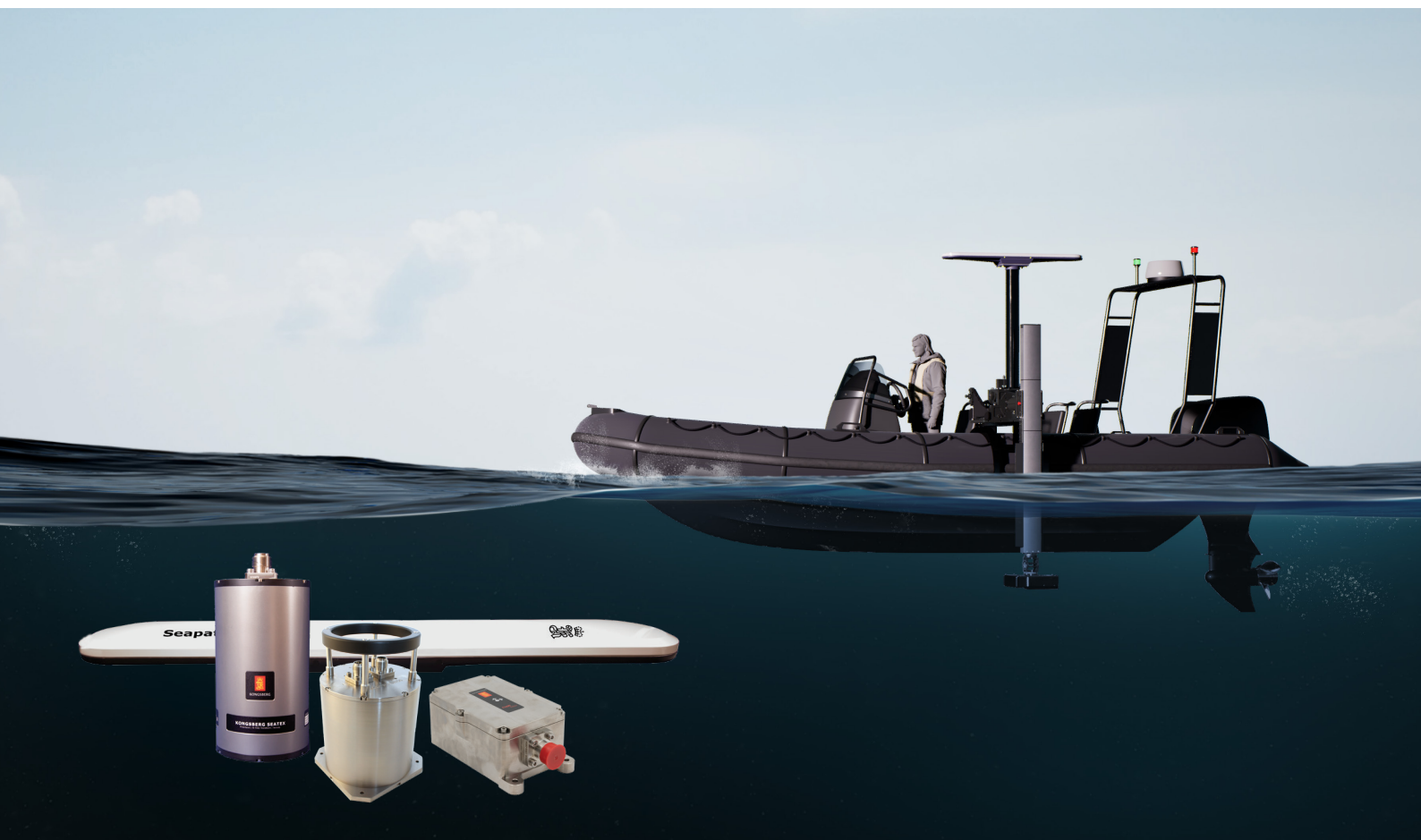


KONGSBERG

Installation manual

Seapath[®] 130-series

Compact GNSS aided Inertial Navigation System



COMPANY SHARED



KONGSBERG

Seapath 130
Compact GNSS aided Inertial Navigation
System
Installation manual

110-0099522/A

July 2025 © Kongsberg Discovery AS

Document history

Document number: 110-0099522 / Revision A		
Rev. A	July 2025	First issue Seapath 130 and 130-R combined. Updated to correspond with Product software version 2.03.00. Installation of miniMRU is included.

Document information

- Product: Seapath 130
- Document: Installation manual
- Document part number: 110-0099522
- Revision: A

Copyright

The information contained in this document remains the sole property of Kongsberg Discovery AS. No part of this document may be copied or reproduced in any form or by any means, and the information contained within it is not to be communicated to a third party, without the prior written consent of Kongsberg Discovery AS.

Warning

The equipment to which this manual applies must only be used for the purpose for which it was designed. Improper use or maintenance may cause damage to the equipment and/or injury to personnel. You must be familiar with the contents of the appropriate manuals before attempting to operate or work on the equipment.

Kongsberg Discovery disclaims any responsibility for damage or injury caused by improper installation, use or maintenance of the equipment.

Disclaimer

Kongsberg Discovery AS endeavours to ensure that all information in this document is correct and fairly stated, but does not accept liability for any errors or omissions.

Support information

If you require maintenance or repair, contact Kongsberg Discovery's support organisation. You can contact us using the following address: support.seatex@kd.kongsberg.com. If you need information about our other products, visit <http://www.kongsberg.com/discovery>.

Table of contents

ABOUT THIS MANUAL.....	11
SEAPATH 130.....	13
System description.....	13
System diagram.....	16
Scope of supply.....	17
Main system units.....	18
Seapath 130 sensor unit.....	18
Motion Reference Unit (MRU) description.....	19
MRU subsea bottle description.....	19
MGC (Motion Sensor and Gyro Compass) description.....	20
miniMRU.....	20
Spider cable description.....	20
Product restrictions.....	21
Restrictions in export.....	21
Limited warranty.....	21
Restrictions in use.....	22
Using Seapath as NTP server.....	22
Network security.....	23
Support information.....	24
PREPARING THE INSTALLATION.....	25
Necessary tools and equipment.....	25
Inertial Measurement Unit transportation box.....	26
Drawings.....	26
Radio frequency authorisation.....	26
Personnel qualifications.....	27
Location of hardware units.....	27
Sensor Unit location.....	27
Inertial Measurement Unit (IMU) location.....	28
INSTALLATION.....	30
Terminating the cable inside the Sensor Unit.....	30
Mounting the Sensor Unit.....	32
Mounting the MRU subsea bottle.....	34

Mounting the MGC subsea bottle.....	36
Mounting the miniMRU subsea housing.....	38
Mounting miniMRU in subsea housing.....	39
Subsea bottle connectors and pin configuration.....	40
Installing the Seapath operator software.....	41
Uninstalling the Seapath operator software.....	42
CABLE LAYOUT AND INTERCONNECTIONS.....	43
Cable plan.....	43
Cabling for the Seapath 130 system.....	45
Pin layout for connectors.....	46
Ethernet connections.....	48
Communication interfaces.....	48
PPS signal output.....	49
DGNSS corrections from Fugro Seastar.....	49
Installation with Seapath 130 Junction Box.....	53
SURVEYING SENSORS ON VESSELS.....	60
About sensor survey.....	60
Vessel coordinate system.....	61
Determining the Sensor Unit position and orientation.....	62
Determining the MRU mounting orientation.....	64
Determining the MGC mounting orientation.....	67
Determining the miniMRU mounting orientation.....	69
Surveying the Sensor Unit.....	70
Surveying the MRU subsea bottle.....	70
Surveying the MGC subsea bottle.....	71
Surveying the miniMRU subsea housing.....	72
Determining the system coordinates.....	73
Survey accuracy values.....	75
PORTABLE HYDROGRAPHIC SYSTEM (PHS) INSTALLATION.....	76
About Portable Hydrographic System (PHS) installation.....	76
System diagram.....	77
Front interfaces Processing Unit.....	79
Interface cables to Portable Processing Unit.....	79
General Seapath configuration for PHS.....	84
Setting up Seapath for SIS version 4 users.....	87

Setting up Seapath for K-Controller users (SIS version 5).....	89
SETTING TO WORK.....	91
Setting to work summary.....	91
Applying power to the Seapath system.....	93
How the configuration of the system works.....	93
Entering the system configuration.....	93
NAV Engine Configuration description.....	94
Operator software configuration description.....	95
Changing system modes.....	96
Communication interface description.....	97
Using the Serial interface.....	99
Using the Ethernet interface.....	100
Required system configuration.....	101
Setting vessel dimensions and reference points.....	101
Entering antenna location parameters.....	104
Using Calibration Wizard to determine antenna parameters.....	106
Setting MRU location and mounting angles.....	111
Using Mounting Wizard to determine MRU mounting angles.....	112
Setting MGC location and mounting angles.....	115
Using Mounting Wizard to determine MGC mounting angles.....	117
Setting miniMRU location and mounting angles.....	119
Using Mounting Wizard to determine miniMRU mounting angles.....	121
Selecting heave filter options.....	124
Setting monitoring points.....	125
Setting up the Telegram out interface.....	129
Setting up the DGNSS correction link parameters.....	131
Changing the Sensor Unit IP address.....	132
Additional system configuration.....	133
Entering vessel identification parameters.....	134
Importing vessel shape from file.....	134
Selecting SBAS satellites.....	137
Enabling Fugro high precision services.....	138
Selecting heading input format from a gyro compass.....	139
Setting up the MGC as an inertial navigation system (INS).....	140
Setting up NTRIP client.....	142

Operator software configuration.....	145
Selecting the position of views in the display.....	145
Selecting the appearance of the Sky view.....	146
Adjusting the Integrity view.....	147
Adjusting the Compass view.....	148
Adjusting UTM presentation.....	149
Selecting the Seapath Operator software data source.....	149
Selecting reception of alarm messages.....	150
Verifying that the Seapath 130 system is ready for operational use.....	151
Creating a backup of the configuration and software installation.....	152
Restoring the configuration backup.....	153
DRAWINGS.....	155
Sensor Unit dimensions.....	156
MRU subsea bottle SB12 dimensions.....	157
MGC subsea bottle SB50 dimensions.....	158
miniMRU subsea housing SH1 dimensions.....	160
TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS.....	161
Weights and outline dimensions.....	161
Power specifications.....	163
Environmental specifications.....	163
Interface specifications.....	165
Performance specifications - MRU and miniMRU.....	165
Performance specifications - MGC.....	167
Data output specifications.....	168
Data input specifications.....	168
Datum specifications.....	169
Cable specifications.....	169
Manufacturer's conformity declaration.....	170
NMEA telegram output options.....	171
TELEGRAM SPECIFICATIONS.....	173
NMEA DDC.....	174
NMEA DTM.....	175
NMEA GBS.....	175
NMEA GGA.....	176
NMEA GSK.....	177

NMEA GLL.....	178
NMEA GNS.....	179
NMEA GRS.....	180
NMEA GSA.....	180
NMEA GST.....	181
NMEA GSV.....	182
NMEA HDT.....	182
NMEA RMC.....	183
NMEA ROT.....	184
NMEA VBW.....	184
NMEA THS.....	185
NMEA VER.....	186
NMEA VTG.....	187
NMEA ZDA.....	187
PSXN20.....	188
PSXN21.....	189
PSXN22.....	189
PSXN23.....	190
PSXN24.....	191
Seapath Binary 26.....	191
Simrad EM 3000.....	193
KM Binary datagram format.....	195
Calibration format 7.....	197
Echo sounder format 9.....	198
Echo sounder format 18, TSS1.....	199
RDI ADCP.....	200
1PPS, NMEA ZDA format 13.....	200
1PPS, Trimble format 14.....	201
PFreeHeave.....	201
RTCM format 80.....	202
Cyclic redundancy check (CRC) algorithm.....	203
FUNCTIONS AND DIALOG BOXES.....	205
NAV Engine Configuration.....	205
Vessel Geometry page.....	206
Vessel Description page.....	207

Sensors GNSS Geometry page.....	208
Sensors MRU Geometry page.....	210
Sensors MRU Geometry - Mounting Wizard	211
Sensors MGC Geometry page.....	214
Sensors MGC Geometry - Mounting Wizard	215
Sensors MRU/MGC Heave config page.....	218
Monitoring points Geometry page.....	219
Communication interface - Input/Output.....	221
Network page.....	228
Sensors DGNSS SBAS page.....	229
Sensors DGNSS XP/G2/G4 page.....	230
Communication interface - Gyro interface page.....	231
Operator software configuration.....	232
Operator software configuration - View page.....	233
Operator software configuration - Sky view page.....	233
Operator software configuration - Position Integrity page.....	235
Operator software configuration - Compass page.....	236
Operator software configuration - UTM page.....	237
Operator software configuration - Data source page.....	238
Operator software configuration - Alarms page.....	239
EQUIPMENT HANDLING.....	241
Taking delivery.....	241
Unpacking and handling.....	241
Storage.....	242
Disposal.....	242
FREE AND OPEN SOURCE SOFTWARE.....	244
General information.....	244
BSD license.....	245
f2c license.....	246
GCC license.....	246
GNU C library license.....	247
GNU general public license, version 2.....	250
GNU general public license, version 3.....	253
GNU lesser general public license, version 2.1.....	261
GNU lesser general public license, version 3.....	266

PHP license.....	268
INDEX.....	269

About this manual

Purpose of manual

The purpose of this publication is to provide the descriptions and procedures required to install and set up the Seapath 130 product with the Inertial Measurement Unit (IMU) in a subsea bottle.

If your installation is for the IMU without a subsea bottle, please refer to the installation manuals for the respective IMUs. This can be an MRU (Motion Reference Unit), a miniMRU or an MGC (Motion Sensor and Gyro Compass).

Target audience

The publication is intended for technical personnel such as skilled shipyard and factory workers, electricians, qualified engineers, and naval architects.

License information

An export license is required for the export of the Inertial Measurement Units MGC and MRU.

Registered trademarks

Seapath® is a registered trademark of Kongsberg Discovery AS in Norway and the People's Republic of China. MGC® is a registered trademark in Norway and Europe. Windows® is a registered trademark of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and other countries.

Subscriptions

If you want to use the Seastar® high performance position services from Fugro Norway AS, this requires a subscription. For a subscription, contact Seastar® GNSS support.

- <https://fsp.support/seastar/index.php?tab=contacts>

Maintenance purposes

This publication is also intended as reference material for the maintenance personnel.
Keep this publication for later use.

Seapath 130

Topics

[System description, page 13](#)

[System diagram, page 16](#)

[Scope of supply, page 17](#)

[Main system units, page 18](#)

[Product restrictions, page 21](#)

[Using Seapath as NTP server, page 22](#)

[Network security, page 23](#)

[Support information, page 24](#)

System description

The Seapath 130 is developed specifically for hydrographic surveying where high precision heading, position, velocity, roll, pitch, heave and timing are critical measurements. The product combines state-of-the-art dual frequency GNSS receivers (GPS, GLONASS, Galileo, BeiDou), inertial technology and processing algorithms in a compact and portable package.

The main component is the Sensor Unit. It contains the motherboard, GNSS antennas and GNSS receivers. The Sensor Unit is to be mounted on top of a vessel mast or pole.

The product also consists of an Inertial Measurement Unit (IMU). This can be an MRU (Motion Reference Unit), a miniMRU or an MGC (Motion Sensor and Gyro Compass). The IMU is mounted inside a subsea bottle on top of the transducer.

The Seapath operator software is installed on a connected computer for configuration and monitoring.

All the components are connected through a spider cable with IMU connection, three configurable serial lines, DGNSS (Differential GNSS) correction input, 1PPS output, network communication and power inlet.

The Seapath software includes Automatic Online Calibration (AOC) that significantly improves the roll and pitch accuracy. With the AOC functionality, recalibration of the IMU is now longer required.

The Seapath 130 series is delivered in the following product range:

Seapath with MRU (Motion Reference Unit)

- Seapath 130-3 with MRU 3 to 0.010° roll and pitch accuracy
- Seapath 130-5 with MRU 5 to 0.008° roll and pitch accuracy
- Seapath 130-5+ with MRU 5+ to 0.005° roll and pitch accuracy

Note: _____



The MRU 3 model part of Seapath 130-3 has to be mounted in a fixed direction relative to the vessel and that is with the connector pointing up or down. Else the performance of the Seapath 130-3 will be degraded.

Seapath with miniMRU

- Seapath 130-40 with miniMRU 40 to 0.010° roll and pitch accuracy
- Seapath 130-60 with miniMRU 60 to 0.008° roll and pitch accuracy

Seapath with MGC (Motion Sensor and Gyro Compass)

- Seapath 130-R2 with MGC R2 to 0.008° roll and pitch accuracy
- Seapath 130-R3 with MGC R3 to 0.007° roll and pitch accuracy

The advanced Seapath navigation algorithms integrate the RTK GNSS data with the inertial sensor data. This gives the Seapath 130 unique advantages compared to stand alone RTK products. The Seapath product's accurate roll, pitch and heading measurements allow the RTK antenna position to be referenced to any point on the vessel where accurate position and velocity are required. All the data from Seapath have the same time stamp and the output is in real-time. Subdecimetre position accuracy can be achieved through download of satellite orbit and clock data from internet and by post processing of satellite and IMU (Inertial Measurement Unit) data. The Seapath is robust against GNSS dropouts by using the inertial sensor for dead reckoning navigation in order to provide position, velocity and also heading measurements when GNSS is not available.

The Seapath 130 software has improved algorithms for position drift after GNSS dropout. The plots show typical position drifts.

Figure 1: Typical position drift in meters after GNSS dropout in minutes for MGC R2 and R3

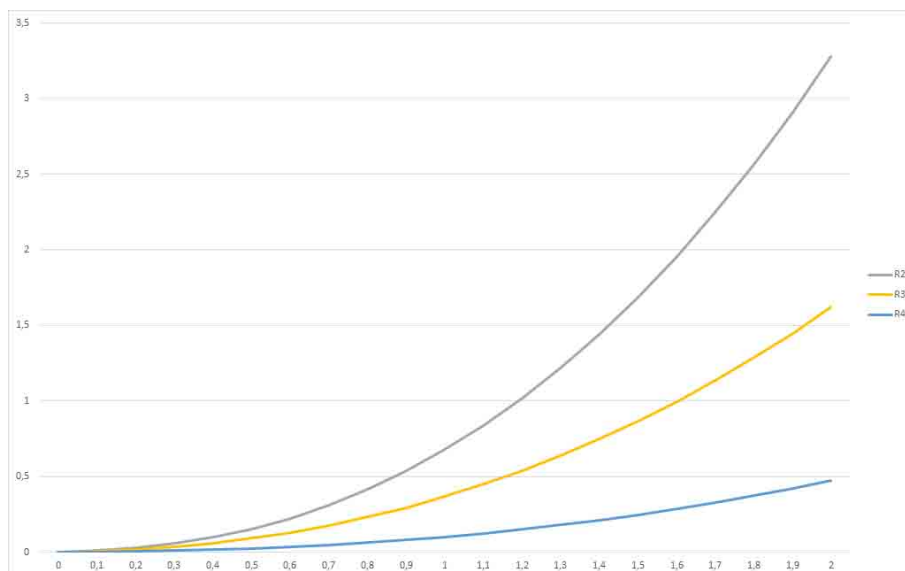
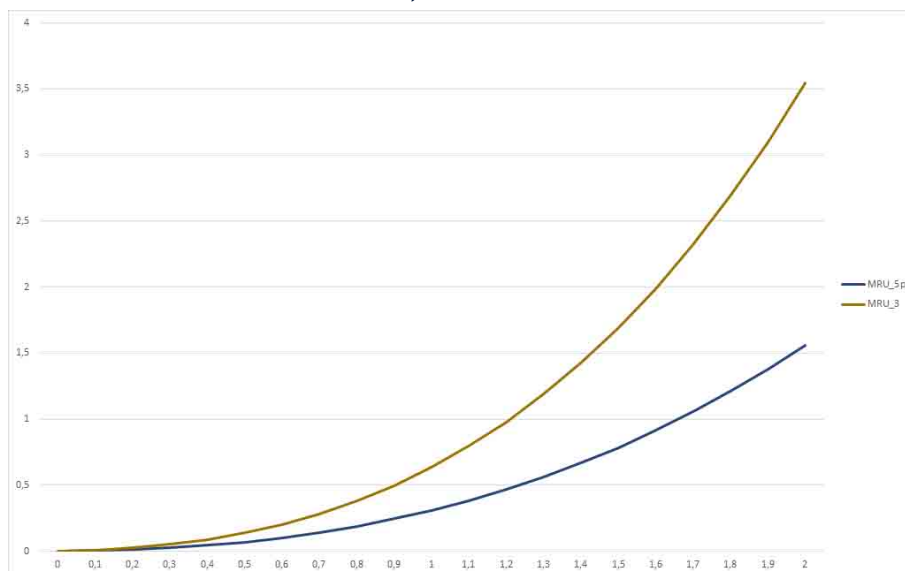


Figure 2: Typical position drift in meters after GNSS dropout in minutes for MRU 3, 5 and 5+



The product has three configurable RS-232/422 serial lines and Ethernet ports for output of motion data and NMEA messages to the multibeam and survey computer. Input of DGNSS corrections of various quality and sources are input on a configurable RS-232/422 serial line or Ethernet.

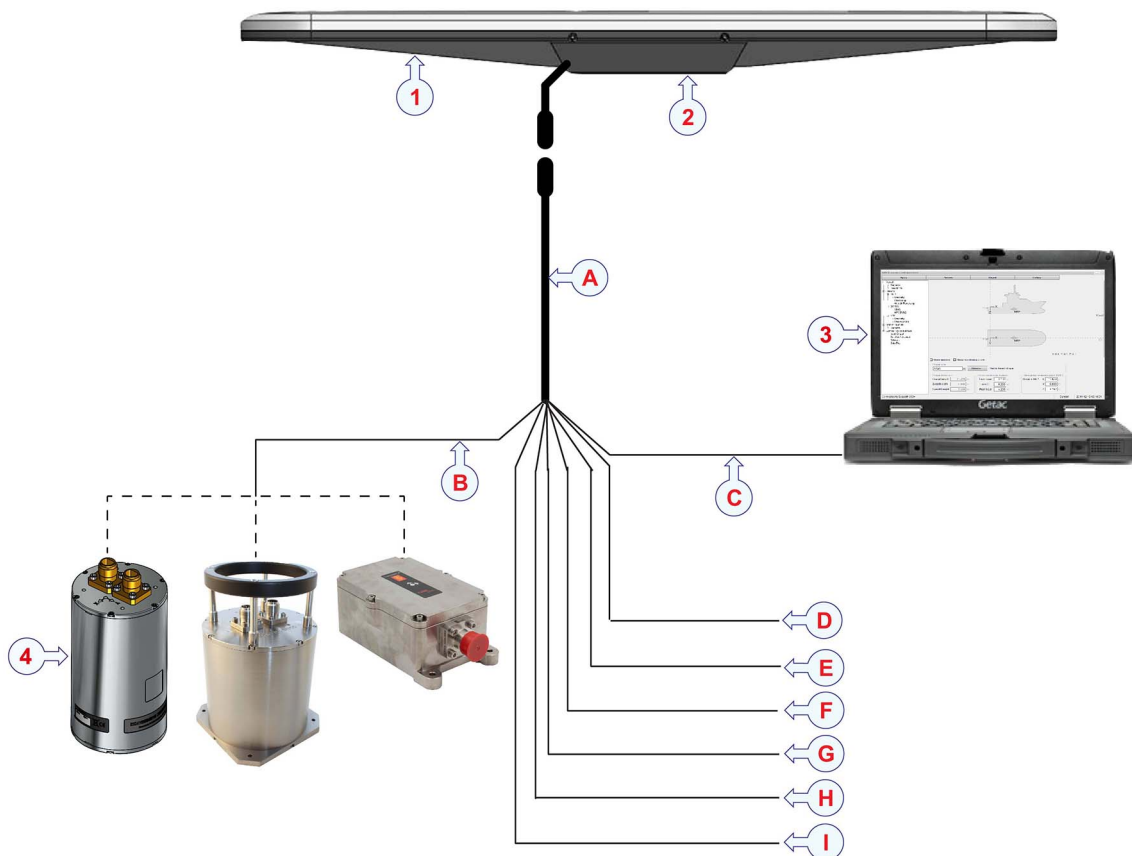
By utilising standard DGNSS, Fugro Seastar® XP2/XP3/G2/G4/G4+, VERIPOS Ultra/ Ultra², C-NavC¹, C-NavC² and RTK corrections, this system is a unique solution for

hydrographic surveying and dredging work which demand the most comprehensive, most accurate surveying data available.

System diagram

The system diagram identifies the main components of a Seapath system.

The Inertial Measurement Unit (IMU) connected to the Sensor Unit can either be a Motion Sensor and Gyro Compass (MGC), a Motion Reference Unit (MRU) or a miniMRU.



Units

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. Sensor Unit with 1-metre cable, male connector | 3. Operator software installed on external computer (Not part of standard delivery) |
| 2. Mounting bracket | |
| | 4. Inertial Measurement Unit (MGC, MRU or miniMRU) in subsea bottle |

Cables

- | | |
|---|--|
| <p>A. Cable to Sensor Unit, part of spider cable, 20 metres length, female connector</p> | <p>F. Output serial line for motion data to multibeam or survey computer, 9-pin DSub connector, 5 metres length</p> |
| <p>B. IMU umbilical cable with 8-pin SeaCon connector, 15 metres length</p> | <p>G. Output serial line for NMEA data , 9-pin DSub connector, 5 metres length</p> |
| <p>C. Ethernet cable to external computer and other users, 5 metres length</p> | <p>H. 1PPS output, 9-pin DSub connector, 5 metres length</p> |
| <p>D. Input serial line cable for DGNSS corrections, 9-pin DSub connector, 5 metres</p> | <p>I. 24 VDC input, 5 metres length</p> |
| <p>E. Output serial line cable for DGNSS corrections, 9-pin DSub connector, 5 metres</p> | |

Note: _____



Input/output serial line for DGNSS corrections is the same cable.

Scope of supply

The Seapath system comprises the Sensor Unit, the spider cable and an Inertial Measurement Unit (IMU). The IMU can be a Motion Sensor and Gyro Compass (MGC), a Motion Reference Unit (MRU) or a miniMRU. The basic items are included in the delivery. Additional optional items can be purchased from Kongsberg Discovery AS.

Basic items

- 1 ea Sensor Unit
Part number: M340-03
- 1 ea Mounting bracket
Part number: M340-05
- 1 ea Spider cable
Part number: M340-20 (20 m length) or Part number: M340-24 short, (8 m length)
- 1 ea Inertial Measurement Unit
MGC models: R2 SB50 or R3 SB50

MRU models: 3, 5 or 5+

miniMRU models: 40 or 60

- 1 ea Light weight MRU subsea bottle, if IMU is MRU
Part number: MRU-M-SB12
- 1 ea miniMRU subsea housing (serial), if IMU is miniMRU
Part number: 110-0067934
- 2 ea End-user documentation

Additional optional items

The following additional optional items can be used together with the Seapath 130.

- 1 ea Junction Box
Part number: M340-22
Part number: MRU-E-JB3 for MRU

Main system units

Topics

[Seapath 130 sensor unit, page 18](#)

[Motion Reference Unit \(MRU\) description, page 19](#)

[MRU subsea bottle description, page 19](#)

[MGC \(Motion Sensor and Gyro Compass\) description, page 20](#)

[miniMRU, page 20](#)

[Spider cable description, page 20](#)

Seapath 130 sensor unit

The Sensor Unit runs the navigation software.

This software combines the GNSS signal and the inertial measurements to

determine accurate position, heading, attitude and heave signal. This software uses Kongsberg Discovery AS advanced true multi-reference algorithms for real-time parallel processing of all available correction signals.



The Sensor Unit includes the following.

- Two GNSS receivers and antennas
- Motherboard
- Connector board for termination of spider cable
- 1-metre cable with male connector
- Mounting bracket

Motion Reference Unit (MRU) description

The MRU (Motion Reference Unit) is a sensor unit designed for motion measurement in marine applications. The unit incorporates 3-axis sensors for linear acceleration and angular rate, along with complete signal processing electronics and power supply. The MRU outputs absolute roll and pitch as well as dynamic acceleration in the north, east and down direction. It also outputs velocity and relative position.

The interior of the MRU is divided into two sub-assemblies consisting of an electronic part and a sensor part. The sensor unit shall not be repaired or serviced by anyone else than Kongsberg Discovery AS.



MRU subsea bottle description

The MRU (Motion Reference Unit) is mounted in a light-weight subsea bottle.

The top and bottom cover plates of the bottle are made of PVC and the cylinder is made of aluminum. The bottle is designed for use down to 10 metres. The MRU is mounted on a steering plate inside the bottle.

On the outside there are four mounting holes (M6) on both cover plates. The mounting direction of the MRU within the bottle is indicated on the bottom cover plate.

The bottle is delivered with two 8-pin Seacon connectors, one for serial and one for Ethernet communication.



MGC (Motion Sensor and Gyro Compass) description

The unit is mounted in a 50–metre depth rated titanium subsea bottle.

The Motion sensor Gyro Compass (MGC) is a full inertial navigation system (INS). It can output heading, roll, pitch, heave and position.

The unit is a north-seeking gyro compass. It is based on three Ring Laser Gyros (RLG) and three linear accelerometers.

The unit can also be operated as an inertial navigation system. Then it will output position and heading.



miniMRU

The miniMRU is designed for motion measurements in marine applications. It is intended for integration into systems which require motion compensation. For example a multibeam transducer head for seabed mapping.

The miniMRU incorporates 3-axis sensors for linear acceleration and angular rate, along with complete signal processing electronics and power supply. The unit outputs absolute roll and pitch as well as dynamic acceleration in the north, east and down direction, velocity and relative position.

The main component within the unit is the milliMRG sensor element which comprises a MEMS gyro and an accelerometer. The milliMRG is manufactured in different versions depending on the performance required to the particular miniMRU model.

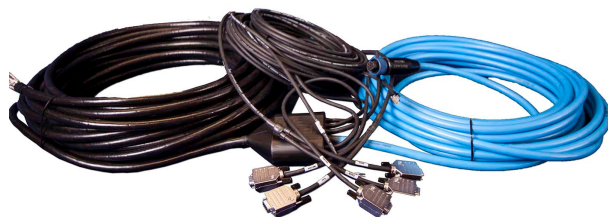
The miniMRU can be delivered in a subsea housing. The housing is depth rated to 80 metres.



Spider cable description

The product is delivered with a spider cable for connection to the Seapath Sensor Unit.

The connection to the Seapath Sensor Unit is through a female connector. The Inertial Measurement Unit (IMU) connection is through an 8-pin Seacon connector. The cable has three configurable serial lines through 9-pin D-sub connectors, 1PPS output



through a 9-pin D-sub connector, network communication and power inlet.

The cable is delivered in either 20 metres length or 8 metres length.

Product restrictions

Restrictions in export

Export of these Inertial Measurement Units (IMU) requires an export license.

- MGC R2/R3
- MRU 5+/5/H
- miniMRU 50/60

Important: _____

Notice to customer/importer/end user.

The inertial sensor specified here is shipped from Norway in accordance with the Ministry of Foreign Affairs' Official Notification on Export Control and U.S. Export Administration Regulations (EAR).

The inertial sensor will be subject to restrictions from your national export control authorities if resold, transferred or otherwise disposed from your country.

Resale, transfer or otherwise disposal of the inertial sensor to countries, persons or entities under UN, US, EU or Norwegian embargo/sanctions, is prohibited.

Any valid and approved export license granted to Kongsberg Discovery AS from the Norwegian Ministry of Foreign Affairs or the U.S. Government, is not an authorization for you to resell, transfer or other disposal of the inertial sensor.

Limited warranty

Changes or modifications to the product not explicitly approved by Kongsberg Discovery AS will void the warranty.

The liability of Kongsberg Discovery AS is limited to repair of this product only under the given terms and conditions stated in the sales documents. Consequential damages such as customer's loss of profit or damage to other systems traceable back to this product's malfunctions, are excluded.

The warranty does not cover malfunctions of the product resulting from the following conditions.

- The Sensor Unit housing has been opened by the customer.
- The IMU housing has been opened by the customer.
- The Sensor Unit is not shipped in the original transportation box.
- The IMU is not shipped in the original transportation box.
- The Sensor Unit has been exposed to extreme shock and vibrations.
- The IMU has been exposed to extreme shock and vibrations.
- Incorrect power connection.

Restrictions in use

The system requires certain conditions in order to operate.

The Seapath function is based on GNSS signals and requires free sight to the sky. A minimum of four visible satellites. A position dilution of precision (PDOP) value less than six. Otherwise normal conditions.

MRU/miniMRU

It is designed for use on-board marine surface operated vehicles with a linear acceleration less than $\pm 40 \text{ m/s}^2$ ($\pm 4g$). And an angular rate range less than $\pm 75^\circ/\text{s}$.

MGC

It is designed for use on-board marine surface operated vehicles with a linear acceleration less than $\pm 45 \text{ m/s}^2$ ($\pm 4g$). And an angular rate range less than $\pm 125^\circ/\text{s}$.

Specifications are valid without multipath, without shadowing of antenna and with vessel in motion.

The Seapath product is intended for use in maritime survey and navigation applications.

Using Seapath as NTP server

The Seapath can be used as an NTP (Network Time Protocol) server for clock synchronization of connected computer systems.

An accuracy better than one millisecond can be achieved in local area networks under ideal conditions.

In order to use the Seapath as the NTP server, the NTP clients have to be configured with the Seapath IP address as the server. How this is done depends on the client software in use. Nothing in the Seapath has to be configured. The NTP server on the Seapath runs in standard mode with the PPS (pulse-per-second) as reference.

Network security

If the Seapath 130 product is connected to a local area network, data security is important.

Equipment manufactured by Kongsberg Discovery is often connected to a local area network (LAN). When you connect a computer to a local area network you will always expose the data on that computer. All the other computers connected to the same network may be able to access your data. Several threats are imminent:

- Remote computers can read your data.
- Remote computers can change your data.
- Remote computers can change the behavior of your computer, for example by installing unwanted software.

Usually, two parameters are used to define the threat level:

1. The likelihood that any remote computer will do any of the above.
2. The damage inflicted if a remote computer succeeds doing any of the above.

Kongsberg Discovery has no information about your complete system installation. Products provided by Kongsberg Discovery are always regarded as stand-alone offline systems. They are regarded as stand-alone even though they may be connected to a local area network for sensor interfaces or data distribution.

Note: _____



No network safety applications are installed on Kongsberg Discovery computers. The computer is not protected against viruses, malware or unauthorized access by external users.

Securing the Seapath 130 system has no meaning unless you have established a policy that secures all the computers on the network. This policy must include physical access by trained and trusted users. The customer or end user of the Seapath 130 system is responsible for defining and implementing a security policy and providing the relevant network security applications.

Note: _____



Kongsberg Discovery will not accept any responsibility for errors or damages caused by unauthorized use of or access to the Seapath 130 system.

Support information

If you need technical support for your product you must contact a Kongsberg Discovery office. A list of all our offices is available on our website.

- **Company name:** Kongsberg Discovery AS
- **Address:** Havnegata 9, N-7010 Trondheim, Norway
- **Telephone:** +47 33 03 41 00
- **Telephone, global 24h support:**
 - Europe, the Middle East and Africa: +47 33 03 24 07
 - Asia Pacific: +65 97 11 24 07
 - Americas: +15 04 303 5244
- **E-mail address:** support.seatex@kd.kongsberg.com
- **Website:** <http://www.kongsberg.com/discovery>

KM-Support App

Kongsberg Discovery support is also available in the KM-Support App. Our support application is available for free in the App Store and Google Play.

Preparing the installation

Topics

[Necessary tools and equipment, page 25](#)

[Inertial Measurement Unit transportation box, page 26](#)

[Drawings, page 26](#)

[Radio frequency authorisation, page 26](#)

[Personnel qualifications, page 27](#)

[Location of hardware units, page 27](#)

Necessary tools and equipment

We assume that you are equipped with a standard set of tools. This tool set must comprise the normal tools for electronic and electromechanical tasks. This includes different screwdriver types, pliers, spanners, a cable stripper, etc. Each tool must be provided in different sizes. We recommend that all tools are demagnetized to protect your equipment.

Unless otherwise stated, all mounting hardware (such as bolts, nuts, washers, screws etc.) referred to in this document is to be supplied by the customer or the shipyard.

Survey equipment

Survey equipment should be made available to determine the Inertial Measurement Unit (IMU) mounting angles in roll, pitch and yaw and the distance vectors from the Origin to the Sensor Unit, the IMU and the monitoring points.

External computer

An external computer is required for the installation of the Seapath operator software. The minimum requirement for the computer is Windows 10 or newer, 2 GHz CPU, 2 GB RAM and 1024 x 768 screen resolution.

Inertial Measurement Unit transportation box

The unit is shipped in a specially designed transportation box. Keep the unit stored within the box until everything is ready for installation of the unit.

Note:



After the unit has been installed, please keep the transportation box. The unit must be shipped in this box for maintenance or repair in order to maintain the warranty.

Drawings

General arrangement drawings of the vessel should be acquired to simplify determination of offsets between the Sensor Unit, the Inertial Measurement Units, the Navigation Reference Point (NRP) and the different monitoring points. The Inertial Measurement Units are the Motion Sensor and Gyro Compass (MGC) or the Motion Reference Unit (MRU).

Locations for the various parts of the system must be decided.

Radio frequency authorisation

Make sure that the data link between the reference station and the mobile Seapath system is assigned to operate on the radio frequencies that will be used in the survey area.

An assigned approval from the local authorities is required before use.

Personnel qualifications

The installation of the Seapath 130 is a demanding task. Installation tasks must only be done by fully trained personnel.

As a minimum, the following certified personnel must be available:

- Electricians
- Mechanical workers

Location of hardware units

Topics

[Sensor Unit location, page 27](#)

[Inertial Measurement Unit \(IMU\) location, page 28](#)

Sensor Unit location

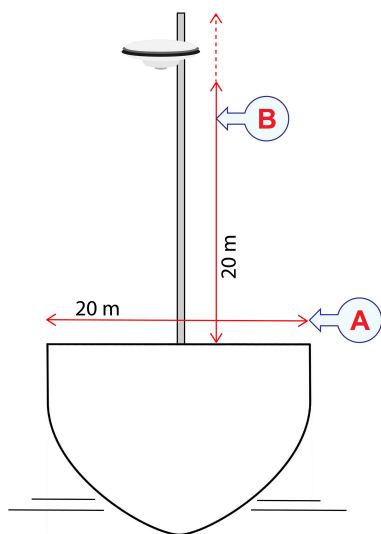
Before mounting the unit, select a location for best possible performance.

Consider these factors when installing the unit.

- The unit should have an unobstructed line-of-sight to the sky.
- Mount the unit in a location protected from direct illumination of radar beams and other transmitting antennas. For example Inmarsat antennas.

Seapath is more sensitive to blocking and reflections (multipath) of GNSS signals than GNSS sensors which only use pseudo-range data. This is because Seapath also uses carrier phase measurements for heading determination, and both the internal GNSS antennas need to see at least four common satellites at the same time.

- Mount the unit in such a way that blocking of the GNSS signal is avoided.
- In order to reduce problems due to multipath effects, the unit has to be mounted above the nearest deck at a height which is equal to the width of this deck, or higher.



- A.** *Width of deck*
- B.** *Height of antenna must be equal to width of deck or higher*

- Mount the unit in such a way that the torsion movement relative to the vessel's hull is kept at an absolute minimum.

Related tasks

[Mounting the Sensor Unit](#), page 32

Related references

[Sensor Unit dimensions](#), page 156

Inertial Measurement Unit (IMU) location

Correct location of the unit is important for the system performance. Consider these factors when installing the unit.

- When the unit is mounted in a subsea bottle, it is recommended to mount the bottle close to the user equipment of which the unit is supposed to measure the motion.

This is to avoid errors in alignment with the user equipment.

Be aware of vibrations - MGC

The unit has some sensitivity to vibrations. Direct mounting onto the main hull structure is preferable.

Avoid mounting the unit close to hydraulic pumps and valves where there is high-frequency vibrations. The unit has some sensitivity to vibrations around sequences of 100 Hz (100, 200, 300 Hz and so on). Such vibrations should not exceed 0.5 m/s^2 in any direction.

Be aware of vibrations - MRU

The unit has some sensitivity to vibrations. Direct mounting onto the main hull structure is preferable.

Avoid mounting the unit on a pole that vibrates at high frequencies when the vessel speed increases. The unit has some sensitivity to vibrations around sequences of 100 Hz (100, 200, 300 Hz and so on). Such vibrations should not exceed 0.5 m/s^2 in any direction.

The unit's function may be disturbed if strong vibrations around 14 kHz is present.

Be aware of vibrations - miniMRU

The unit has some sensitivity to vibrations. Direct mounting onto the main hull structure is preferable.

Avoid mounting the unit close to hydraulic pumps and valves where there is high-frequency vibrations. The unit has some sensitivity to vibrations around sequences of 100 Hz (100, 200, 300 Hz and so on). Such vibrations should not exceed 0.5 m/s^2 in any direction.

The unit's function may be disturbed if strong vibrations around 14 kHz is present.

Be aware of resonance - MGC

The unit is sensitive to resonance. Direct mounting to a solid and stable structure is preferable. For example the steel deck.

Care must be taken when mounting the unit to the vessel's hull in order to avoid self-resonance which in turn can amplify the dithering frequencies of the gyroscopes. Frequencies of around 600 Hz. A properly mounted unit will typically emit 58 - 64 dBA (1 metre) and improperly mounted the sound pressure level may increase to 85 dBA.

Related tasks

[Mounting the MRU subsea bottle](#), page 34

[Mounting the MGC subsea bottle](#), page 36

[Mounting the miniMRU subsea housing](#), page 38

[Mounting miniMRU in subsea housing](#), page 39

Related references

[MRU subsea bottle SB12 dimensions](#), page 157

[miniMRU subsea housing SH1 dimensions](#), page 160

[MGC subsea bottle SB50 dimensions](#), page 158

Installation

Topics

[Terminating the cable inside the Sensor Unit, page 30](#)

[Mounting the Sensor Unit, page 32](#)

[Mounting the MRU subsea bottle, page 34](#)

[Mounting the MGC subsea bottle, page 36](#)

[Mounting the miniMRU subsea housing, page 38](#)

[Mounting miniMRU in subsea housing, page 39](#)

[Subsea bottle connectors and pin configuration, page 40](#)

[Installing the Seapath operator software, page 41](#)

[Uninstalling the Seapath operator software, page 42](#)

Terminating the cable inside the Sensor Unit

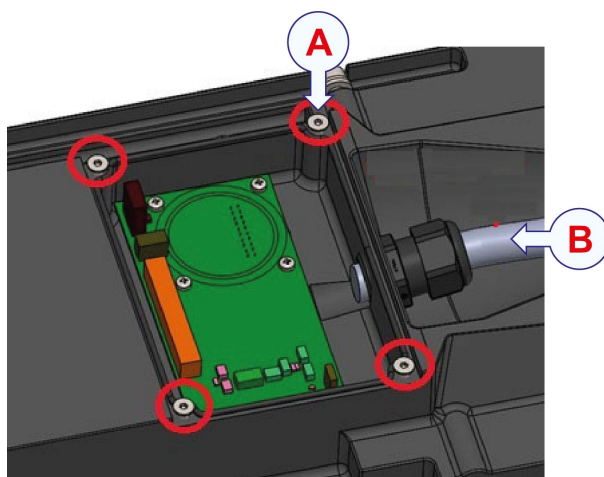
The Sensor Unit cable inside the unit must be terminated before the unit is mounted on the mast or pole.

Context

Normally the unit is delivered with this cable pre-terminated.

Procedure

1. Open the connector board cover at the bottom of the sensor unit by unscrewing the four screws marked with a red circle on the illustration.



A. Connector board cover screws

B. Sensor unit cable

2. Run the sensor unit cable through the gland and terminate the cable wires on the connector board according to the cable wiring table.

Pin	Signal	Pair	Wire colour		Pin	Signal	Pair	Wire colour
16	PWR+	1	White		10	1PPS TX-B	8	Red
1	PWR-	1	Blue		25	1PPS TX-A	8	Green
17	ETH RXD-	2	Green		9	1PPS GND	9	Red
2	ETH RXD+	2	White		26	Echo GND	9	Grey
18	ETH TXD-	3	Orange		11	Echo TX TX-B	10	Red
3	ETH TXD+	3	White		27	Echo RTS TX-A	10	Brown
19	GNSS CTS RX-A	4	White		12	MRU RX-A	11	Black
4	GNSS RX RX-B	4	Brown		29	MRU RX-B	11	Orange
20	GNSS RTS TX-A	5	White		14	MRU TX-A	12	Black
5	GNSS TX TX-B	5	Grey		28	MRU TX-B	12	Blue

Pin	Signal	Pair	Wire colour		Pin	Signal	Pair	Wire colour
21	GNSS GND	6	Red		13	MRU GND	13	Black
23	Survey GND	6	Blue		30	MRU 1PPS N TX-A	13	Green
8	Survey TX TX-B	7	Red			Not used	14	Black
24	Survey RTS TX-A	7	Orange			Not used	14	Brown

3. Fasten the cable gland to the Sensor Unit chassis.
4. Remount the connector board cover.

Related tasks

[Mounting the Sensor Unit](#), page 32

Mounting the Sensor Unit

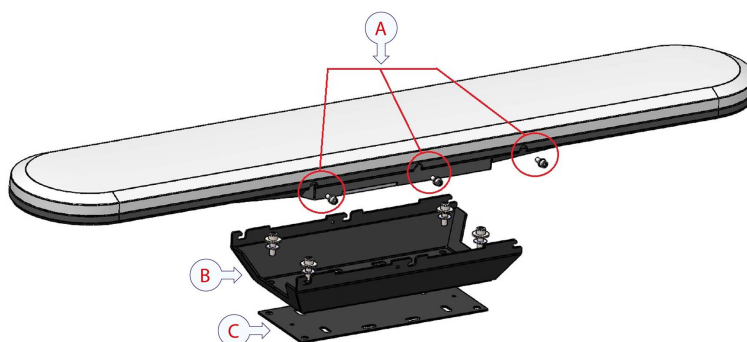
The unit is designed to be mounted horizontally on a mast or pole.

Prerequisites

You have prepared a mounting arrangement for the Sensor Unit mounting bracket.

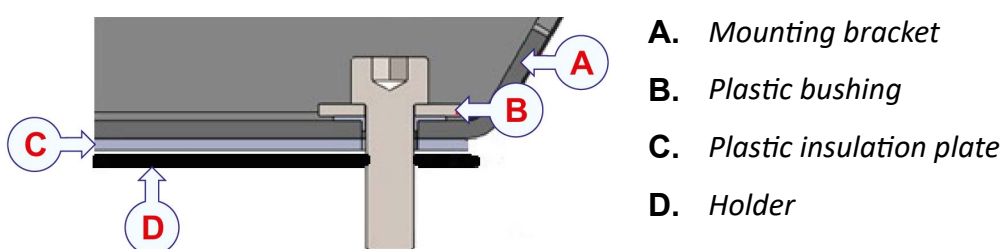
Procedure

1. Make a holder for the mounting bracket and fasten the holder properly to a mast or pole.
2. Separate the unit from the mounting bracket by unscrewing the three screws on each side.



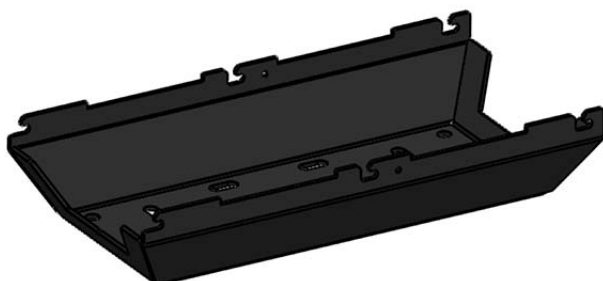
- A.** Mounting bracket screws
- B.** Mounting bracket
- C.** Plastic insulation plate

3. Bring the Sensor Unit with its cable and mounting bracket as close as possible to the location of the holder.
The normal orientation of the unit is along ship with the heading reference point number 1 pointing aft. It may, however, be mounted in any orientation provided it is approximately horizontal.
4. Place the supplied insulation plate between the mounting bracket and the holder.
5. Make sure that the four bushings are placed in the mounting holes before you enter the screws.



The bushings are inserted to make sure that there is galvanic isolation of the Sensor Unit from the mast and to prevent corrosion.

6. Secure the nuts with washers or by using self-locking nuts.
7. Place the mounting bracket in the preferred direction on the holder.



8. Lift the Sensor Unit on top of the mounting bracket.
9. Re-insert the three screws on each side of the mounting bracket and fasten them to the Sensor Unit.
10. Connect the cable from the Sensor Unit to the spider cable.

The two cable connectors



The two cables connected



Related concepts

[Sensor Unit location](#), page 27

[Cable plan](#), page 43

Related tasks

[Terminating the cable inside the Sensor Unit](#), page 30

[Cabling for the Seapath 130 system](#), page 45

Related references

[Sensor Unit dimensions](#), page 156

Mounting the MRU subsea bottle

The Motion Reference Unit (MRU) is delivered mounted in a subsea bottle. The bottle is to be mounted to the vessel or above the transducer head.

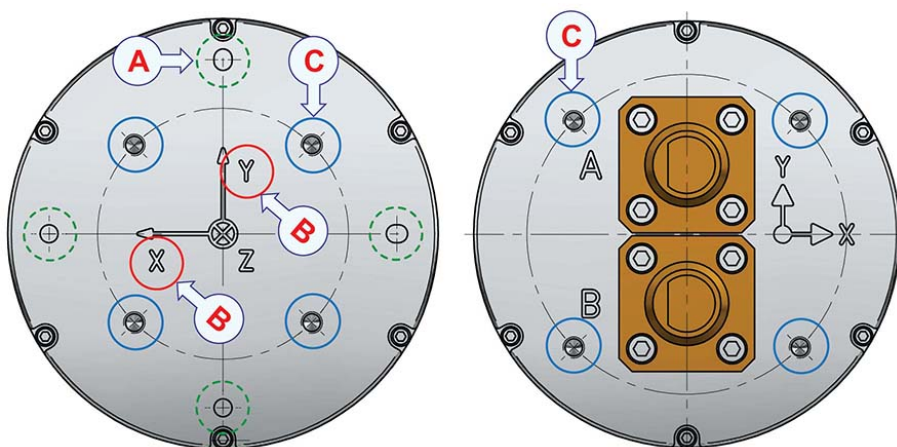
Prerequisites

You have prepared a mounting arrangement for the subsea bottle.

Provide 8 M6 screws of stainless steel for fastening the bottle lids.

Context

It is recommended to make holes for dowel pins for the subsea bottle index lid on the mounting arrangement. Using dowel pins will make it easier to place the subsea bottle in the correct position if it has been moved.



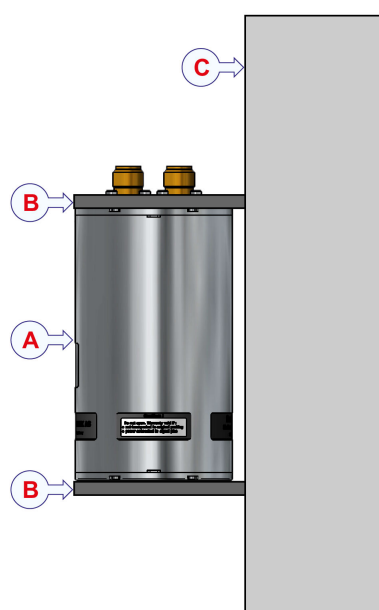
A. Holes for dowel pins on index lid. Hole max. 7.5 mm, pin $\varnothing$ 5. 4 in total

B. X and Y indications on index lid

C. Lid fastening hole for M6 screw, 8 in total

Procedure

1. Find the location on the vessel where you want to mount the subsea bottle. For example pole or transducer head.
2. If the orientation of the bottle can be freely selected, select an orientation with the x arrow pointing in the bow direction.
The index lid has indications for dowel pins and x and y arrow.
3. When the mounting location has been identified, prepare fastening plates for the subsea bottle connector lid and index lid screws.



- A.** *Subsea bottle*
- B.** *Fastening plate (provided by customer)*
- C.** *Mounting structure*

4. Fasten the index and connector lids to the fastening plates with M6 screws. Four M6 screws for each lid.
5. Connect the MRU cable to connector A on the lid.
6. Connect the provided dummy female connector to connector B on the lid. This is not used in this product.
7. Fasten the MRU cable with cable ties to the structure.
This is to avoid that the cable vibrates due to vessel movements.

Related concepts

[Inertial Measurement Unit \(IMU\) location](#), page 28

[Cable plan](#), page 43

Related tasks

[Cabling for the Seapath 130 system](#), page 45

Related references

[MRU subsea bottle SB12 dimensions](#), page 157

Mounting the MGC subsea bottle

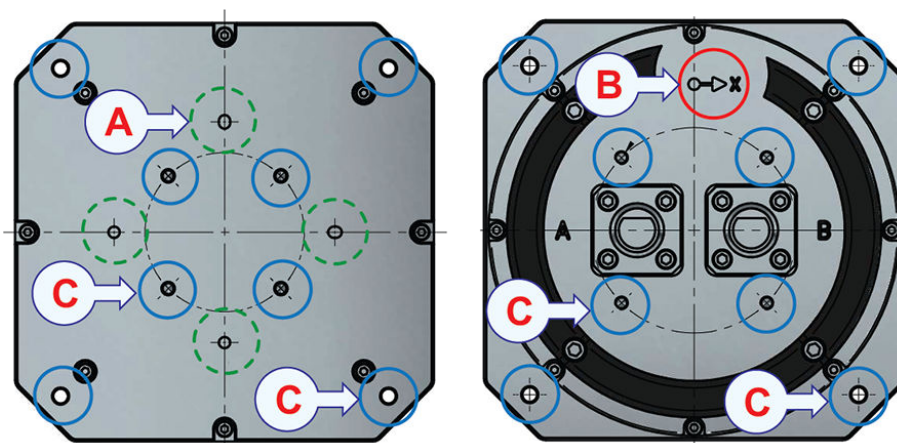
The Motion Sensor and Gyro Compass (MGC) is delivered mounted in a subsea bottle. The bottle is to be mounted to the vessel or above the transducer head.

Prerequisites

You have prepared a mounting arrangement for the subsea bottle.

Provide 8 M6 screws of stainless steel for fastening the bottle lids.

Context



- A.** Holes for dowel pins on bottom plate. Hole max. 7.5 mm, pin $\varnothing$ 5. 4 in total
- B.** X indication on connector lid
- C.** Bottom plate and connector lid fastening hole for M6 screw, 8 in total

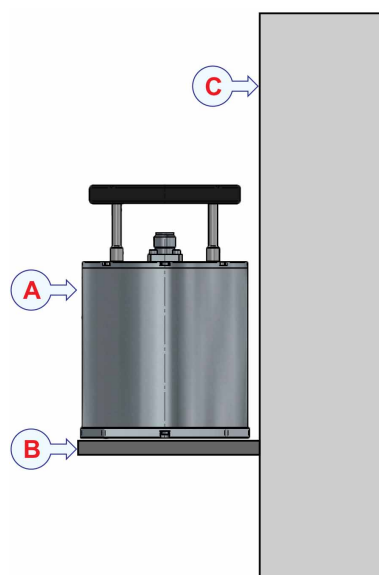
Procedure

1. Find the location on the vessel where you want to mount the subsea bottle. For example pole or transducer head.
2. If the orientation of the bottle can be freely selected, select an orientation with the x arrow pointing in the bow direction.

The bottom plate has dowel pin holes, four outer mounting holes and four inner mounting holes which are equal to the ones on the MRU subsea bottle.

The connector lid has an x arrow indication.

- When the mounting location has been identified, prepare fastening plate for the subsea bottle bottom plate screws.



- A.** *Subsea bottle*
- B.** *Fastening plate (provided by customer)*
- C.** *Mounting structure*

- Fasten the bottom plate to the fastening plate with four M6 screws.
- Connect the MGC cable to connector A on the lid.
- Connect the provided dummy female connector to connector B on the lid. This is not used in this product.
- Fasten the MGC cable with cable ties to the structure.
This is to avoid that the cable vibrates due to vessel movements.

Related concepts

[Inertial Measurement Unit \(IMU\) location](#), page 28

[Cable plan](#), page 43

Related tasks

[Cabling for the Seapath 130 system](#), page 45

Related references

[MGC subsea bottle SB50 dimensions](#), page 158

Mounting the miniMRU subsea housing

The miniMRU is delivered mounted in a subsea housing with serial communication. The housing is to be mounted to the vessel or above the transducer head.

Prerequisites

You have prepared a mounting arrangement for the subsea housing.

Context

The miniMRU subsea housing has part no. miniMRU-M-SH1_S (TC 110-0067934).

It is recommended to make holes and insert dowel pins for the subsea bottle index lid on the mounting arrangement. Using dowel pins will make it easier to place the subsea bottle in the correct position if it has been moved.

Procedure

1. Find the location on the vessel where you want to mount the subsea housing. For example pole or transducer head.
2. If the orientation of the housing can be freely selected, mount the unit with the x arrow and alignment surface parallel with the longitudinal axis of the system which is to be motion compensated.
3. When the mounting location has been found, make three M6 fastening holes for the subsea bottle.
4. Fasten the subsea housing to the mounting arrangement with three M6 screws.
5. Connect the MRU/miniMRU cable to subsea housing connector.
6. Fasten the MRU/miniMRU cable with cable ties to the structure.

The use of cable ties is to avoid that the cable vibrates due to vessel movements.

Related concepts

[Inertial Measurement Unit \(IMU\) location](#), page 28

[Cable plan](#), page 43

Related tasks

[Cabling for the Seapath 130 system](#), page 45

Related references

[miniMRU subsea housing SH1 dimensions](#), page 160

Mounting miniMRU in subsea housing

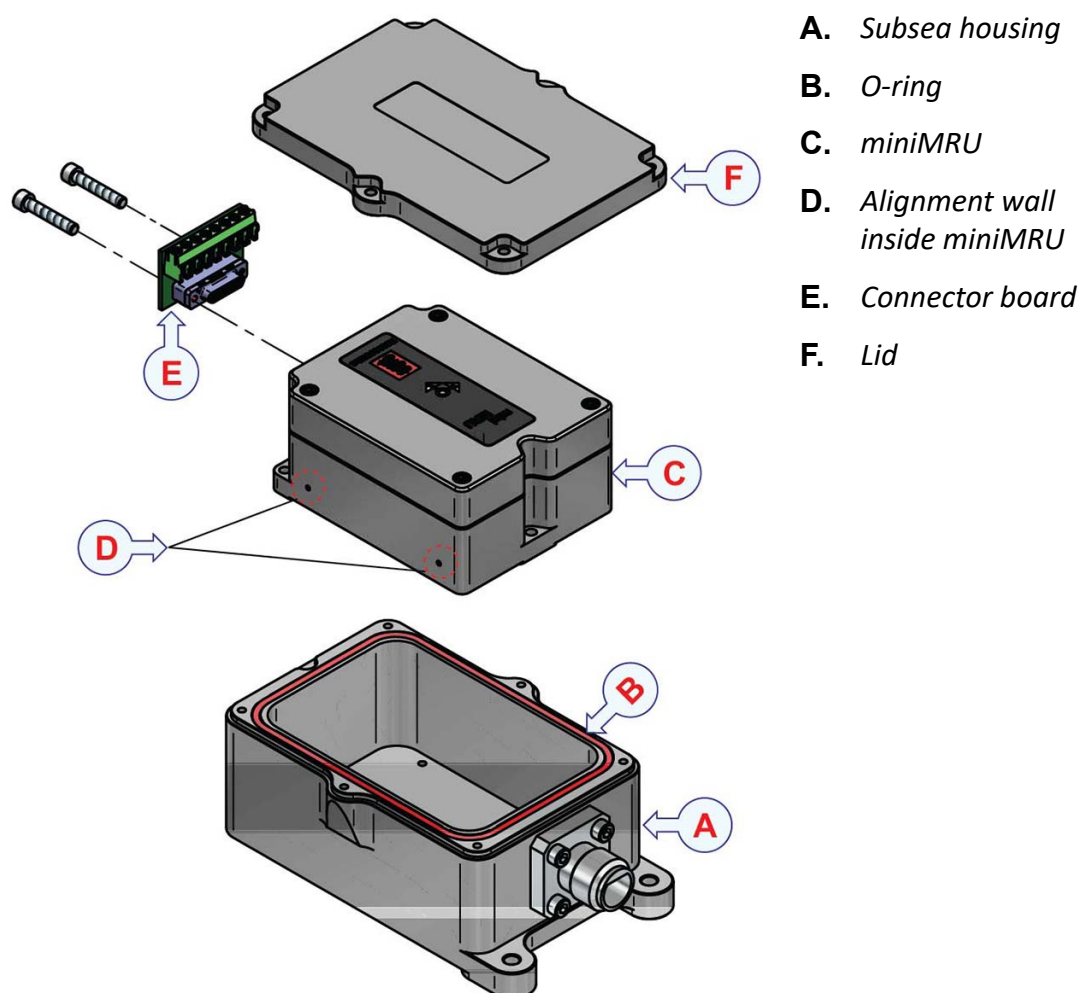
The miniMRU is usually delivered mounted in a subsea housing. The housing is to be mounted to the vessel or the transducer head. If the unit is not pre-mounted you must mount the unit in the subsea housing.

Prerequisites

Make that the subsea housing is of the version with serial communication (part no. miniMRU-M-SH1_S (TC 110-0067934). The subsea housing can also be delivered with Ethernet communication but that is not described in this manual.

Context

This procedure describes how to mount the miniMRU in an empty subsea housing.



Procedure

1. Place the subsea housing on a stable surface.

2. Remove the lid from the subsea housing by unscrewing the six M4 screws which hold the lid.
3. Connect the connector board inside the housing to the connector on the miniMRU.
4. Enter the two UNC screws through the connector board and into the miniMRU connector in order to fasten the connector to the miniMRU housing.
5. Tighten the UNC screws.
6. Place the miniMRU into the housing with the cable wires from the Seacon connector above the miniMRU top lid and with the miniMRU connector pointing in the opposite direction as the Seacon connector on the housing.
7. Press the miniMRU against the alignment wall of the housing while fastening the three M4 screws which hold the miniMRU to the housing.
8. Tighten the M4 screws.
9. Make sure that the o-ring on the housing is clean and correctly fit in the o-ring track.
10. Replace the housing lid and re-fasten the screws.
Use thread lock CRC 6-66 marine spray or similar on the lid screws.

Related concepts

[Inertial Measurement Unit \(IMU\) location](#), page 28

Related references

[miniMRU subsea housing SH1 dimensions](#), page 160

Subsea bottle connectors and pin configuration

The MRU and MGC bottle includes two 8-pin Seacon connectors. The part number for the Seacon connector is 5506-1508, male. A Seacon pigtail for your own application can be delivered as an option - part no. MRU-E-PT8.

Connector A: Default pin configuration for Seapath	
Pin	Signal (Seapath compatible)
1	POWER -
2	POWER +
3	COM1_IN_A-
4	COM1_IN_B+

Connector A: Default pin configuration for Seapath	
Pin	Signal (Seapath compatible)
5	COM1_OUT_B+
6	COM1_OUT_A-
7	CGND (Ground ref. for XIN)
8	XIN (Seapath 1PPS)

Connector B: Default pin configuration, Ethernet communication	
Pin	Signal (Ethernet communication)
1	POWER -
2	POWER +
3	RD- (RJ_6)
4	RD+ (RJ_3)
5	TD- (RJ_2)
6	TD+ (RJ_1)
7	GGND
8	ALERT

Installing the Seapath operator software

This software is used to set the configuration parameters for the Sensor Unit and to operate the Seapath system.

Prerequisites

A local computer with Windows is required.

Context

A USB flash drive with the software is provided with the delivery.

Procedure

1. Insert the USB flash drive with the software into a USB port on the local computer.
2. Open the removable disk drive to which the USB flash drive is connected.
3. Locate and run the installation file `SeapathHmiInstaller.exe`.

4. Follow the instructions on the screen in order to complete the installation of the **Seapath Operator** program.
5. When you reach the last step, deselect the **Run the application** check box if you do not want to start the operator software immediately after installation.
6. Remove the USB flash drive from the local computer when the installation is finished.

Related concepts

[About Portable Hydrographic System \(PHS\) installation](#), page 76

Related tasks

[Verifying that the Seapath 130 system is ready for operational use](#), page 151

Uninstalling the Seapath operator software

When you no longer need the Seapath operator software you can remove it from your computer.

Procedure

1. Open the Control Panel on your computer.
2. Select the dialog box where you remove programs.
3. Locate the **Seapath series** program in the list.
4. Select **Uninstall** to remove the program and follow the instructions on the screen.

Related concepts

[About Portable Hydrographic System \(PHS\) installation](#), page 76

Cable layout and interconnections

Topics

[Cable plan, page 43](#)

[Cabling for the Seapath 130 system, page 45](#)

[Pin layout for connectors, page 46](#)

[Ethernet connections, page 48](#)

[Communication interfaces, page 48](#)

[PPS signal output, page 49](#)

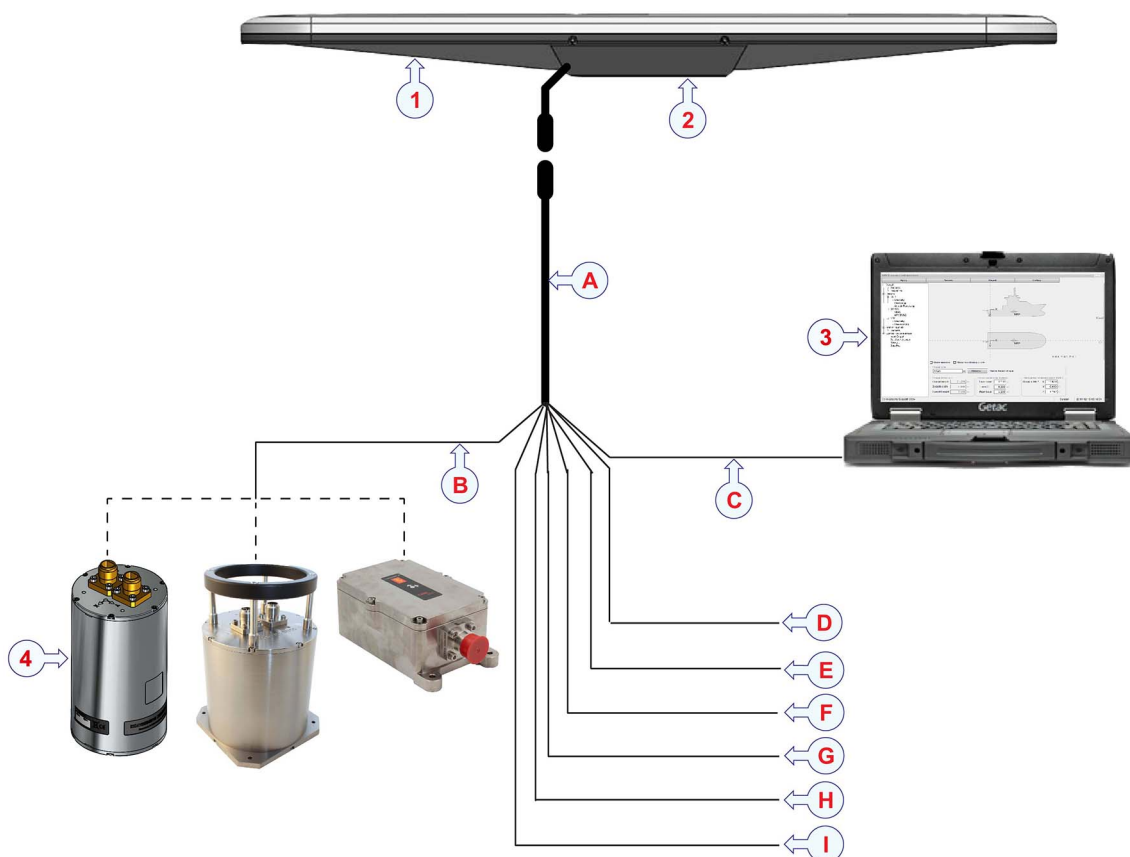
[DGNSS corrections from Fugro Seastar, page 49](#)

[Installation with Seapath 130 Junction Box, page 53](#)

Cable plan

The Sensor Unit is connected to all components through the spider cable. There is IMU connection, three configurable serial lines, DGNSS (Differential GNSS) correction input, 1PPS output, network communication and power inlet.

The Inertial Measurement Unit (IMU) connected to the Sensor Unit can either be a Motion Sensor and Gyro Compass (MGC), a Motion Reference Unit (MRU) or a miniMRU.



Cables

- | | |
|--|---|
| <p>A. Cable to Sensor Unit, part of spider cable, 20 metres length, female connector</p> <p>B. IMU umbilical cable with 8-pin SeaCon connector, 15 metres length</p> <p>C. Ethernet cable to external computer and other users, 5 metres length</p> <p>D. Input serial line cable for DGNSS corrections, 9-pin DSub connector, 5 metres</p> <p>E. Output serial line to DGNSS receiver, 9-pin DSub connector, 5 metres length</p> | <p>F. Output serial line for motion data to multibeam or survey computer, 9-pin DSub connector, 5 metres length</p> <p>G. Output serial line for NMEA data , 9-pin DSub connector, 5 metres length</p> <p>H. 1PPS output, 9-pin DSub connector, 5 metres length</p> <p>I. 24 VDC input, 5 metres length</p> |
|--|---|

Note: _____



Input/output serial line for DGNSS corrections is the same cable.

Related tasks

[Mounting the Sensor Unit](#), page 32

[Mounting the MRU subsea bottle](#), page 34

[Mounting the MGC subsea bottle](#), page 36

[Mounting the miniMRU subsea housing](#), page 38

Cabling for the Seapath 130 system

The Seapath system relies on communication between each system unit and between the Seapath system and external devices.

Prerequisites

Make sure that you have the cable types recommended for the installation.

Context

It is very important that all cables are correctly installed, that the proper cable types have been used, and that all cables are connected correctly.

Procedure

1. Connect the cable from the Sensor Unit to the spider cable.
2. Connect the umbilical cable to the Inertial Measurement Unit (IMU).
3. Connect the Ethernet cable to the external computer with the Seapath operator software.
4. Connect the cable with DGNSS RTK corrections to the Sensor Unit cable.
5. Connect the Sensor Unit cable with output data to the survey computer.
6. Connect the Sensor Unit cable with 1PPS output to the Echo sounder.
7. Connect 24 VDC power to the Sensor Unit cable.

Related tasks

[Mounting the Sensor Unit](#), page 32

[Mounting the MRU subsea bottle](#), page 34

[Mounting the MGC subsea bottle](#), page 36

[Mounting the miniMRU subsea housing](#), page 38

Pin layout for connectors

The pin layout for the different connectors is illustrated in the tables.

Ethernet		
Pin	Connector	Cable type/length
1	Modular 8P8C	CAT 5e STP or better 5 metres
2		
3		
6		

Input/output serial line - DGNSS corrections			
Pin	Signal	Connector	Cable type/length
2	Rx B	Female 9-pin D-sub	Shielded 5 metres
8	Rx A		
5	GND		
3	Tx B		
7	Tx A		

Output serial line for motion data - Multibeam or survey computer			
Pin	Signal	Connector	Cable type/length
2	Rx B	Female 9-pin D-sub	Shielded 5 metres
8	Rx A		
5	GND		

Output serial line NMEA data - Echo sounder			
Pin	Signal	Connector	Cable type/length
2	Rx B	Female 9-pin D-sub	Shielded 4.5 + 0.5 metres
8	Rx A		
5	GND		

PPS pulse - 1PPS output			
Pin	Signal	Connector	Cable type/length
2	1PPS Rx B	Male 9-pin D-sub	Shielded 4.5 + 0.5 metres
8	1 PPS Rx A		
5	GND		

24 VDC power				
Pin	Signal	Colour		Cable type/length
+	24 VDC	Brown	Ferrules on wires	Shielded 5 metres
-	0 VDC	White		
+	24 VDC	Green		
-	0 VDC	Yellow		

IMU - Umbilical cable with Seacon connector			
Pin	Signal	Connector	Cable type/length
1	0 VDC	Seacon 5501-1508	Umbilical cable, 4 x 2 x 0.75 mm ² 15 metres
2	24 VDC		
5	Tx B		
6	Tx A		
4	Rx B		
3	Rx A		
8	XIN		
7	LGND		

Serial lines

The serial lines can be configured in the Seapath operator software for RS-232 or RS-422 communication.

The signals between the two are shared as follows:

- RTS shares pin with Tx A
- Tx shares pin with Tx B
- CTS shares pin with Rx A

- Rx shares pin with Rx B

Ethernet connections

The system has the possibility to input and output data on individually configurable network ports.

The format and update rate are configured for each port in the **NAV Engine Configuration** > **Network**. The network ports have 10/100 Mbps capacity. For direct connection to a computer you might need a crossover cable instead of a straight-through cable.

The pin wiring for the different cable configurations is according to the table.

Straight-through			Crossover			
Signal	Pin no.		Signal	Pin no.	Pin no.	Signal
Tx+	1		Tx+	1	3	Rx+
Tx-	2		Tx-	2	6	Rx-
Rx+	3		Rx+	3	1	Tx+
Rx-	6		Rx-	6	2	Tx-

Communication interfaces

The Seapath system communicates with external equipment through input and output serial lines.

The table shows all available input/output ports available in the system. Only the DGNSS, ECHO, SURVEY and LAN1 are user configurable.

I/O properties	Type	Connected to
GNSS1	Serial, GNSS receiver no. 1	Internal GNSS antenna no. 1
GNSS2	Serial, GNSS receiver no. 2	Internal GNSS antenna no. 2
IMU	Bi-directional, RS-422	IMU (MGC, MRU, miniMRU)
DGNSS	Bi-directional, RS-232/422	GNSS corrections, user configurable

I/O properties	Type	Connected to
ECHO	Serial output, RS-232/422	Echo sounder, user configurable
SURVEY	Serial output, RS-232/422	Survey computer, user configurable
1PPS	Serial output, RS-422	External equipment
LAN1	Ethernet port, 10/100 Mbit/s	User configurable

PPS signal output

A 1 pulse-per-second (1PPS) signal synchronized with GNSS time is available from the 9-pin D-sub connector marked **PPS output** on the spider cable.

The output has galvanic separation. This RS-422 1PPS signal originates from the GNSS receiver within the Sensor Unit. The 1PPS signal is buffered and fed to the D-sub at 120 Ohm. The 1PPS signal has a pulse width of 10 ms. The 1PPS is generated exactly once every second with its rising edge synchronised to GPS time. Pin no. 8 (Rx A) on the 9-pin D-sub connector has a rising edge and pin no. 2 (Rx B) has a falling edge at the beginning of the pulse.

DGNSS corrections from Fugro Seastar

The system can receive DGNSS corrections from Fugro Seastar®.

A valid subscription to the Seastar® service must be activated. The Fugro Norway AS support team can be contacted via:

- Phone: +47 2150 1420
- Email: seastarservice@fugro.com

Note: _____



Please be aware that emails will mainly be read during the European business hours. If the request is urgent, please call the 24/7 duty phone.

Connection diagrams for interfacing DGNSS correction signals from Fugro Seastar® receiver are illustrated.

3610 DGNSS receiver

The system has two dedicated interfaces for RTK/DGNSS corrections using RS-232 or RS-422 serial communication. The Sensor Unit is connected to the Fugro Seastar® 3610 DGNSS Receiver through a spider cable.

For more detailed information on the receiver, see the *Fugro Seastar® 3610 DGNSS Receiver User Manual*.

The spider cable connection to the 3610 DGNSS Receiver is illustrated.

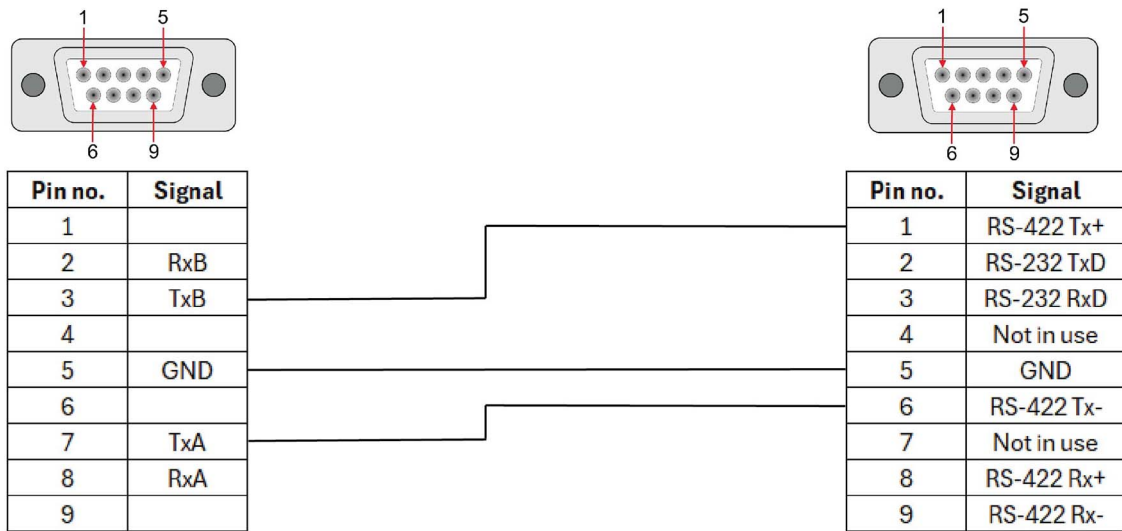
Connectors on spider cable and receiver: 9-pin D-sub, female.



Units	Cables
1. Sensor Unit	A. DGNSS serial input/output
2. DGNSS antenna	B. DGNSS antenna cable
3. 3610 DGNSS Receiver	

Interface cable for DGNSS corrections

Connectors on interface cable: 9-pin D-sub, male. Cable type: shielded.



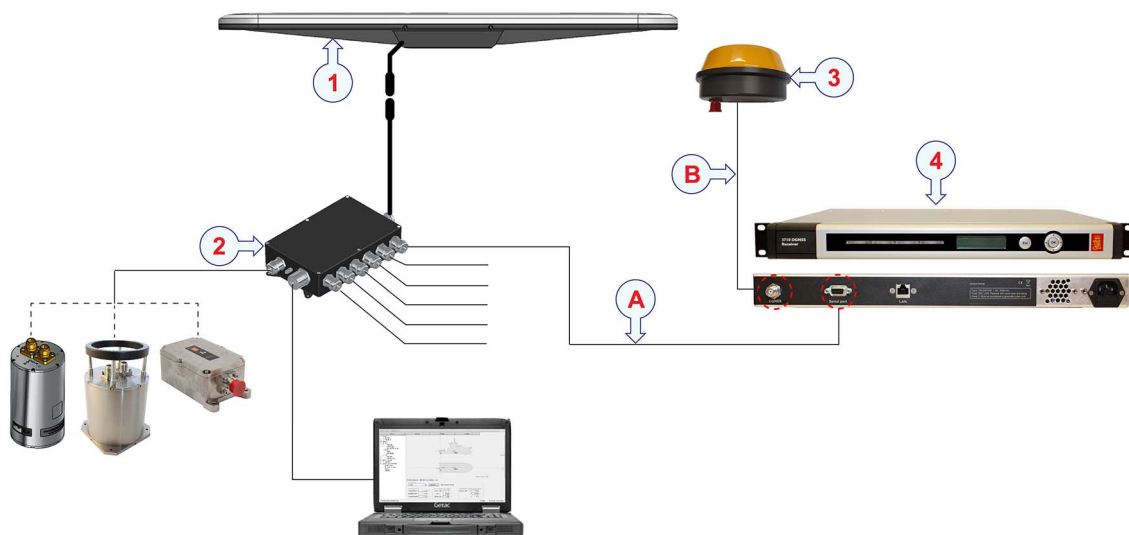
3710 DGNSS receiver

The Sensor Unit is connected to the 3710 DGNSS Receiver through a Junction Box.

The Junction Box has two dedicated interfaces for RS-232/422 serial communication for DGNSS input/output.

For more detailed information on the receiver, see the *3710 DGNSS Receiver Instruction Manual*.

Connector on receiver: 9-pin D-sub, female



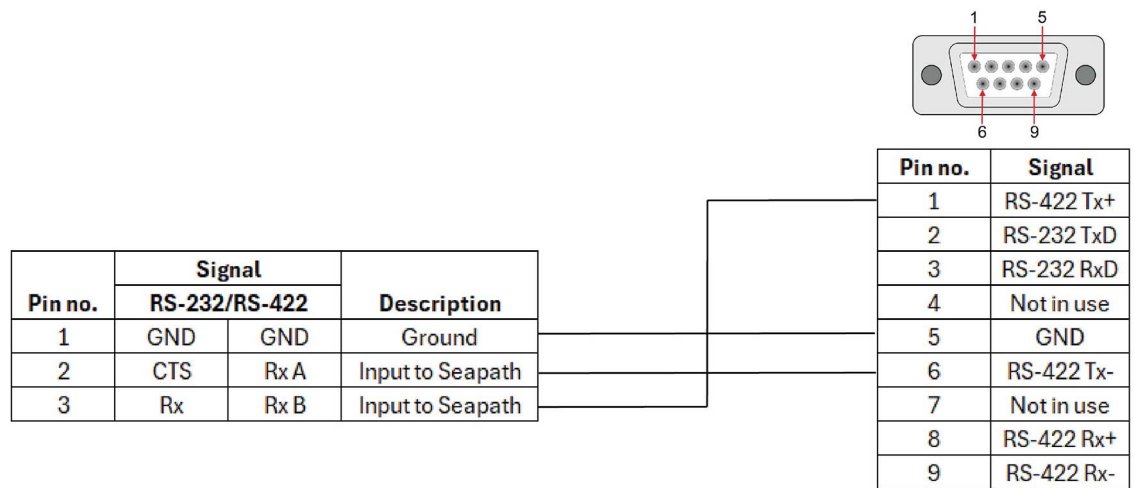
Units	Cables
1. <i>Sensor Unit</i>	A. <i>DGNSS serial input/output</i>
2. <i>Junction Box</i>	B. <i>DGNSS antenna cable</i>
3. <i>DGNSS antenna</i>	
4. <i>3710 DGNSS Receiver</i>	

Interface cable for DGNSS corrections

The cable is connected to the serial port on the receiver unit and the **GNSS IN** terminal on the Junction Box.

Connector on receiver end of cable: 9-pin D-sub, male. Cable type: shielded.

For pin layout, refer to the label inside the Junction Box.

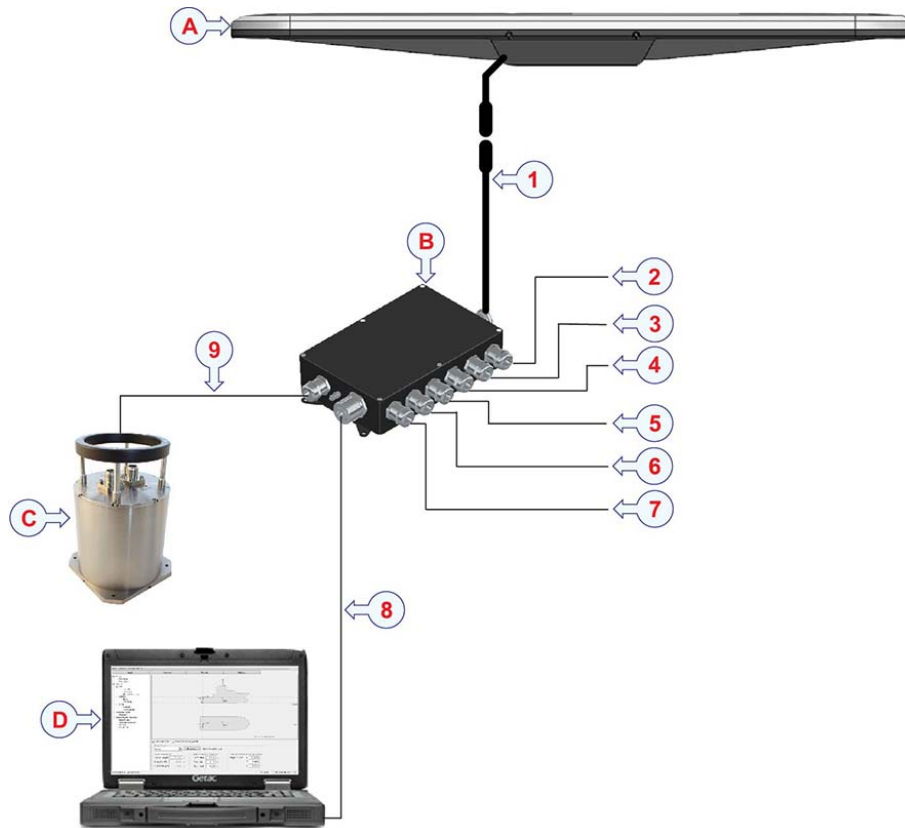


Related concepts

[Installation with Seapath 130 Junction Box](#), page 53

Installation with Seapath 130 Junction Box

For more permanent installations the system can be installed by use of the Seapath 130 Junction Box as an alternative to the spider cable.



Units	Cables
A. Sensor Unit	1. Sensor Unit cable M340-21
B. Seapath 130 Junction Box M340-22	2. Input signal line for GNSS corrections
C. MGC in subsea bottle	3. Output signal line to GNSS receiver
D. Seapath HMI on external computer	4. Output serial line for motion data
	5. Output serial line for NMEA data
	6. 1PPS output
	7. 24 VDC output

Connections within the Seapath 130 Junction Box (M340-22)

This applies to the Seapath 130 Junction Box part number: M340-22.

Connections for user side terminals P2 to P9

Note: _____



Plug the unused cable glands and tighten properly to make sure that they are watertight. This is to fulfil the enclosure protection specifications.

P2 - IMU		
Pin no.	Signal (RS-422)	Description
1	0 V	Power ground
2	24 V	Power +
3	Rx A	Signal sent to IMU
4	Rx B	Signal sent to IMU
5	Tx B	Signal sent from IMU
6	Tx A	Signal sent from IMU
7	LGND	Logical ground
8	XIN	1PPS input to IMU

P3 - ECHO			
Pin no.	Signal RS-232	Signal RS-422	Description
1	GND	GND	Ground
2	RTS	Tx A	Output from Seapath
3	Tx	Tx B	Output from Seapath

P4 - PPS		
Pin no.	Signal (RS-422)	Description
1	GND	Ground
2	Tx A	Output from Seapath
3	Tx B	Output from Seapath

P5 - SURVEY			
Pin no.	Signal RS-232	Signal RS-422	Description
1	GND	GND	Ground
2	RTS	Tx A	Output from Seapath
3	Tx	Tx B	Output from Seapath

P6 - GNSS OUT			
Pin no.	Signal RS-232	Signal RS-422	Description
1	GND	GND	Ground
2	RTS	Tx A	Output from Seapath
3	Tx	Tx B	Output from Seapath

P7 - GNSS IN			
Pin no.	Signal RS-232	Signal RS-422	Description
1	GND	GND	Ground
2	RTS	Rx A	Input to Seapath
3	Rx	Rx B	Input to Seapath

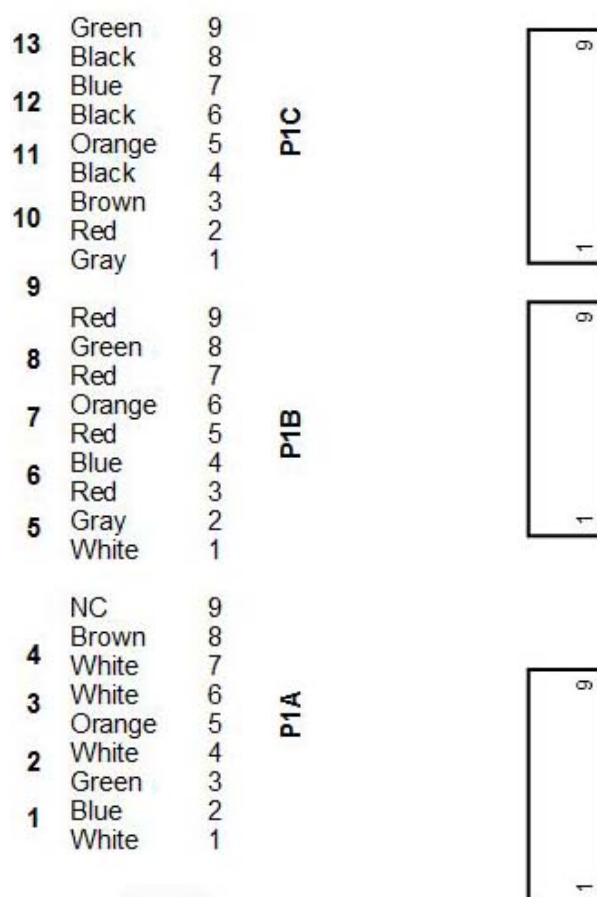
P8 - 24 Volt		
Pin no.	Signal	Description
1	0 V	Power ground
2	24 V	Power +

P9 - ETHERNET		
Pin no.	Signal	Description
1	RJ1_Tx D+	TD+, Ethernet
2	RJ2_Tx D-	TD-, Ethernet
3	RJ3_Rx D+	RD+, Ethernet
4	RJ6_Rx D-	RD-, Ethernet

Connections for the Sensor Unit cable (M340-21)

This applies to the Sensor Unit cable part number: M340-21.

Connections for user side terminal P1 of Sensor Unit cable



Cable wiring for Sensor Unit cable

Sensor Unit cable part number: M340-21.

Souriau 26-pin		Signal description	Conductor	
Signal	Conn.		Pair no.	Colour
PWR+	R	Power supply (+24 V)	1a	White
PWR-	B	Power supply (0V)	1b	Blue
ETH Rx D-	C	RD-, Ethernet	2a	White
ETH Rx D+	T	RD+, Ethernet	2b	Orange
ETH Tx D-	S	TD-, Ethernet	3a	White
ETH Tx D+	P	TD+, Ethernet	3b	Green

Souriau 26-pin		Signal description	Conductor	
Signal	Conn.		Pair no.	Colour
GNSS CTS Rx A	G	RS-422A or RS-232 input signal from GNSS receiver	4a	White
GNSS Rx Rx B	H	RS-422B or RS-232 input signal from GNSS receiver	4b	Brown
GNSS RTS Tx A	X	RS-422A/RS-232 output signal to GNSS receiver	5a	White
GNSS Tx Tx B	A	RS-422B/RS-232 output signal to GNSS receiver	5b	Grey
GNSS GND	J	GND GNSS receiver	6a	Red
Survey GND	K	GND survey computer	6b	Blue
Survey Tx Tx B	c	RS-422B+/RS-232 output signal to survey computer	7a	Red
Survey RTS Tx A	M	RS-422A-/RS-232 output signal to	7b	Orange
1PPS Tx B	E	RS-422B+ output 1PPS signal	8a	Red
1PPS Tx A	Y	RS-422A- output 1PPS signal	8b	Green
1PPS GND	a	GND for 1 PPS signal	9a	Red
Echo GND	U	GND for echo sounder	9b	Grey
Echo Tx Tx B	V	RS-422B+/RS-232 output signal to echo sounder	10a	Red
Echo RTS Tx A	L	RS-422A-/RS-232 output signal to echo sounder	10b	Brown
IMU Rx A	Z	RS-422A- input signal from IMU	11a	Black
IMU Rx B	W	RS-422B+ input signal from IMU	11b	Orange
IMU Tx A	b	RS-422A- output signal to IMU	12a	Black
IMU Tx B	F	RS-422B+ input signal from IMU	12b	Blue
IMU GND	D	GND for IMU	13a	Black
IMU 1PPS P Tx B	N	1PPS signal to IMU (XIN)	13b	Green
		Not connected	14a	Black
		Not connected	14b	Brown

Cable wiring for the MRU cable (MRU-E-SP1)

This table applies if your Inertial Measurement Unit (IMU) is a Motion Reference Unit (MRU).

This cable is used for direct connection of the MRU to the Seapath 130 Junction Box.

MRU cable part number: MRU-E-SP1.

Souriau		Signal description	Wire colour	Junction Box terminal
Signal	Conn.			
SHIELD	A	Screen connected to MRU housing	Screen	Gland
PWR+	R	Power supply (+24 V)	Red	2
PWR-	B	Power supply (0 V)	Blue	1
Com1 Out B	C	RS-422B+ output data from MRU	Green	5
Com1 Out A	T	RS-422A- output data from MRU	Yellow	6
Com1 In B	S	RS-422B+ input data to MRU	Brown	4
Com1 In A	P	RS-422A- input data to MRU	White	3
CGND/LgnD	a	Communication ground	Pink	7
XIN	U	Signal to MRU, 5 Volt or RS-232 level	Grey	8

MRU cable wiring to Seapath 130 Junction Box

This table applies if your Inertial Measurement Unit (IMU) is a Motion Reference Unit (MRU).

A cable of type 110-0060858, 90.076 or similar is used to connect the MRU signal between the Seapath 130 Junction Box (M340-22) on P2-MRU and the MRU Junction Box (MRU-E-JB3) on P2/P3 side.

M340-22 P2-MRU	Signal	Description	MRU Junction Box	MRU connector
Pin no.			Pin no.	Pin no.
1	GND (0 V)	Power ground	2 (P2 side)	B
2	24V_MRU	Power +	1 (P2 side)	R
3	Rx A	Signal sent to MRU	4 (P2 side)	T
4	Rx B	Signal sent to MRU	3 (P2 side)	C
5	Tx B	Signal sent from MRU	5 (P2 side)	S
6	Tx A	Signal sent from MRU	6 (P2 side)	P
7	LGND	Logical ground	24 (P2 side)	a
8	XIN	1PPS input to MRU	23 (P2 side)	U

Related concepts

[DGNSS corrections from Fugro Seastar](#), page 49

Surveying sensors on vessels

Topics

- [About sensor survey, page 60](#)
- [Vessel coordinate system, page 61](#)
- [Determining the Sensor Unit position and orientation, page 62](#)
- [Determining the MRU mounting orientation, page 64](#)
- [Determining the MGC mounting orientation, page 67](#)
- [Determining the miniMRU mounting orientation, page 69](#)
- [Surveying the Sensor Unit, page 70](#)
- [Surveying the MRU subsea bottle, page 70](#)
- [Surveying the MGC subsea bottle, page 71](#)
- [Surveying the miniMRU subsea housing, page 72](#)
- [Determining the system coordinates, page 73](#)
- [Survey accuracy values, page 75](#)

About sensor survey

In order to achieve the specified accuracy of the Seapath system, the different sensor parts of the system have to be surveyed. The position and orientation (mounting angles) of each sensor shall be referred to the vessel coordinate system.

The sensors which are used in this system are:

- The Inertial Measurement Unit (IMU) in subsea bottle
 - The IMU can be an MRU (Motion Reference Unit), a miniMRU or an MGC (Motion Sensor and Gyro Compass).
- The Sensor Unit (position and heading)

For information on sensor point location for the MGC, MRU and miniMRU, refer to their respective installation manuals.

Related tasks

[Entering antenna location parameters](#), page 104

[Setting MRU location and mounting angles](#), page 111

[Setting MGC location and mounting angles](#), page 115

[Setting miniMRU location and mounting angles](#), page 119

Vessel coordinate system

The vessel coordinate system is established in order to define the relative physical locations and orientations of systems and sensors. It is a Cartesian coordinate system using three axes: X, Y and Z. X is positive forwards, Y is positive toward starboard and Z is positive downwards.

The coordinate system must be well defined. It is usually established by surveying and documenting coordinates of several points on the vessel. The X axis is in the longitudinal direction of the vessel. The Y axis is in the transverse direction of the vessel. The Z axis is perpendicular to the X and Y axes.

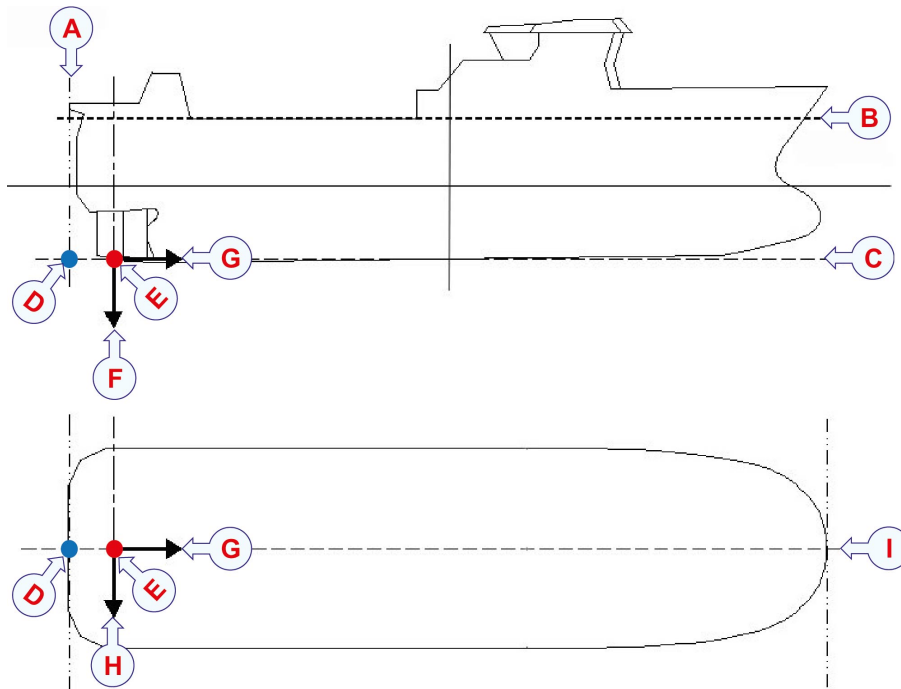
The X and Y axes constitute the reference plane on the vessel. This can be a best-fit plane on the main deck or a best-fit plane through the draught marks on the hull.

When establishing the vessel coordinate system, the origin can be freely chosen. Typical choices for origin are frame 0 at keel level, the vessel's centre of gravity (CG) or the location of the Inertial Measurement Unit. But any convenient point can be used.

In addition to the coordinate system it is useful to have an approximate X, Y and Z offset from the common reference point (CRP) to origin. The common reference point (CRP) is defined to be the intersection between stern, centre line and keel.

The chosen conventions must be made clear to all parties involved. Both to the survey personnel performing the survey and to the users of the survey results. Any deviation from the defined coordinate system should be well described in both text and drawings to avoid common misunderstandings.

The illustration shows the definition of origin on the vessel and positive X, Y and Z axes directions.

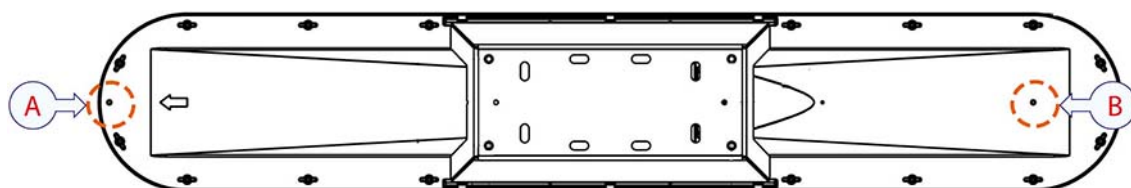


- | | |
|--|----------------------------|
| A. Stern | F. +Z axis |
| B. Main deck | G. +X axis |
| C. Keel | H. +Y axis |
| D. CRP (common reference point) | I. CL (centre line) |
| E. Origin | |

Determining the Sensor Unit position and orientation

The reference points on the Sensor Unit are used to determine the position and orientation of the unit on the vessel where it is mounted.

The reference points on the unit are illustrated.

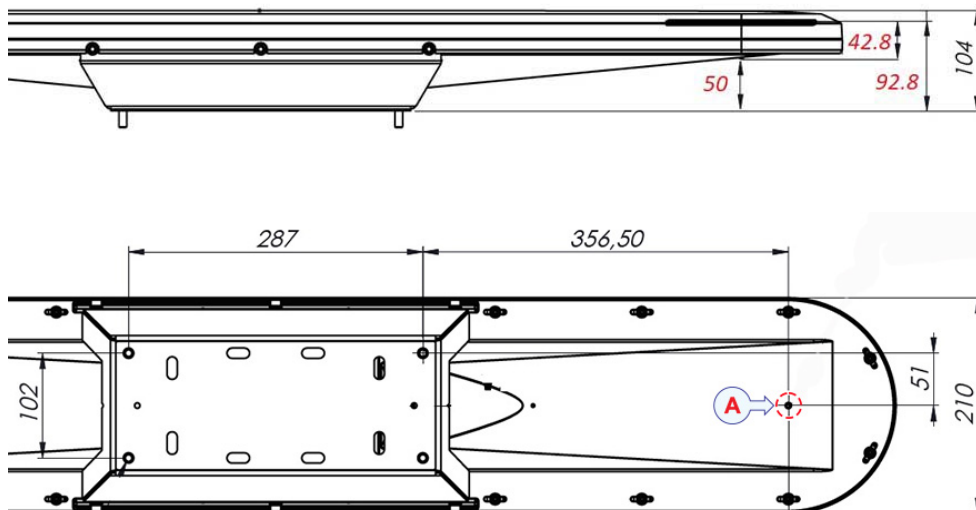


- A.** Heading reference point #2

- B.** *Position reference point and centre of the internal GNSS antenna no. 1 and Heading reference point #1.*

Position reference point

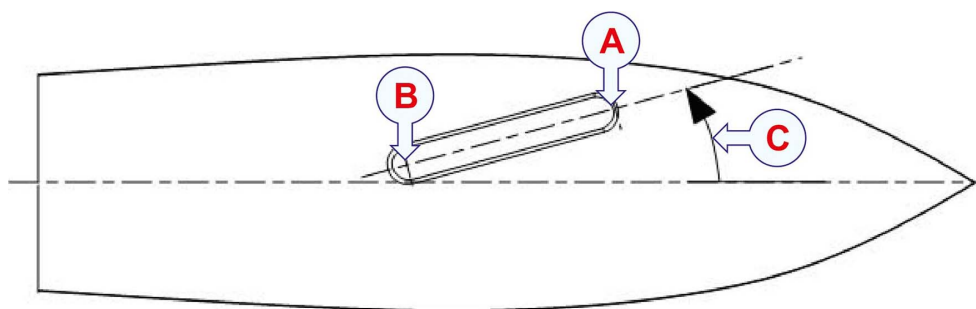
The illustrations show the location of the position reference point in the Z direction. The height of the point is 92.8 mm above the Sensor Unit holder.



- A.** *Position reference point (sensor point)*

Heading reference points

The location of the two heading reference points is used for determining the mounting angle, or the heading offset. The angular offset between the line from heading reference point #1 to heading reference point #2 and the vessel centre line (CL) has to be determined and entered into the **NAVEngine configuration** as the heading offset.



- A.** *Heading reference point #2*
B. *Heading reference point #1*
C. *Heading offset*

Related tasks

[Entering antenna location parameters](#), page 104

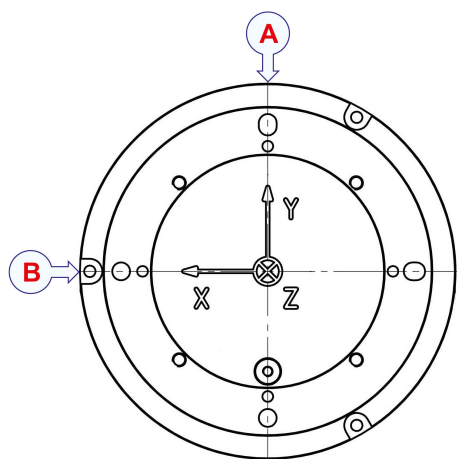
Determining the MRU mounting orientation

The default mounting position is defined with the MRU (Motion Reference Unit) connector facing downward, the x-axis pointing forward and the y-axis pointing to starboard. The directions marked on the MRU housing (x, y, z) should be aligned with the vessel axes in the following way:

- The x-axis (x arrow) points in the bow (forward) direction of the vessel
- The y-axis (y arrow) points horizontally and starboard
- The z-axis points in the downward direction

Top view of MRU with x, y and z direction

The illustration shows the mounting orientation of the x, y and z indexes at the top of the MRU according to the axes of the vessel.

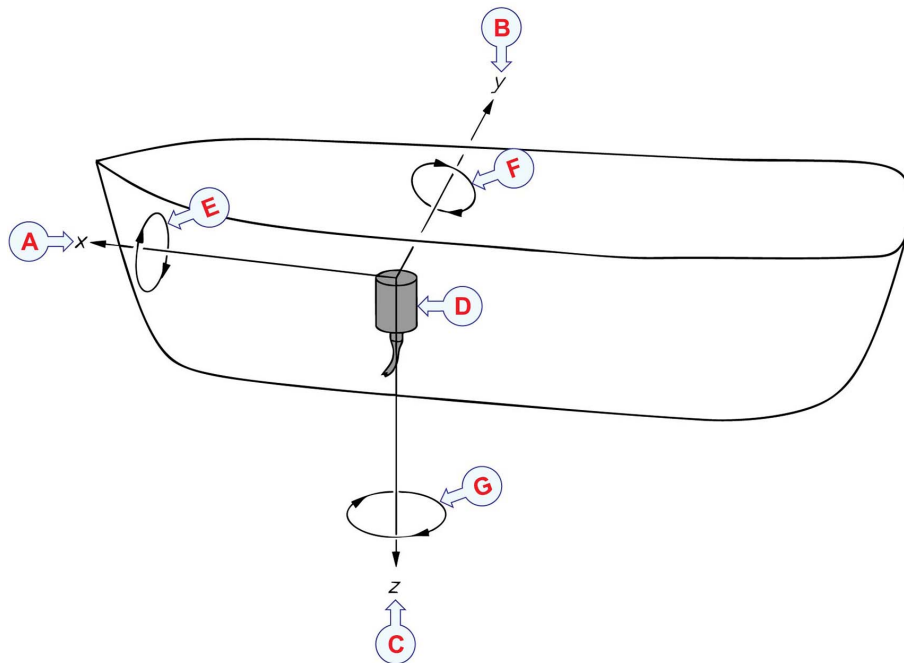


A. *To starboard*

B. *Bow direction*

Default MRU mounting position

The illustration shows the default mounting position of the MRU.



- | | |
|---|--|
| <p>A. <i>x-axis</i>
<i>x = Bow (forward) direction</i></p> <p>B. <i>y-axis</i>
<i>y = Starboard</i></p> <p>C. <i>z-axis</i>
<i>Ships down (not vertical)</i></p> | <p>D. <i>MRU location - normal mounting with connector downward</i></p> <p>E. <i>Positive roll means starboard side down</i></p> <p>F. <i>Positive pitch means bow up</i></p> <p>G. <i>Positive yaw (heading) turn starboard</i></p> |
|---|--|

Positive (+) output signals from the MRU include:

- Positive pitch means bow up, or a clockwise rotation about the y-axis.
- Positive roll means starboard (right) side facing downward, or a clockwise rotation about the x-axis.
- Positive yaw (heading, azimuth) means a turn to starboard (right), or a clockwise rotation about the z-axis.

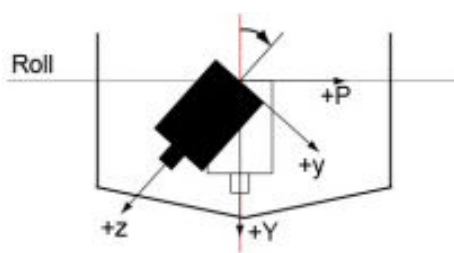
The MRU is best mounted with the logical axes in the direction described above to avoid confusion and problems with the definition of the roll, pitch and yaw output angles. However, the MRU can be mounted in any orientation relative to the above mentioned logical axes. In this case, the offset angles between the MRU axes (x, y, z) and the ship's axes (R, P, Y) are simply entered in the **NAV Engine configuration**, under **Sensors > MRU > Geometry**.

The MRU Mounting Wizard is available to assist in determining the MRU mounting angles. This mounting wizard starts with applying the main rotation which means to change the mounting angles in steps of 90-degrees for each axis. After applying the main rotation of the MRU, the subsea bottle offset angles are defined as the remaining offset angles of the MRU axes (x, y, z) relative to the ship's axes (R, P, Y). The roll and pitch bracket offset angles can be interpreted as the bottle's tilt angles relative to the ship's deck plane (horizontal plane). Be aware that these angles are not exactly the same as the MRU roll and pitch mounting angles. The MRU mounting angle wizard will convert the measured offset bottle angles into the corresponding roll, pitch and yaw mounting angles (Euler angles) which are used in the MRU.

The bottle offset angles are defined as:

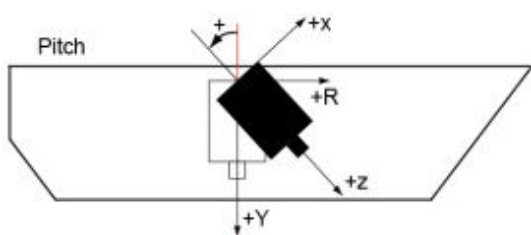
Roll offset angle

The angle between the ship's Y-axis and the projection of the MRU z- axis in the ship's PY-plane.



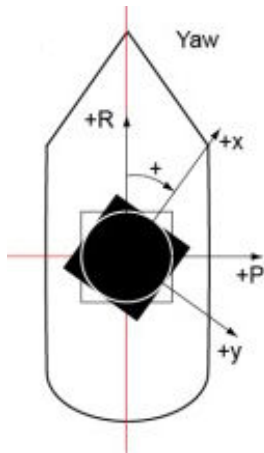
Pitch offset angle

The angle between the ship's Y-axis and the projection of the MRU z-axis in the ship's RY-plane.



Yaw offset angle

The angle between the ship's R-axis and the projection of the MRU x-axis in the ship's RP-plane.



The illustrations show the positive roll offset angle if the bottle tilts to starboard. The positive pitch offset angle if the bottle tilts to stern and the positive yaw offset angle if bottle is rotated clockwise.

Note: _____

i Mounting of the MRU with the x-axis (x arrow) pointing up (0, 90, 0) or down (0, -90, 0) should be avoided due to the fact that there is a singularity in the Euler angle representation for a 90-degree pitch angle. Therefore, the MRU mounting wizard does not support these orientations.

Note: _____

i If the offset angles exceed 45 degrees, another main rotation should be selected.

Related tasks

[Setting MRU location and mounting angles](#), page 111

Determining the MGC mounting orientation

The default mounting orientation of the Motion Sensor and Gyro Compass (MGC) is defined with the top cover facing downward and the x-axis pointing forward. This is the main orientation direction for the MGC. The sensor is then rotated 180 degrees round the x-axis.

The body axes will then be:

- The R-axis (x arrow) points in the bow (forward) direction of the vessel.
- The P-axis points horizontally and starboard.

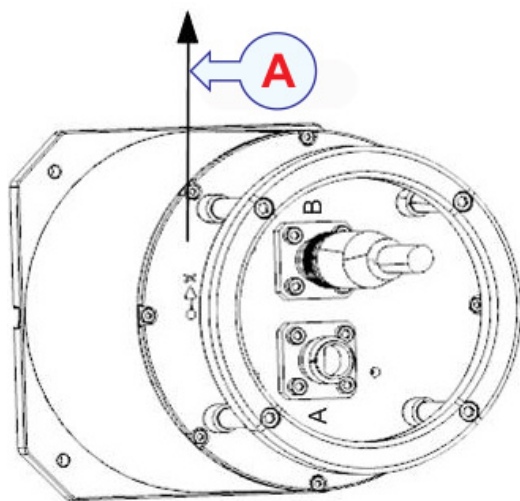
- The Y-axis points in the downward direction.

Note: _____

i The x, y, z axes with the x arrow marked on the top cover is the axes orientation in the sensor frame. When mounting angles are input in the sensor configuration the sensor output axes is rotated from the sensor-frame to the body-frame (R, P, Y axes).

MGC with bow direction indicated

The illustration shows the MGC mounting orientation with the SB50 subsea bottle. The connector faces upward and the bow direction, R, is indicated.



A. Bow direction (R)

Positive (+) output signals from the MGC include:

- Positive pitch means bow up, or a clockwise rotation about the P-axis.
- Positive roll means starboard (right) side facing downward, or a clockwise rotation about the R-axis.
- Positive yaw (heading, azimuth) means a turn to starboard (right), or a clockwise rotation about the Y-axis.

Related tasks

[Setting MGC location and mounting angles](#), page 115

Determining the miniMRU mounting orientation

The default mounting orientation is defined with the connector and x-axis pointing forward, the y-axis pointing to starboard and the z-axis pointing downward.

The illustration shows the mounting orientation with the miniMRU sensor unit connector facing forward. This is the main orientation direction for this sensor. The sensor is then rotated 180 degrees around the x-axis.

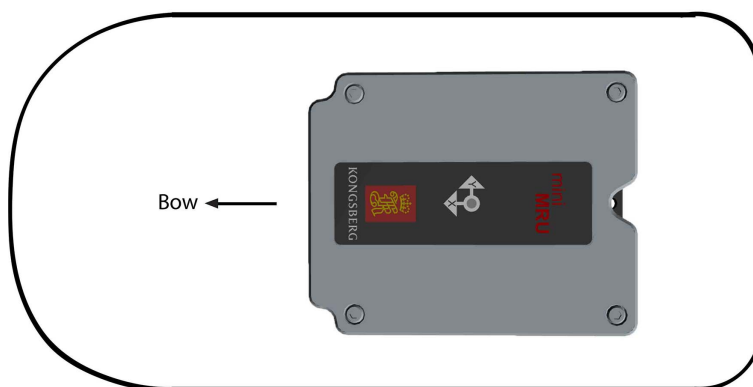
The body axes will then be:

- The R-axis (x arrow) points in the bow direction of the vehicle
- The P-axis (y arrow) points horizontally and starboard.
- The Y-axis points in the downward direction.

Note: _____

i *The x, y, z axes with the x and y arrow marked on the sensor top is the axes orientation in the sensor frame. When mounting angles are input in the sensor configuration, the sensor output axes are rotated from the sensor-frame to the body-frame (R, P, Y axes).*

The illustration shows the default mounting orientation for the sensor unit with the x arrow pointing in the bow direction of the vessel. The top view of the sensor unit with bow and x arrow direction is indicated.



Related tasks

[Setting miniMRU location and mounting angles](#), page 119

Surveying the Sensor Unit

For the Sensor Unit the following should be surveyed:

- The position reference point(X, Y, Z) on the Sensor Unit.

The distance vector from the origin to the position reference point has to be measured up.

- The mounting angle in heading.

The angular offset between the vessel centre line (CL) and the line from heading reference point #1 to heading reference point #2 and has to be determined and input as heading offset in the **NAVEngine configuration**.

Related concepts

[Survey accuracy values](#), page 75

Related tasks

[Entering antenna location parameters](#), page 104

Surveying the MRU subsea bottle

For the Motion Reference Unit (MRU) subsea bottle the following should be surveyed:

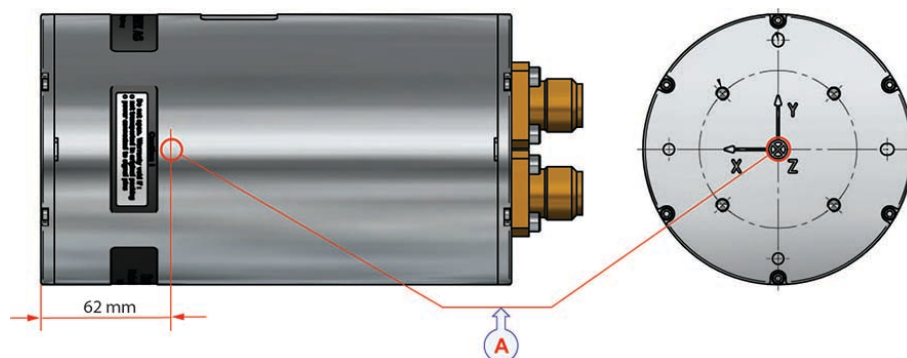
- The position (X, Y, Z) of the sensor point on the MRU.

The axis cross centre on the MRU subsea bottle index lid. The distance vector from the origin to the MRU sensor point has to be measured up.

- The mounting angles in roll, pitch and yaw (heading).

The MRU misalignment angles in roll, pitch and yaw with the vessel's axis have to be measured up.

Sensor point and position for the MRU subsea bottle

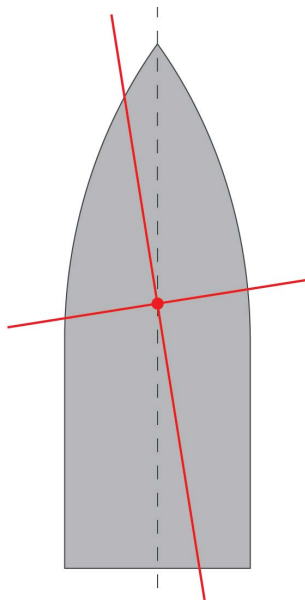


A. Sensor point and position (0, 0, 0) for the subsea bottle**Alignment axis**

After the mechanical installation is completed, the MRU x, y and z axes must be aligned to the corresponding vessel axes or the axes of the system to be compensated. To achieve the MRU's specified roll and pitch accuracy, any misalignment of the MRU axes with the vessel axes must be precisely calculated and accounted for.

A typical alignment process consists of aligning the MRU axes to an external reference. The type of reference must be determined according to the required accuracy.

The illustrations shows the alignment of the MRU yaw axis to the vessel's longitudinal axis.

**Related concepts**

[Survey accuracy values](#), page 75

Related tasks

[Setting MRU location and mounting angles](#), page 111

Surveying the MGC subsea bottle

For the Motion Sensor and Gyro Compass (MGC) the following should be surveyed:

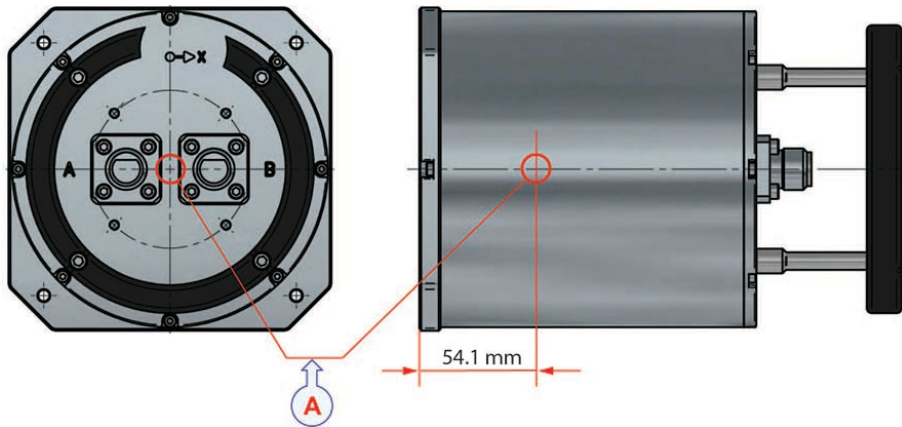
- The position (X, Y, Z) of the sensor point on the MGC subsea bottle.

The distance vector from the origin to the MGC sensor point has to be measured up.

- The mounting angles in roll, pitch and yaw (heading).

The MGC misalignment angles in roll, pitch and yaw with the vessel's axes have to be measured up.

Sensor point and position for the MGC subsea bottle



A. Sensor point and position (0, 0, 0) for the subsea bottle

Related concepts

[Survey accuracy values](#), page 75

Related tasks

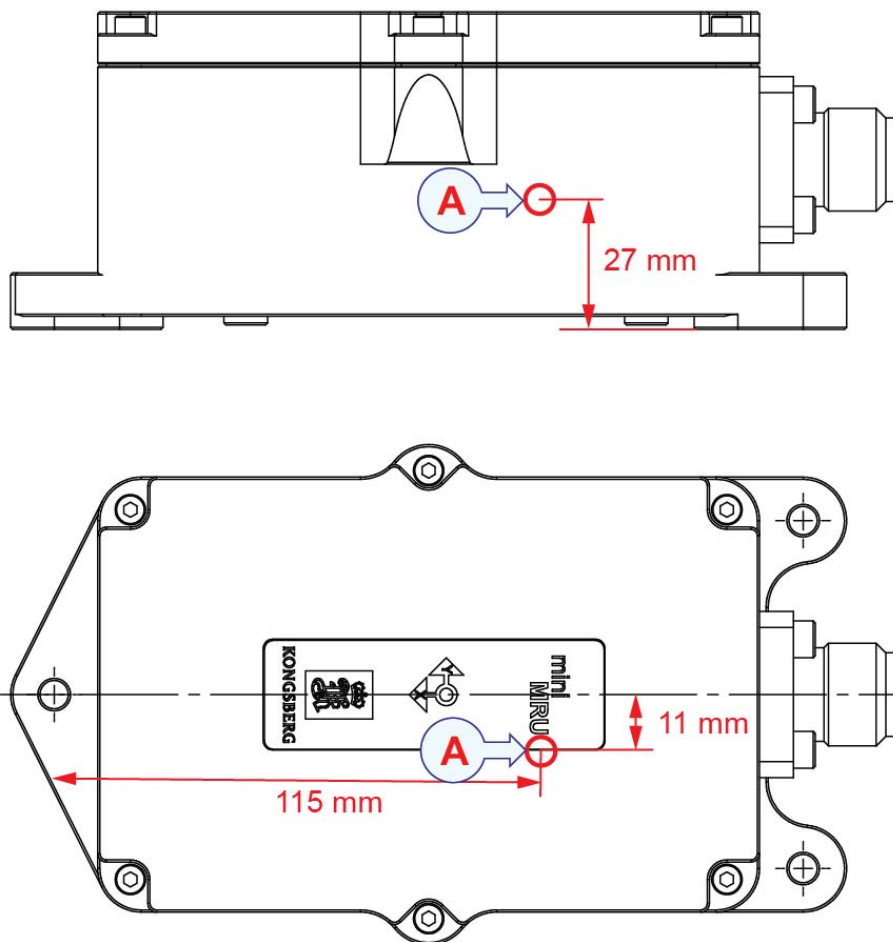
[Setting MGC location and mounting angles](#), page 115

Surveying the miniMRU subsea housing

For the miniMRU subsea housing the following should be surveyed:

- The position (X,Y,Z) of the sensor point. The axis cross centre on the miniMRU subsea housing is illustrated.
- The mounting angles in roll, pitch and yaw (heading).

The illustration shows the sensor point and position (0, 0, 0) for all miniMRU subsea housings.



A. Sensor point and position (0, 0, 0) for the subsea housing

Related concepts

[Survey accuracy values](#), page 75

Related tasks

[Setting miniMRU location and mounting angles](#), page 119

Determining the system coordinates

The Inertial Measurement Unit (IMU) and the Sensor Unit both measure the motion for the location where they are positioned. These measurements must be transformed to be able to measure the motion in a common reference point, the navigation reference point (NRP). The NRP is the reference point for all measurements in this system.

The coordinates for the sensor positions, the navigation reference point (NRP) and the monitoring points (MP) relative to origin must be determined and input to the operator software.

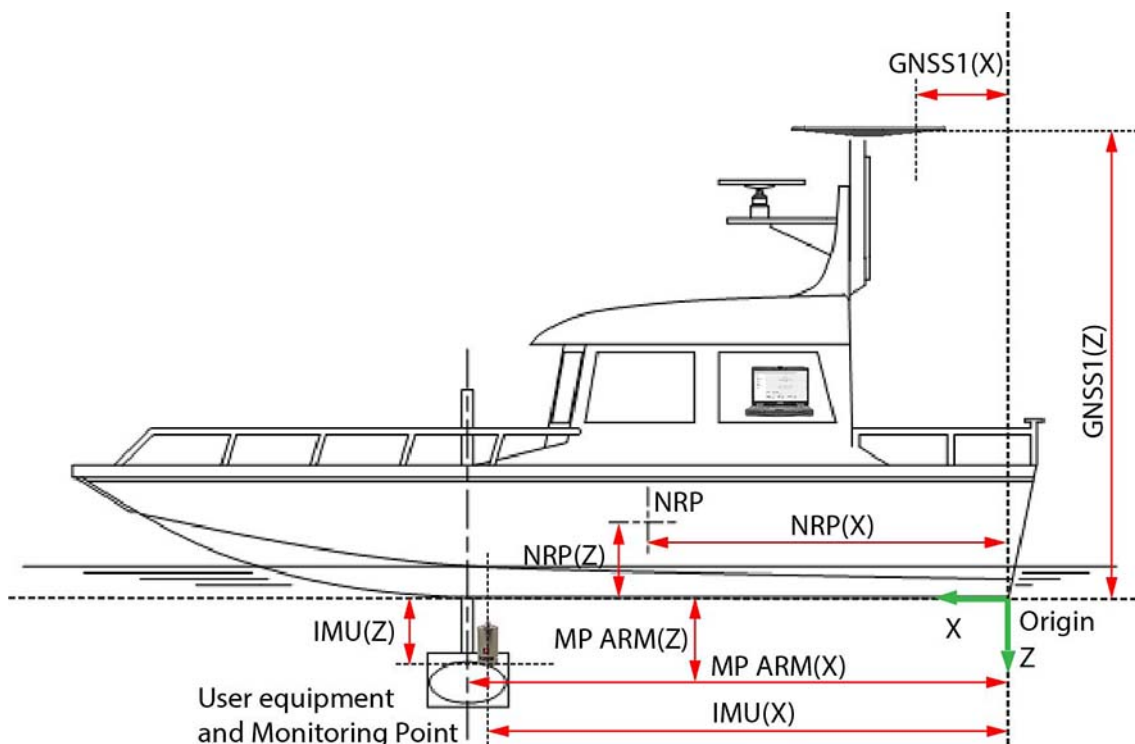
- The distance vector from origin to the position reference point, GNSS antenna #1. (Coordinates for the GNSS antenna.)
- The distance vector from origin to the Inertial Measurement Unit (IMU) location. (Coordinates for the IMU location.)
- The distance vector from origin to the selected navigation reference point (NRP) location. (Coordinates for the selected NRP location.)
- The distance vector from origin to each of the monitoring points. (Coordinates for each of the monitoring points.) Maximum eight monitoring points (MP) in this system.

All these distance vectors have to be measured or calculated based upon drawings or previously measured points. These coordinates must be measured within a specific accuracy.

Positive directions for these parameters are:

- X – positive forwards
- Y – positive towards starboard
- Z – positive downwards, with origin as the reference point

The illustration shows the coordinates for the different components.



Related tasks

[Setting vessel dimensions and reference points](#), page 101

[Entering antenna location parameters](#), page 104

[Setting MRU location and mounting angles](#), page 111

[Setting MGC location and mounting angles](#), page 115

[Setting miniMRU location and mounting angles](#), page 119

[Setting monitoring points](#), page 125

Survey accuracy values

The system must be surveyed according to the given accuracy level. If not, the performance of the system will be degraded.

- The coordinates for the Sensor Unit position reference point (X, Y, Z) < 0.01 metre
- The coordinates for the user defined monitoring points (MP) (X, Y, Z): < 0.01 metre
- The coordinates for the selected navigation reference point (NRP) location (X, Y, Z): < 0.01 metre
- The IMU offset angles (roll, pitch) with the vessel axis: < 0.1°
- The IMU yaw offset angles with the vessel axis: < 0.1°

Related concepts

[Surveying the Sensor Unit](#), page 70

[Surveying the MRU subsea bottle](#), page 70

[Surveying the MGC subsea bottle](#), page 71

[Surveying the miniMRU subsea housing](#), page 72

Related tasks

[Setting vessel dimensions and reference points](#), page 101

[Entering antenna location parameters](#), page 104

[Using Calibration Wizard to determine antenna parameters](#), page 106

[Setting MRU location and mounting angles](#), page 111

[Using Mounting Wizard to determine MRU mounting angles](#), page 112

[Setting MGC location and mounting angles](#), page 115

[Using Mounting Wizard to determine MGC mounting angles](#), page 117

[Setting miniMRU location and mounting angles](#), page 119

[Using Mounting Wizard to determine miniMRU mounting angles](#), page 121

[Setting monitoring points](#), page 125

Portable Hydrographic System (PHS) installation

Topics

[About Portable Hydrographic System \(PHS\) installation, page 76](#)

[System diagram, page 77](#)

[Front interfaces Processing Unit, page 79](#)

[Interface cables to Portable Processing Unit, page 79](#)

[General Seapath configuration for PHS, page 84](#)

[Setting up Seapath for SIS version 4 users, page 87](#)

[Setting up Seapath for K-Controller users \(SIS version 5\), page 89](#)

About Portable Hydrographic System (PHS) installation

These are instructions for a Seapath 130 installation when it is included as a part of the Portable Hydrographic System (PHS).

Note: _____



A PHS installation only applies if your installation is with a Motion Reference Unit (MRU).

A PHS system is delivered completely set up. The software is delivered on a USB flash drive and it is pre-configured. If you want to change the configuration you must install the Seapath Operator software on a local computer. The system can also be delivered

with an over-the-side pole where all the offsets are known. All you need to do is to let the system know where on the vessel the Survey Origin of the system is located and the vertical axis offset.

This means that the Seapath is delivered already configured for being used as a part of the PHS system. Dependent on what is stated in the order acknowledgement, the Seapath will be configured according to part no. M340–SW_2040P-SIS4 or M340–SW_2040P-SIS5. This includes antenna and MRU offsets as well as serial and Ethernet outputs.

The Portable Processing Unit (PPU) has a proprietary plug for the Seapath and the Motion Reference Unit (MRU) which allows you to power the Seapath and the MRU from the PPU and use the PPU as a central hub for a single cable interface.

Related tasks

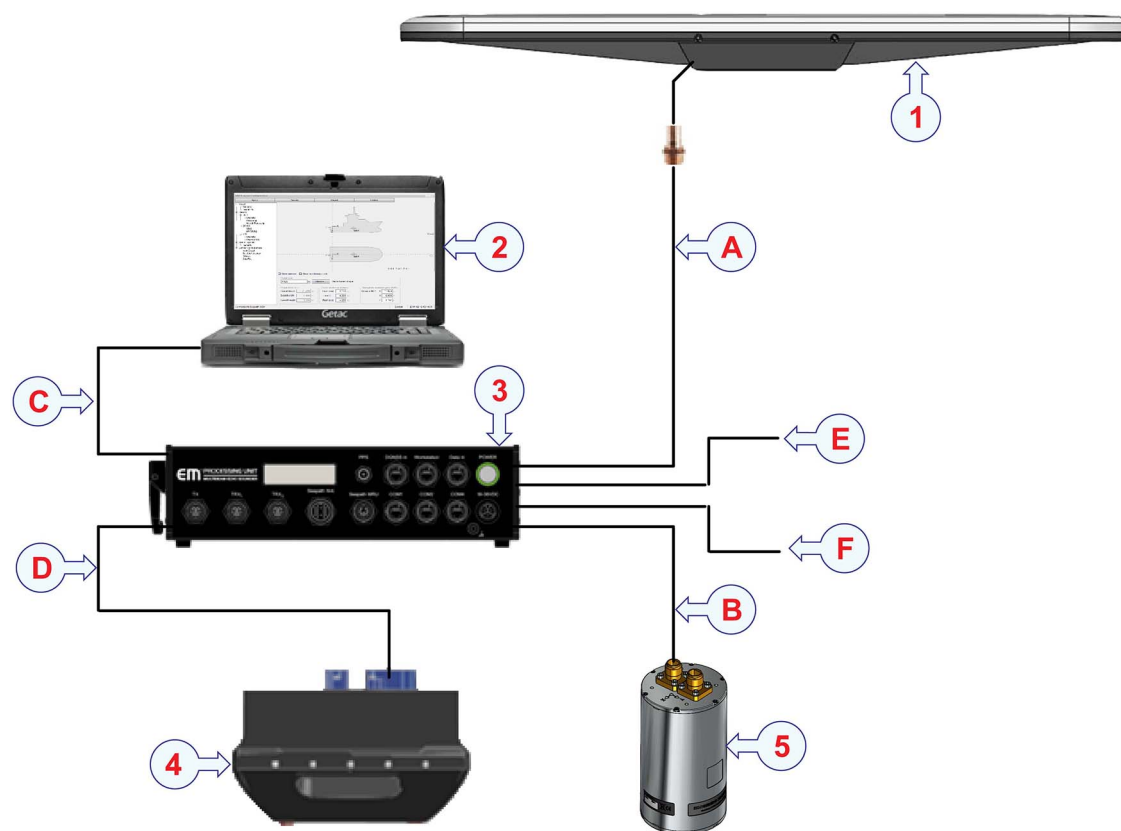
[Installing the Seapath operator software](#), page 41

[Uninstalling the Seapath operator software](#), page 42

System diagram

The system diagram identifies the main components of a Seapath 130 system installed as a part of a Portable Hydrographic System (PHS) installation.

The Inertial Measurement Unit (IMU) connected to the Sensor Unit is a Motion Reference Unit (MRU).



Units

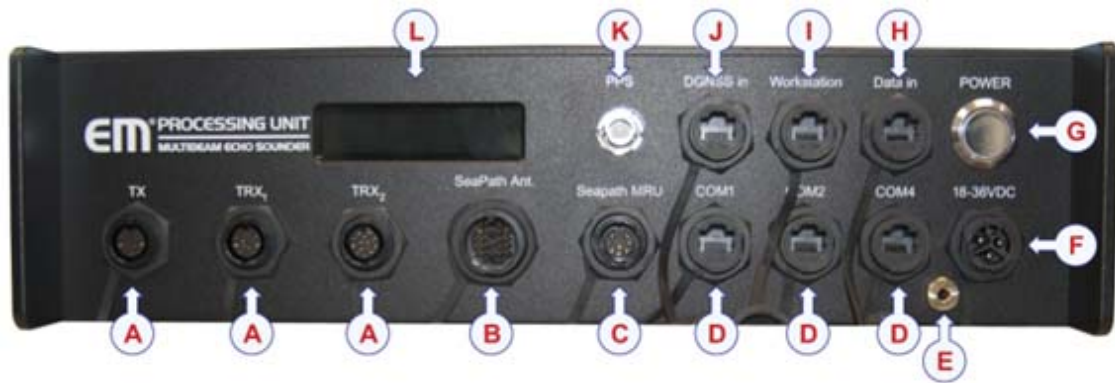
1. Sensor Unit with 1-metre cable, male connector
2. Operator software on USB flash drive to be installed on local computer
3. EM Portable Processing Unit (PPU)
4. EM2040P transducer head
5. Motion Reference Unit (MRU) in subsea bottle

Cables

- A.** Cable to Sensor Unit, 15 metres length with connector to PPU, part no. M340-24
- B.** MRU umbilical cable, 6 or 15 metres length with connector to PPU, part no. MRU-E-CS10
- C.** Ethernet cable to local computer and other users, 5 metres length
- D.** Cable from PPU to EM2040P transducer head
- E.** Cable for 24 VDC input, 3 metres length
- F.** Cable for DGNSS corrections input, 4.5 metres length

Front interfaces Processing Unit

The illustration shows the front interfaces of the Portable Processing Unit (PPU).



Cables and connectors

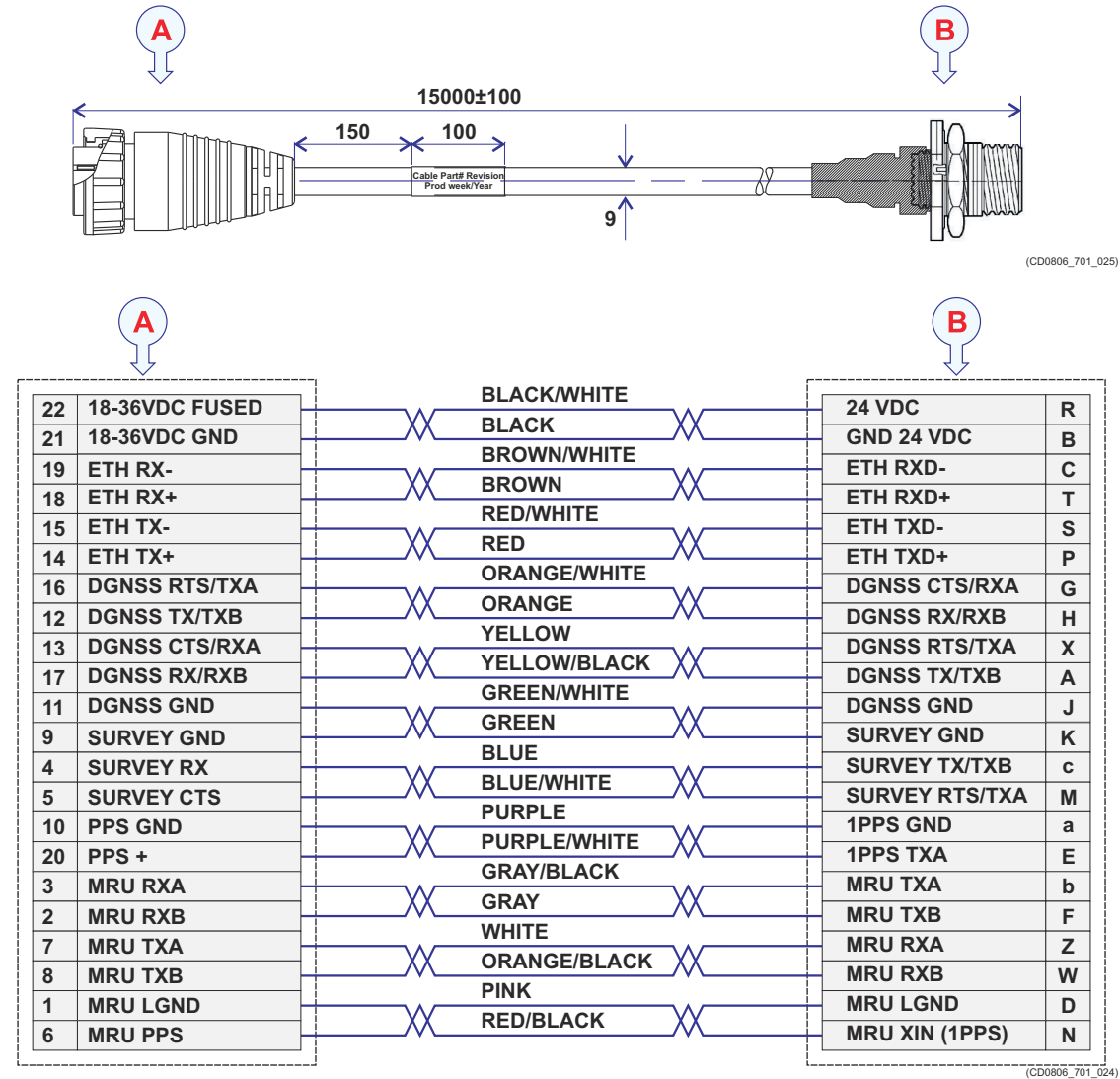
- | | |
|---|--|
| A. <i>Transducer cable input</i> | G. <i>Power on/off button</i> |
| B. <i>Seapath Sensor Unit interface cable, part no. M340-24</i> | H. <i>External data input over Ethernet including attitude velocity</i> |
| C. <i>MRU interface cable, part no. MRU-E-CS10</i> | I. <i>Hydrographic Work Station input</i> |
| D. <i>Processing Unit serial COM ports (COM3 available from Seapath)</i> | J. <i>DGNSS corrections input</i> |
| E. <i>Ground connector</i> | K. <i>1PPS input</i> |
| F. <i>18 - 36 VDC power input socket</i> | L. <i>Processing Unit display</i> |

The power on/off button indicates correct direct current polarity by a green light emitting diode (LED).

Interface cables to Portable Processing Unit

The Seapath 130 is interfaced to the Portable Hydrographic System (PHS) through two cables. The interface cable between the Sensor Unit and the Portable Processing Unit (PPU), part no. M340-24, and the interface cable between the Motion Reference Unit (MRU) and the PPU, part no. MRU-E-CS10.

Wiring for cable between Sensor Unit and PPU, M-340-24



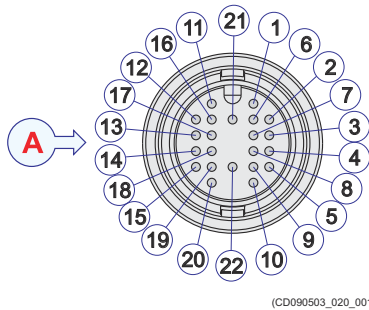
A. Local connection

Amphenol LTW DU-22BFFA-SL7000

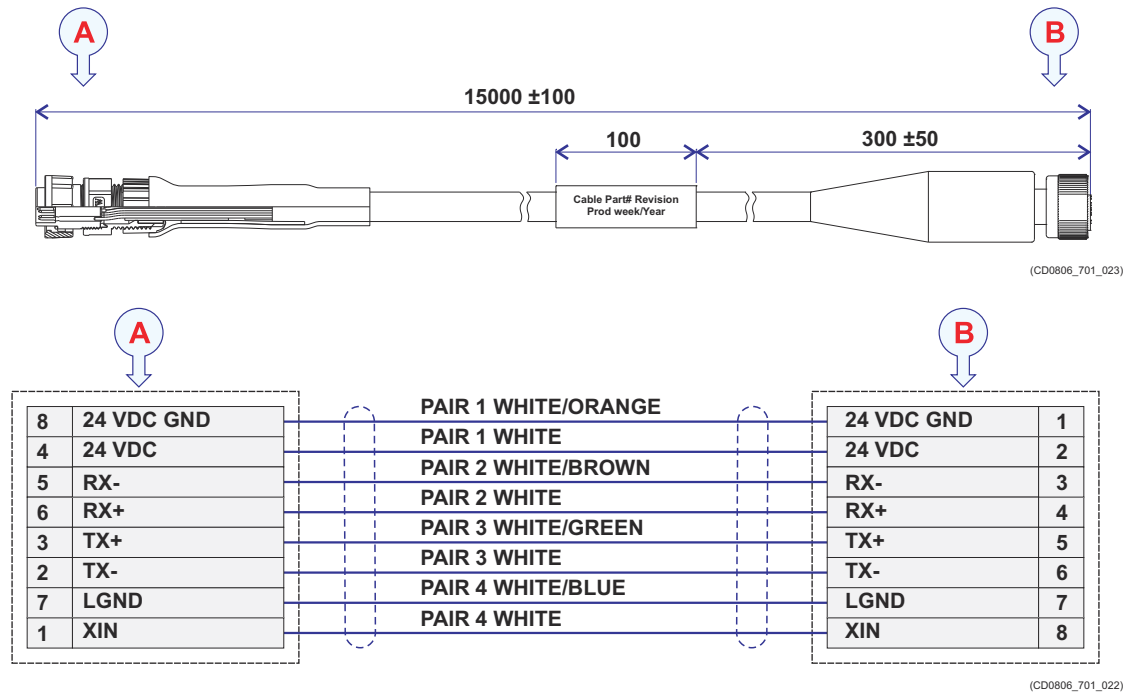
B. Connection to Seapath antenna

JVS07A1726SN

The DGNSS signal can be configured to be either RS-232 or RS-422.



Wiring for cable between MRU and PPU, MRU-E-CS10



A. Local connection

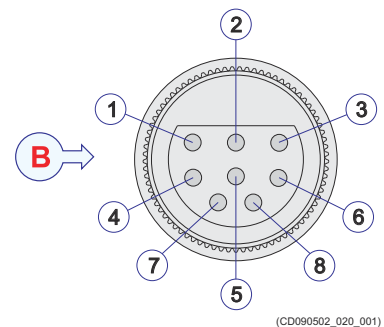
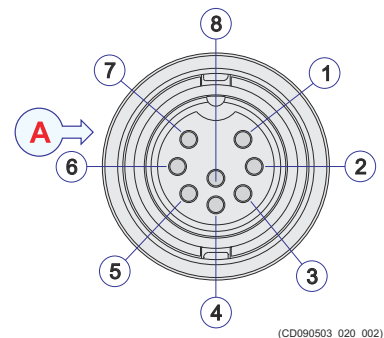
Amphenol LTW CD-08BFMA-LL7001

B. Connection to Seapath MRU

Seacon 5501-1508

Cable specification

- Cable length: 15 m
- Maximum outer diameter: 12.6 mm
- Minimum bending radius: 10 x diameter
- Conductors: 4 pairs, 23 AWG

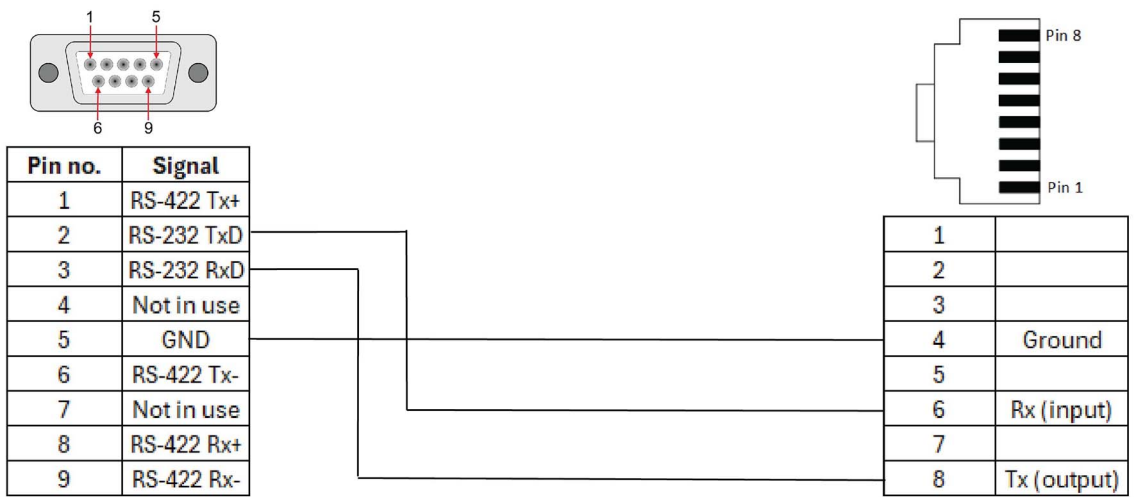


Wiring for cable between DGNSS receiver and PPU, ELD234244



Note: _____

i *Twisted pair 6 and 8. Screen to be connected in each end.*



Connection diagram for 3710 DGNSS Receiver to EM PPU

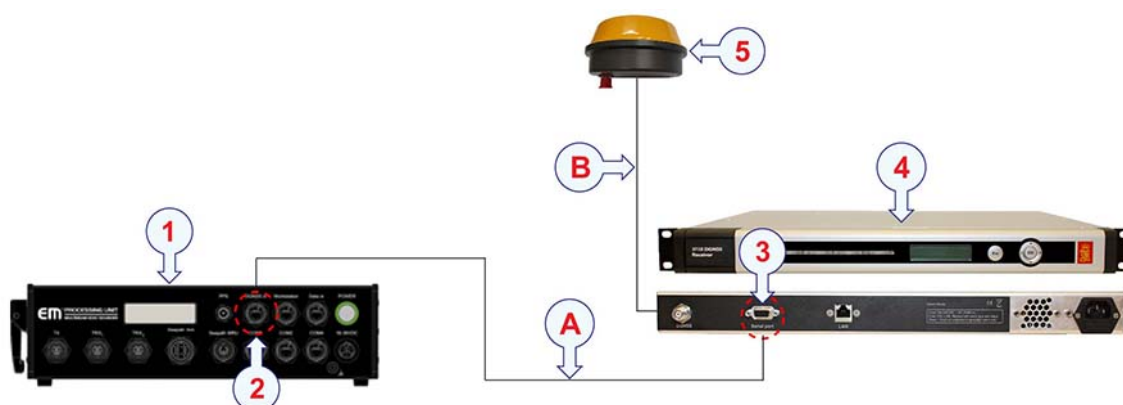
EM 2040P splash-proof Processing Unit to 3710 DGNSS Receiver.

Note: _____



The EM 2040P Portable Processing Unit (PPU) has a dedicated interface for GNSS corrections using RS-422 or RS-232 serial communication.

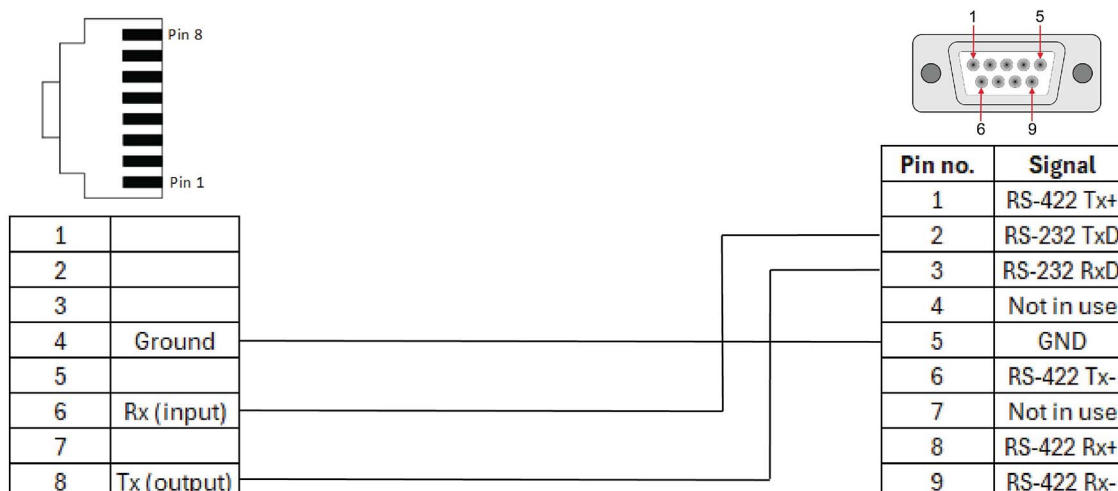
For more information on the PPU, see the *EM 2040P Installation Manual*. For more information on the DGNSS receiver unit, see the *3710 DGNSS Receiver Instruction Manual*.



RS-232 serial connection diagram for DGNSS input.

Connectors:

- Portable Processing Unit end: RJ45 connector (RS-232)
- 3710 DGNSS Receiver end: 9-pin male D-Sub connector. Cable type: shielded.

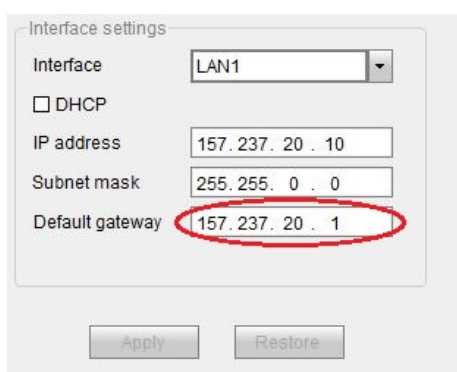


General Seapath configuration for PHS

Internet protocol (IP) setup

The EM Multibeam system is set up to work in the 157.237.xx.xx IP range. As everything is connected through the same LAN, and the Seapath Operator software needs to reach the Seapath Sensor Unit through that same network, the Seapath too needs to be set up to this range. The below settings should be applied for the Seapath Sensor Unit to work seamlessly with the Portable Processing Unit (PPU).

Select **System** menu > **NAVEngine** > **Standard** > **Network**



Interface settings

Interface: LAN1

☐ DHCP

IP address: 157.237.20.10

Subnet mask: 255.255.0.0

Default gateway: 157.237.20.1

Apply Restore

The **Default gateway** configuration (red circle) is important. While it is irrelevant for the setup, the Seapath will reset everything upon restart if the **Default gateway** is not in the same IP range.

DGNSS input setup

The DGNSS serial port as well as some generic outputs are always the same regardless of the version of SIS software package used. The DGNSS serial port is set up to receive standard RTK over RS-232 serial line.

Delayed heave set to 100 Hz over UDP port 31102. RTCM v3, IMU raw data and NMEA P25/P26/P27 are configured to be output, but not logged on file on the Seapath. Enabling logging in SIS 4 or 5 should be a matter of just pressing the Enable button in SIS. The DGNSSLink1 supplies the PHS system with RTK corrections.

The DGNSS correction is received on the DGNSS line at baud 9600 and with 1 Hz rate.

Input/Output list

Interface	Type	Direction	I/O Properties	Description
☒ DgnssLink1	Serial	In/Out	DGNSS 9600 n 8 1 rs-232	DGNSS Corrections
☐ DgnssLink2	Serial	In	DGNSS 38400 n 8 1	RTK
☐ DgnssLink3	In	NONE		Link #3
☐ DgnssLink4	In	NONE		Link #4

Disabled | OK | Warning | Error

▼ Configuration details

Interface: DgnssLink1 Description: DGNSS Corrections

Type: Serial

Cable ID:

▼ I/O properties

Port: DGNSS Baud rate: 9600 ☐ rs-232 ☐ rs-422

► Advanced

▼ DGNSS link properties

Interface: Generic Name: RTCM Timeout [s]: 60

Format: RTCM v3

Supplier: FUGRO ☒ GGA interval [s]: 1

TelegramOut5 setup

TelegramOut5 is set up to output raw GNSS data on RTCM format to allow for a lot of positioning post processing options (PPP and PPK). Generally, it is recommended to log this output in SIS if you are not using a correctional service to improve your position and can be logged in SIS.

Input/Output list

Interface	Type	Direction	I/O Properties	Description
☒ TelegramOut5	Ethernet	Out	UDP LAN1 31103 BROADCAST	rtcm v3 for logging in SIS
☒ TelegramOut6	Ethernet	Out	UDP LAN1 31102 BROADCAST	Delayed Heave for logging in SIS
☒ TelegramOut7	Ethernet	Out	UDP LAN1 31202 BROADCAST	P2X output for logging in SIS
☒ TelegramOut8	Ethernet	Out	UDP LAN1 3011 BROADCAST	RAW IMU for logging in SIS (En...

Disabled | OK | Warning | Error

▼ Configuration details

Interface: TelegramOut5 Description: rtcm v3 for logging in SIS

Type: Ethernet

Cable ID:

▼ I/O properties

☒ Broadcast ☐ Unicast ☐ Multicast

Local interface: LAN1 (157.237.20.10)

Remote port: 31103

▼ Telegram out properties

Format: RTCM v3 ☐ Log to file

TelegramOut6 setup

TelegramOut6 is set up to output delayed heave over UDP port 31102 at 100 Hz rate. The delayed heave can be logged on SIS. It is important to reference the delayed heave to the sonar head because some post processing software will struggle to manage the delayed heave in post processing if this is not done.

Input/Output list

Interface	Type	Direction	I/O Properties	Description
☒ TelegramOut6	Ethernet	Out	UDP LAN1 31102 BROADCAST	Delayed Heave for logging in SIS
☒ TelegramOut7	Ethernet	Out	UDP LAN1 31202 BROADCAST	P2X output for logging in SIS
☒ TelegramOut8	Ethernet	Out	UDP LAN1 3011 BROADCAST	RAW IMU for logging in SIS (En...
☐ TelegramOut9		Out	NONE	Telegram Out #9

● Disabled | ● OK | ● Warning | ● Error

▼ Configuration details

Interface: TelegramOut6 Description: Delayed Heave for logging in SIS

Type: Ethernet

Cable ID:

▼ I/O properties

☒ Broadcast ☐ Unicast ☐ Multicast

Local interface: LAN1 (157.237.20.10)

Remote port: 31102

▼ Telegram out properties

Format: PFreeHeave ☐ Log to file Monitoring point: EM 2040P

▼ Telegram timing

Interval [s]: 0.010 ☐ Event driven ☒ Timer driven

TelegramOut7 setup

TelegramOut7 is set up to output Seapath installation settings. Logging P2X creates a new file every time you change offsets or other installation settings in the Seapath. It is handy for post processing and can be logged in SIS.

Input/Output list

Interface	Type	Direction	I/O Properties	Description
☒ TelegramOut7	Ethernet	Out	UDP LAN1 31202 BROADCAST	P2X output for logging in SIS
☒ TelegramOut8	Ethernet	Out	UDP LAN1 3011 BROADCAST	RAW IMU for logging in SIS (En...
☐ TelegramOut9		Out	NONE	Telegram Out #9
☐ TelegramOut10		Out	NONE	Telegram Out #10

● Disabled | ● OK | ● Warning | ● Error

▼ Configuration details

Interface: TelegramOut7 Description: P2X output for logging in SIS

Type: Ethernet

Cable ID:

▼ I/O properties

☒ Broadcast ☐ Unicast ☐ Multicast

Local interface: LAN1 (157.237.20.10)

Remote port: 31202

▼ Telegram out properties

Format: NMEA

NMEA selection: P25 P26 P27

Options:

NMEAtalker ID: IN ☐ Log to file

▼ Telegram timing

Interval [s]: 1.000 ☐ Event driven ☒ Timer driven

TelegramOut8 setup

TelegramOut8 is set up to output raw IMU data. Logging of raw IMU data allows for post processing of IMU data (smoothing and other) and can be logged in SIS.

Input/Output list

Interface	Type	Direction	I/O Properties	Description
☒ TelegramOut8	Ethernet	Out	UDP LAN1 3011 BROADCAST	RAW IMU for logging in SIS (En...
☐ TelegramOut9		Out	NONE	Telegram Out #9
☐ TelegramOut10		Out	NONE	Telegram Out #10
☐ TelegramOut11		Out	NONE	Telegram Out #11

● Disabled | ● OK | ● Warning | ● Error

▼ Configuration details

Interface: TelegramOut8 Description: RAW IMU for logging in SIS (Enable RTCM logging in SIS and IMU will also be logged)

Type: Ethernet

Cable ID:

▼ I/O properties

☒ Broadcast ☐ Unicast ☐ Multicast

Local interface: LAN1 (157.237.20.10)

Remote port: 3011

▼ Telegram out properties

Format: IMU raw data ☐ Log to file Binary message token: 0

Related tasks

[Setting up the DGNSS correction link parameters](#), page 131

[Setting up the Telegram out interface](#), page 129

Setting up Seapath for SIS version 4 users

For Seapath 130 deliveries with the configuration option M340–SW_2040P-SIS4, the Seapath interfaces are configured as shown in the illustrations below.

Input/Output list

Interface	Type	Direction	I/O Properties	Description
☒ GnsRec1	Serial	In/Out	GNSS1 57600 n 8 1	Receiver #1
☒ GnsRec2	Serial	In/Out	GNSS2 57600 n 8 1	Receiver #2
☒ MRU	Serial	In/Out	MRU 115200 n 8 1 rs-422	IMU #1
☐ Gyro 1		In	NONE	Gyro #1
☒ DgnssLink1	Serial	In/Out	DGNSS 9600 n 8 1 rs-232	DGNSS Corrections
☐ DgnssLink2	Serial	In	DGNSS 38400 n 8 1	RTK
☐ DgnssLink3		In	NONE	Link #3
☐ DgnssLink4		In	NONE	Link #4
☐ CorrectionRadio1		In	NONE	
☐ CorrectionRadio2			NONE	
☐ CorrectionRadio3			NONE	
☐ CorrectionRadio4			NONE	
☐ GnsLink	Ethernet	In/Out	UDP LAN1 31012 31013 BROADCAST	GNSS link server
☒ TelegramOut1	Ethernet	Out	UDP LAN1 3000 BROADCAST	Seatex Bin 26 to SIS4 UDP6
☐ TelegramOut2		Out	NONE	
☒ TelegramOut3	Serial	Out	SURVEY 19200 n 8 1 rs-232	EM 3000 to SIS4 on COM3
☒ TelegramOut4	Ethernet	Out	UDP LAN1 2022 BROADCAST	GGA to SIS4 on UDP2
☒ TelegramOut5	Ethernet	Out	UDP LAN1 31103 BROADCAST	rtcm v3 for logging in SIS
☒ TelegramOut6	Ethernet	Out	UDP LAN1 31102 BROADCAST	Delayed Heave for logging in SIS
☒ TelegramOut7	Ethernet	Out	UDP LAN1 31202 BROADCAST	P2X output for logging in SIS
☒ TelegramOut8	Ethernet	Out	UDP LAN1 3011 BROADCAST	RAW IMU for logging in SIS (En...
☐ TelegramOut9		Out	NONE	Telegram Out #9
☐ TelegramOut10		Out	NONE	Telegram Out #10
☐ TelegramOut11		Out	NONE	Telegram Out #11
☐ TelegramOut12		Out	NONE	Telegram Out #12
☐ TelegramOut13		Out	NONE	Telegram Out #13
☐ TelegramOut14		Out	NONE	Telegram Out #14
☐ TelegramOut15		Out	NONE	Customer support log
☐ TelegramOut16		Out	NONE	Telegram Out #16

TelegramOut1

TelegramOut1 supplies the PHS system with attitude velocity corrections. Broadcast as Seatex Binary 26 format over Ethernet at 100 Hz.

Input/Output list

Interface	Type	Direction	I/O Properties	Description
☒ TelegramOut1	Ethernet	Out	UDP LAN1 3000 BROADCAST	Seatex Bin 26 to SIS4 UDP6
☐ TelegramOut2		Out	NONE	
☒ TelegramOut3	Serial	Out	SURVEY 19200 n 8 1 rs-232	EM 3000 to SIS4 on COM3
☒ TelegramOut4	Ethernet	Out	UDP LAN1 2022 BROADCAST	GGA to SIS4 on UDP2

Disabled | OK | Warning | Error

▼ Configuration details

Interface

TelegramOut1

Description

Seatex Bin 26 to SIS4 UDP6

Type

Ethernet

Cable ID

▼ I/O properties

☒ Broadcast

☐ Unicast

☐ Multicast

Local interface

LAN1 (157.237.20.10)

Remote port

3000

▼ Telegram out properties

Format

Seapath binary 26

Datum

WGS84

Monitoring point

NRP

Options

☐ Log to file

▼ Telegram timing

Interval [s]

0.010

☐ Event driven

☒ Timer driven

TelegramOut3

TelegramOut3 supplies the PHS system with motion data. Broadcast as EM 3000 format over the SURVEY serial line at 19200 baud and 100 Hz output rate.

Input/Output list

Interface	Type	Direction	I/O Properties	Description
☒ TelegramOut3	Serial	Out	SURVEY 19200 n 8 1 rs-232	EM 3000 to SIS4 on COM3
☒ TelegramOut4	Ethernet	Out	UDP LAN1 2022 BROADCAST	GGA to SIS4 on UDP2
☒ TelegramOut5	Ethernet	Out	UDP LAN1 31103 BROADCAST	rtcm v3 for logging in SIS
☒ TelegramOut6	Ethernet	Out	UDP LAN1 31102 BROADCAST	Delayed Heave for logging in SIS

Disabled | OK | Warning | Error

▼ Configuration details

Interface

TelegramOut3

Description

EM 3000 to SIS4 on COM3

Type

Serial

Cable ID

▼ I/O properties

Port

SURVEY

Baud rate

19200

☒ rs-232

☐ rs-422

► Advanced

▼ Telegram out properties

Format

Simrad EM3000/Hipap

☐ Log to file

Monitoring point

NRP

Options

▼ Telegram timing

Interval [s]

0.010

☐ Event driven

☒ Timer driven

TelegramOut4

TelegramOut 4 supplies the PHS system with NMEA GGA position input. Broadcast as NMEA GGA over Ethernet at 1 Hz rate.

Input/Output list

Interface	Type	Direction	I/O Properties	Description
☒ TelegramOut4	Ethernet	Out	UDP LAN1 2022 BROADCAST	GGA to SIS4 on UDP2
☒ TelegramOut5	Ethernet	Out	UDP LAN1 31103 BROADCAST	rtcm v3 for logging in SIS
☒ TelegramOut6	Ethernet	Out	UDP LAN1 31102 BROADCAST	Delayed Heave for logging in SIS
☒ TelegramOut7	Ethernet	Out	UDP LAN1 31202 BROADCAST	PZX output for logging in SIS

Disabled | OK | Warning | Error

▼ Configuration details

Interface: Description:

Type:

Cable ID:

▼ I/O properties

☒ Broadcast ☐ Unicast ☐ Multicast

Local interface:

Remote port:

▼ Telegram out properties

Format: Datum: Monitoring point:

NMEA selection:

Options:

NMEAtalker ID: ☐ Log to file Time precision:

▼ Telegram timing

Interval [s]: ☐ Event driven ☒ Timer driven

Related tasks

[Setting up the Telegram out interface, page 129](#)

Setting up Seapath for K-Controller users (SIS version 5)

For Seapath 130 deliveries with the configuration option M340–SW_2040P-SIS5, the Seapath is configured as shown in the illustrations below. The K-Controller allows reception of all available data from Seapath over Ethernet and a setup different from that for SIS4 is therefore required.

Input/Output list

Interface	Type	Direction	I/O Properties	Description
☒ GnsRec1	Serial	In/Out	GNSS1 57600 n 8 1	Receiver #1
☒ GnsRec2	Serial	In/Out	GNSS2 57600 n 8 1	Receiver #2
☒ MRU	Serial	In/Out	MRU 115200 n 8 1 rs-422	IMU #1
☒ Gyro1	In	NONE		Gyro #1
☒ DgnssLink1	Serial	In/Out	DGNSS 9600 n 8 1 rs-232	DGNSS Correction
☐ DgnssLink2	In	NONE		Link #2
☐ DgnssLink3	In	NONE		Link #3
☐ DgnssLink4	In	NONE		Link #4
☐ CorrectionRadio1			NONE	
☐ CorrectionRadio2			NONE	
☐ CorrectionRadio3			NONE	
☐ CorrectionRadio4			NONE	
☐ GnsLink	Ethernet	In/Out	UDP LAN1 31012 31013 BROADCAST	GNSS link server
☒ TelegramOut1	Ethernet	Out	UDP LAN1 3001 BROADCAST	KM Binary to K-Controller
☐ TelegramOut2	Out	NONE		Not in use
☒ TelegramOut3	Serial	Out	SURVEY 9600 n 8 1 rs-232	GGA, HDT, VTG and ZDA to K...
☐ TelegramOut4	Out	NONE		GGA to SIS4 on UDP2
☐ TelegramOut5	Out	NONE		Telegram Out #5
☐ TelegramOut6	Out	NONE		Telegram Out #6
☐ TelegramOut7	Out	NONE		Telegram Out #7
☐ TelegramOut8	Out	NONE		Telegram Out #8
☐ TelegramOut9	Out	NONE		Telegram Out #9
☐ TelegramOut10	Out	NONE		Telegram Out #10
☐ TelegramOut11	Out	NONE		Telegram Out #11
☐ TelegramOut12	Out	NONE		Telegram Out #12
☐ TelegramOut13	Out	NONE		Telegram Out #13

TelegramOut1

TelegramOut1 supplies the PHS system with motion and attitude velocity data as well as time and date. Broadcast as KM Binary format over Ethernet at 100 Hz.

Input/Output list

Interface	Type	Direction	I/O Properties	Description
☒ TelegramOut1	Ethernet	Out	UDP LAN1 3001 BROADCAST	KM Binary to K-Controller
☐ TelegramOut2		Out	NONE	Not in use
☒ TelegramOut3	Serial	Out	SURVEY 9600 n 8 1 rs-232	GGA, HDT, VTG and ZDA to K...
☐ TelegramOut4		Out	NONE	GGA to SIS4 on UDP2

Disabled | OK | Warning | Error

▼ Configuration details

Interface

TelegramOut1

Description

KM Binary to K-Controller

Type

Ethernet

Cable ID

▼ I/O properties

☒ Broadcast

☐ Unicast

☐ Multicast

Local interface

LAN1 (157.237.20.10)

Remote port

3001

▼ Telegram out properties

Format

KM binary

Datum

WGS84

Monitoring point

NRP

Options

☐ Log to file

▼ Telegram timing

Interval [s]

0.010

☒ Event driven

☐ Timer driven

TelegramOut3

TelegramOut3 supplies the PHS system with NMEA GGA, HDT, VTG and ZDA data. Broadcast over the SURVEY serial line at 9600 baud and with 1 Hz rate.

Input/Output list

Interface	Type	Direction	I/O Properties	Description
☒ TelegramOut1	Ethernet	Out	UDP LAN1 3001 BROADCAST	KM Binary to K-Controller
☐ TelegramOut2		Out	NONE	Not in use
☒ TelegramOut3	Serial	Out	SURVEY 9600 n 8 1 rs-232	GGA, HDT, VTG and ZDA to K...
☐ TelegramOut4		Out	NONE	GGA to SIS4 on UDP2

Disabled | OK | Warning | Error

▼ Configuration details

Interface

TelegramOut3

Description

GGA, HDT, VTG and ZDA to K-Controller

Type

Serial

Cable ID

▼ I/O properties

Port

SURVEY

Baud rate

9600

☒ rs-232

☐ rs-422

► Advanced

▼ Telegram out properties

Format

NMEA

Datum

WGS84

Monitoring point

NRP

NMEA selection

GGAHDT VTG ZDA

Options

NMEAtalker ID

IN

☐ Log to file

Time precision

2

▼ Telegram timing

Interval [s]

1.000

☐ Event driven

☒ Timer driven

Related tasks

[Setting up the Telegram out interface](#), page 129

90

110-0099522/A

Setting to work

Topics

[Setting to work summary, page 91](#)

[Applying power to the Seapath system, page 93](#)

[How the configuration of the system works, page 93](#)

[Required system configuration, page 101](#)

[Additional system configuration, page 133](#)

[Operator software configuration, page 145](#)

[Verifying that the Seapath 130 system is ready for operational use, page 151](#)

[Creating a backup of the configuration and software installation, page 152](#)

[Restoring the configuration backup, page 153](#)

Setting to work summary

When all hardware units have been installed, and all the cables have been connected, the Seapath system can be turned on and set to work.

Prerequisites

- All system units have been installed.
- All system cables are connected.
- All cable connections are made.
- Correct operating power is available. The system operates on 10 - 36 VDC.
- All external devices which shall communicate with the Seapath are available and operational.

- All relevant personnel and tools are available.

Procedure

1. Verify that all hardware and cable installation have been made correctly.
2. Make sure that the Seapath operator software is installed on a local computer.
3. Provide power to the Seapath system.
4. Set up the Seapath system for operational use.
 - a. Determine the location and heading offset for the Sensor Unit.
 - b. Determine the location and mounting angles for the IMU.
 - c. Determine the location of the monitoring points.
 - d. Set up communication interfaces.
5. Set up interfaces to external devices.
6. Create a backup with the system configuration and software installation.
7. Verify that the Seapath system is operational.

Related concepts

[Entering the system configuration](#), page 93

Related tasks

[Mounting the Sensor Unit](#), page 32

[Mounting the MRU subsea bottle](#), page 34

[Mounting the MGC subsea bottle](#), page 36

[Mounting the miniMRU subsea housing](#), page 38

[Applying power to the Seapath system](#), page 93

[Installing the Seapath operator software](#), page 41

[Entering antenna location parameters](#), page 104

[Setting MRU location and mounting angles](#), page 111

[Setting MGC location and mounting angles](#), page 115

[Setting miniMRU location and mounting angles](#), page 119

[Verifying that the Seapath 130 system is ready for operational use](#), page 151

[Creating a backup of the configuration and software installation](#), page 152

Applying power to the Seapath system

There is no on/off switch to turn on the Seapath system. It starts up when power is connected.

Prerequisites

Make sure that all system cables are correctly connected.

Procedure

1. Make sure that all cables are connected to the Sensor Unit and the Inertial Measurement Unit (IMU).

2. Apply 24 VDC power to the system.

The power connection for the spider cable is according to the table.

Signal	Sensor Unit (wire colours)	IMU (wire colours)
PWR+ (+24 VDC)	Brown	Green
PWR- (0 VDC)	White	Yellow

To turn off the system, disconnect the input power.

Related tasks

[Verifying that the Seapath 130 system is ready for operational use](#), page 151

How the configuration of the system works

Topics

[Entering the system configuration](#), page 93

[NAV Engine Configuration description](#), page 94

[Operator software configuration description](#), page 95

[Changing system modes](#), page 96

[Communication interface description](#), page 97

[Using the Serial interface](#), page 99

[Using the Ethernet interface](#), page 100

Entering the system configuration

The setup parameters are available from:

- The **System** menu > **NAV Engine** > **Standard** for system setup.

- The **System** menu > **Operator SW** for display views setup.

To be able to make changes to the setup you must be in *Configuration* mode for standard configuration tasks or *Engineering* mode for advanced configuration and diagnostic tasks.

Note: _____



Advanced NAV Engine configuration is for service personnel only.

Related tasks

[Changing system modes](#), page 96

NAV Engine Configuration description

You can set up the system parameters from the **NAV Engine Configuration** dialog box.

The dialog box consists of a list of configuration options, a parameter settings section, an exit button and three buttons which each has different properties with regard to configuration changes.

Apply

Select **Apply** to apply the configuration changes to the system. This button is disabled until you have made changes to the configuration. The button will be disabled when there are no changes to apply.

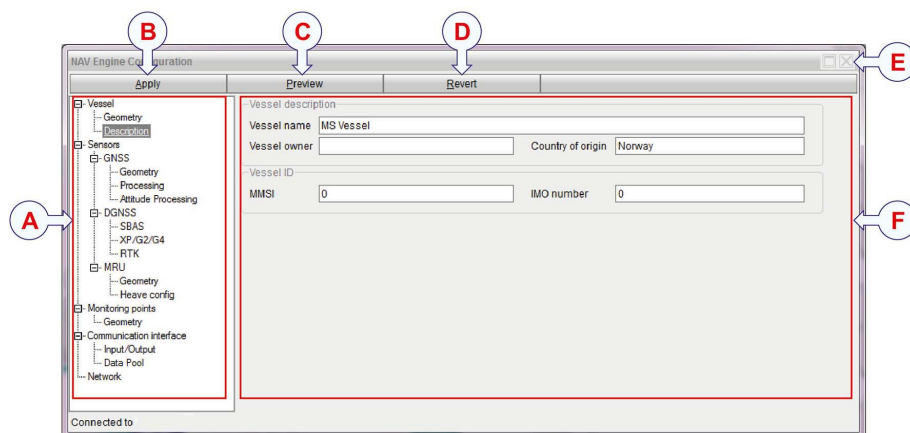
Preview

Select **Preview** to see which parameters have changed since the configuration was loaded. Changed settings are highlighted in bold face. This button is disabled until you have made any changes to the configuration.

Please note that monitoring point changes are displayed in the coordinate system in which they are actually stored by the configuration. For example related to the navigation reference point rather than origin.

Revert

Select **Revert** to reject all changes you made since the configuration was loaded. The button is disabled until changes have been made.



- A. Configuration options list
- B. Apply confirmation changes button
- C. Preview last configuration settings button
- D. Revert to previous settings button
- E. Exit NAV Engine Configuration
- F. Parameter settings section

Operator software configuration description

You can adjust the appearance of the display views through the **Operator software configuration** dialog box.

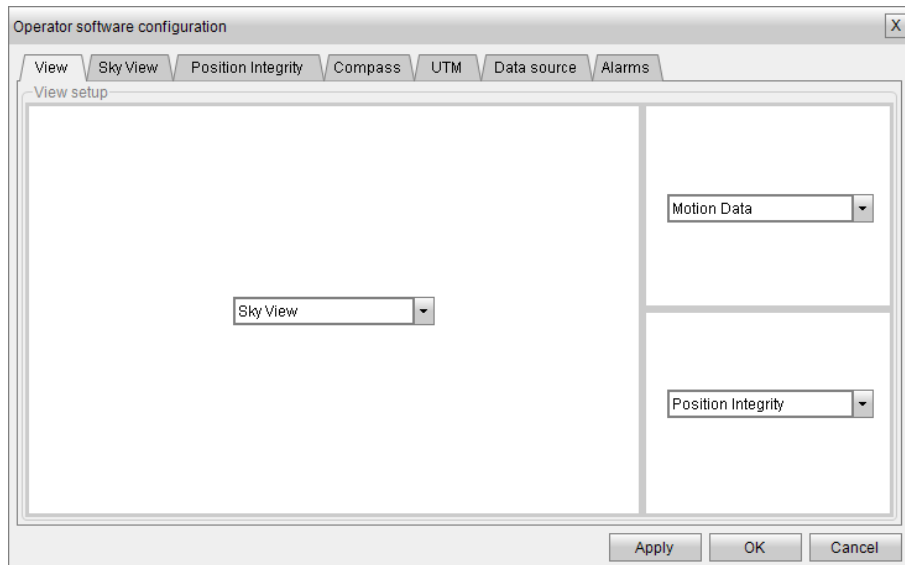
The dialog box contains tab pages for various presentation options. Each page contains two confirmation buttons with different properties and a cancel button.

- **OK button:** Selecting the **OK** button will save the changes and close the **Operator software configuration** dialog box.
- **Apply button:** Selecting the **Apply** button will save the changes but the dialog box will not close.
- **Cancel button:** Selecting the **Cancel** button will close the **Operator software configuration** dialog box and changes will not be saved.

Note: _____



*The position properties selected in the **Operator software configuration** dialog box are only for display purposes.*



Changing system modes

The system has three modes: *Operation*, *Configuration* and *Engineering*. To be able to make changes to the setup you must be in *Configuration* or *Engineering* mode.

Context

The *Configuration* or *Engineering* modes are password protected. The password is **STX**. The password is not case sensitive. It is not possible to change the password.

☐	Operation	
☐	Configuration	Ctrl+E
☒	Engineering	Ctrl+A

You can change the system mode via the **System** menu or using key commands directly from the display.

Procedure

1. Via System menu

- a. Select the **System** menu > **Change system mode**.
- b. Select either **Configuration** or **Engineering**.
- c. Type the password: **stx**.
- d. Select **OK**.

2. With keyboard commands

- a. In the display:
 - Press CTRL+E to enter *Configuration* mode
 - Press CTRL+A to enter *Engineering* mode
- b. Type the password: **stx**.
- c. Select **OK**.

Result

You are now able to carry out changes and/or set system parameters.

Related concepts

[Entering the system configuration](#), page 93

Communication interface description

You must set up the communication interfaces for the system to be able to communicate with and interface to other systems and equipment.

Context

The communication interfaces are set in **NAV Engine Configuration** under **Communication > Input/Output**. The **Input/Output list** shows all input and output ports which are available in the system. When you select an **Interface** in the **Input/Output list**, the **Configuration details** part for that particular interface will appear in the lower part of the page. These details will change based on the interface type you have selected, Serial or Ethernet. You must select either **Serial** or **Ethernet** for all available interfaces before you select the specific parameters for a particular interface.

Select the arrow next to the group headings to show or hide the information.

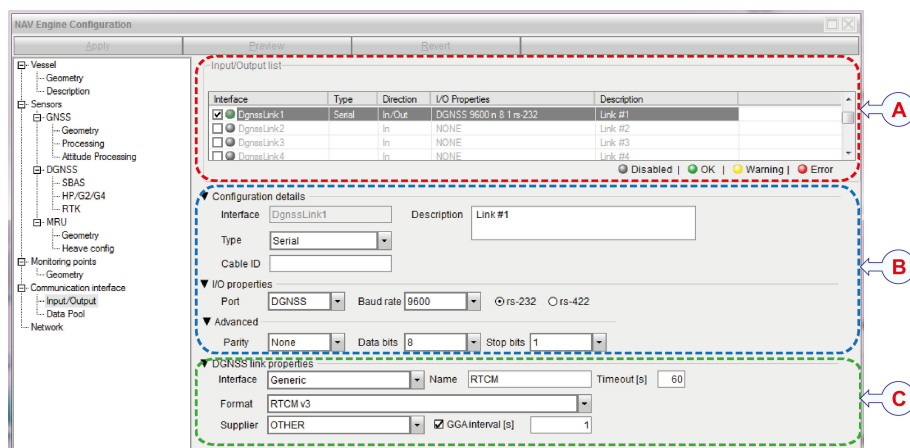
To be able to get a properly working system you must set up these communication interfaces:

- MGC (When the Inertial Measurement Unit (IMU) is a Motion Sensor and Gyro Compass (MGC).
- Telegram out
- DGNSS link

Note: _____



You are not able to configure the GnssReceiver interface and the MRU interface.



- A.** Selected interface in Input/Output list
- B.** Type of interface selection: Serial or Ethernet
- C.** Specific configuration details for the selected interface

This procedure sums up the steps you have to go through to set up the communication interfaces for the system.

Procedure

1. Select the **System** menu > **NAVEngine** > **Standard**.
2. Select **Communication interface** > **Input/Output**.
3. Select the interface you want to set up in the **Input/Output list**.
Observe that the **Configuration details** parameters appear at the lower part of the page.
4. Select which type of interface you want to use from the **Type** list: Serial or Ethernet.
5. Select the wanted I/O parameters. These will vary depending on the type of interface you selected.
6. Select the specific parameters you want for the interface you selected.
7. Select **Apply** to save your settings without closing the dialog box.

Related tasks

[Setting up the Telegram out interface](#), page 129

[Setting up the DGNSS correction link parameters](#), page 131

[Setting up NTRIP client](#), page 142

[Setting up the MGC as an inertial navigation system \(INS\)](#), page 140

[Selecting heading input format from a gyro compass](#), page 139

Using the Serial interface

The Serial interface allows you to decide how the Processing Unit shall communicate with and interface to other equipment.

Context

If you have decided to use a Serial interface, you must set up the port number, the baud rate and select RS-232 or RS-422 mode.

Procedure

1. Select the **System** menu > **NAVEngine** > **Standard**.
2. Select **Communication interface** > **Input/Output**.
3. Select the interface you want to set up in the **Input/Output list**.
Observe that the **Configuration details** parameters appear at the lower part of the page.
4. Select **Serial** in the **Type** list.
5. Type an informative text about the interface in the **Description** box. This is optional.
6. Type a short identification text for the cables connected to the Processing Unit in the **Cable ID** box This is optional.
7. Select which port to use from the **Port** list.
The serial port number corresponds with the number on the Processing Unit.
8. Select which baud rate you want to use from the **Baud rate** list.
Maximum baud rate is 115200 bits/second.
9. Depending on which port you selected, select if you want to use RS-232 or RS-422 for the electrical interface.
10. Select the properties for the interface you selected in the **Input/Output list**.

Result

You are now ready to set the specific parameters for the interface you have selected. See separate sections for selection details.

Related tasks

[Setting up the Telegram out interface](#), page 129

[Setting up the DGNSS correction link parameters](#), page 131

[Setting up NTRIP client](#), page 142

[Setting up the MGC as an inertial navigation system \(INS\)](#), page 140

[Selecting heading input format from a gyro compass](#), page 139

Using the Ethernet interface

The Ethernet interface allows you to decide how the Processing Unit shall communicate via the internet protocol (IP) network.

Context

Broadcasting is a method of transferring a message to all recipients simultaneously. Unicast transmission is the sending of messages to a single network destination identified by a unique address. Multicast (one-to-many or many-to-many distribution) is group communication where information is addressed to a group of destination computers simultaneously.

Procedure

1. Select the **System** menu > **NAVEngine** > **Standard**.
2. Select **Communication interface** > **Input/Output**.
3. Select the interface you want to set up in the **Input/Output list**.
Observe that the **Configuration details** parameters appear at the lower part of the page.
4. Select **Ethernet** in the **Type** list.
5. Type a short identification text for the cables connected to the Processing Unit in the **Cable ID** box This is optional.
6. Select the wanted connection type: Broadcast, Unicast or Multicast.
 - **Local interface**: The LAN port on the Processing Unit.
 - **Local port**: When receiving, this is the port on which the unit listens.
 - **Remote port**: When transmitting, this is the port to which the unit sends.
 - **IP address Unicast**: The target IP address, to which the unit is receiving or sending.
 - **IP address Multicast**: The multicast group address. Recommended range: 239.255.000.000 to 239.255.255.255.

Note: _____



It is recommended to use the same port number for both Local and Remote ports.

7. Depending on the connection type you have selected, select which local interface you want to use from the **Local interface** list.
8. Select the properties for the interface you selected in the **Input/Output list**.

Result

You are now ready to set the specific parameters for the interface you have selected. See separate sections for selection details.

Related tasks

[Setting up the Telegram out interface](#), page 129

[Setting up the DGNSS correction link parameters](#), page 131

[Setting up NTRIP client](#), page 142

[Setting up the MGC as an inertial navigation system \(INS\)](#), page 140

[Selecting heading input format from a gyro compass](#), page 139

Required system configuration

Topics

[Setting vessel dimensions and reference points](#), page 101

[Entering antenna location parameters](#), page 104

[Using Calibration Wizard to determine antenna parameters](#), page 106

[Setting MRU location and mounting angles](#), page 111

[Using Mounting Wizard to determine MRU mounting angles](#), page 112

[Setting MGC location and mounting angles](#), page 115

[Using Mounting Wizard to determine MGC mounting angles](#), page 117

[Setting miniMRU location and mounting angles](#), page 119

[Using Mounting Wizard to determine miniMRU mounting angles](#), page 121

[Selecting heave filter options](#), page 124

[Setting monitoring points](#), page 125

[Setting up the Telegram out interface](#), page 129

[Setting up the DGNSS correction link parameters](#), page 131

[Changing the Sensor Unit IP address](#), page 132

Setting vessel dimensions and reference points

You must define the dimensions and the reference points for the vessel which hosts the Seapath system and the origin of the vessel coordinate system.

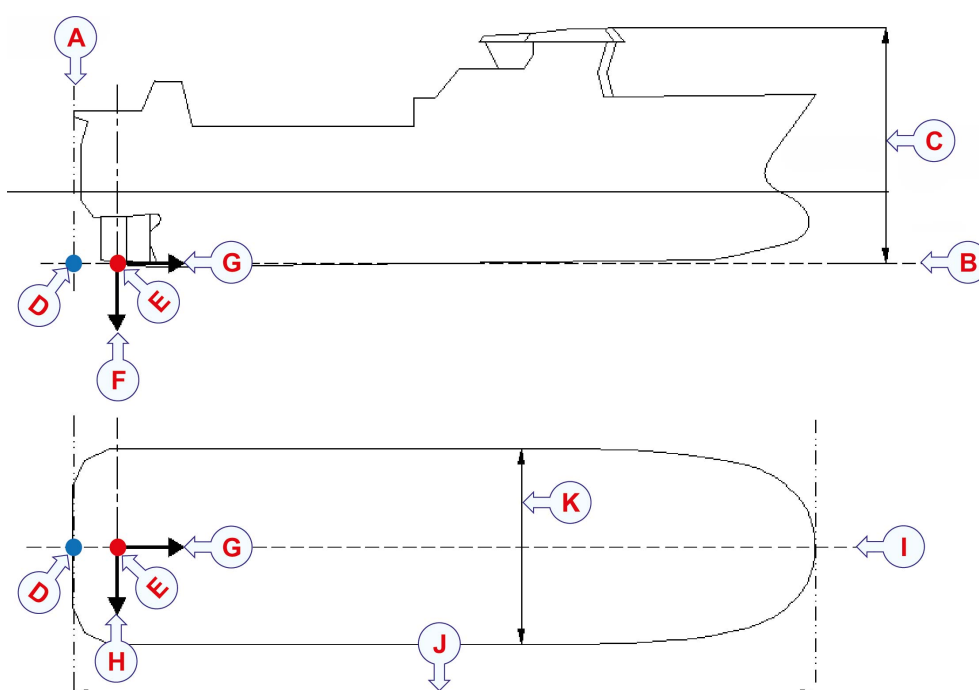
Prerequisites

The navigation reference points you type here must be measured or defined before you start the configuration process.

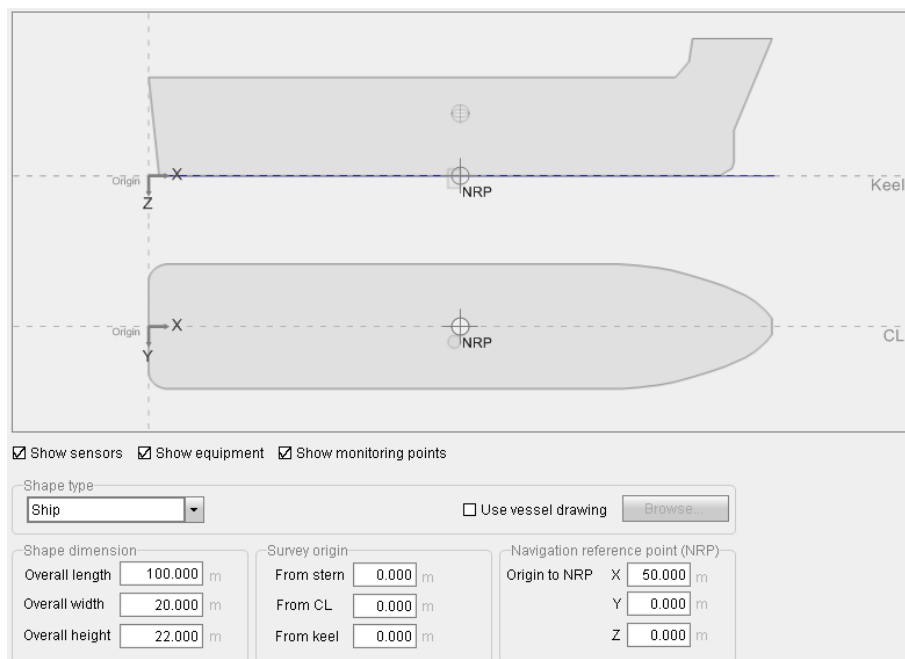
Context

This is information you need in order to specify correct location of various sensors, equipment and monitoring points on a vessel. The information you enter here will help you later in the configuration process. The drawing is correctly scaled based on the vessel dimensions to make sure that the various points are correctly indicated. The measurement unit of the entered coordinates is metres.

The illustration shows different vessel dimensions and location of origin. If a survey report is available, the vessel origin should be located in the common reference point (CRP) used in the report.



- | | |
|--|----------------------------|
| A. Stern | G. +X axis |
| B. Keel | H. +Y axis |
| C. Overall height | I. CL (centre line) |
| D. CRP (common reference point) | J. Overall length |
| E. Origin | K. Overall width |
| F. +Z axis | |



Procedure

1. Select the **System** menu > **NAVEngine** > **Standard**.
2. Select **Vessel** > **Geometry**.
3. Select the shape of your vessel from the **Shape type** list or select **Use vessel drawing** if you have a specific vessel shape file you want to use. Select the **Browse** button to search for the wanted file.
If you select **Use vessel drawing**, the **Shape dimension** parameters will be locked.
4. Type the overall length, width and height dimensions of your vessel.
5. Type the parameters for location of origin (survey origin).
6. Type the navigation reference point location, X, Y, Z.
7. Select **Show sensors**, **Show equipment** and/or **Show monitoring points** if you want to display these objects in the vessel illustration.
8. Select **Apply** to save your settings without closing the dialog box.

Related concepts

[Determining the system coordinates](#), page 73

[Survey accuracy values](#), page 75

Related tasks

[Entering antenna location parameters](#), page 104

Related references

[Vessel Geometry page](#), page 206

Entering antenna location parameters

The antenna position is a critical parameter in the system. It is used for Inertial Measurement Unit (IMU) integration and calculation of monitoring points and heading. The antennas are located inside the Sensor Unit.

Prerequisites

The distance vector from the origin to the GNSS antenna #1 has to be measured before you can enter the parameters into the configuration.

The Sensor Unit location parameters have to be measured before you can enter the parameters into the configuration.

- For **Antenna location (from Survey origin)**: The coordinates for the position reference point, X, Y, Z. The distance vector from origin to the position reference point.
- For **Antenna offset (from antenna 1 to antenna 2)**: The mounting angle in heading. The angular offset between the vessel centre line (CL) and the line from the heading reference point #1 to heading reference point #2, called heading offset.

Context

You can either drag and place the antenna symbol in the vessel illustration or you can enter the parameters directly into the table.

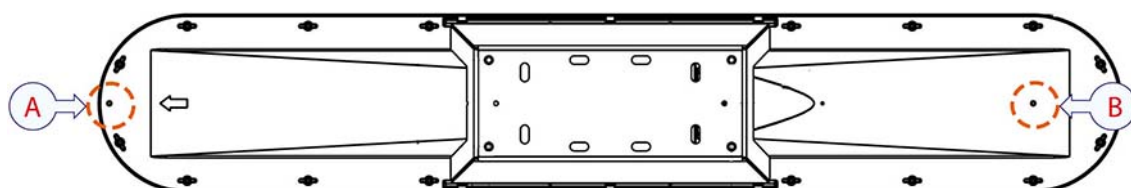
Important:

If you move the antenna after the system has been installed and configured, you must update the distance vector measurements and re-configure the antenna location. This must be done both for the Seapath system and for the connected DP (dynamic positioning) system.

Calibration Wizard

The first time you install the system you can use the **Calibration wizard** to calculate the correct height difference.

The reference points on the Sensor Unit are used to determine the position and orientation of the unit on the vessel where it is mounted.

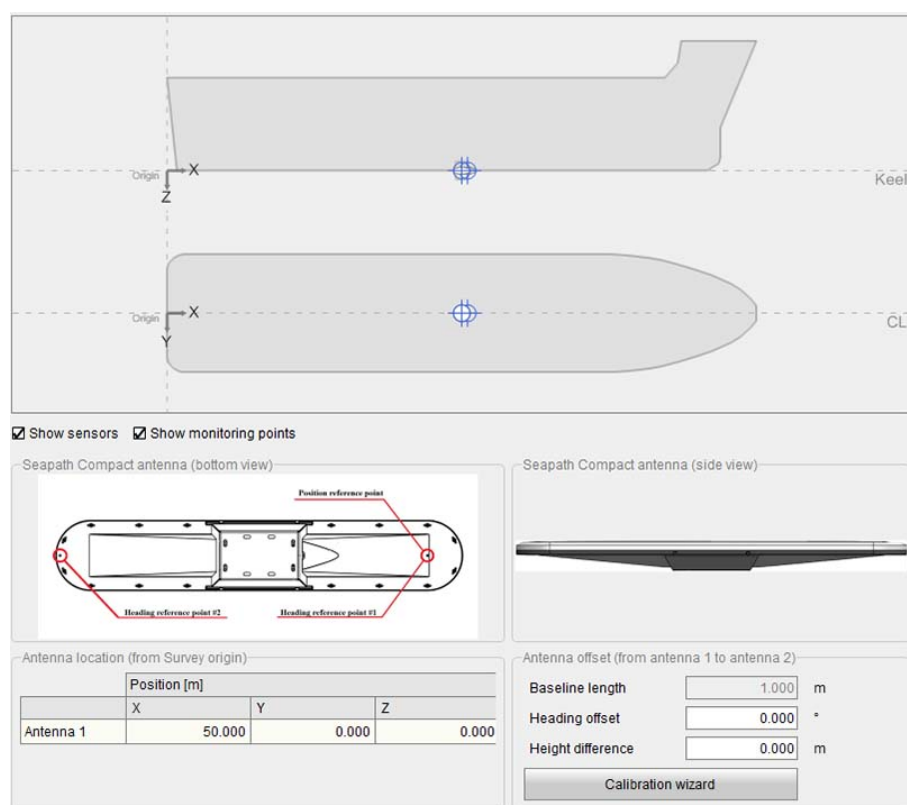
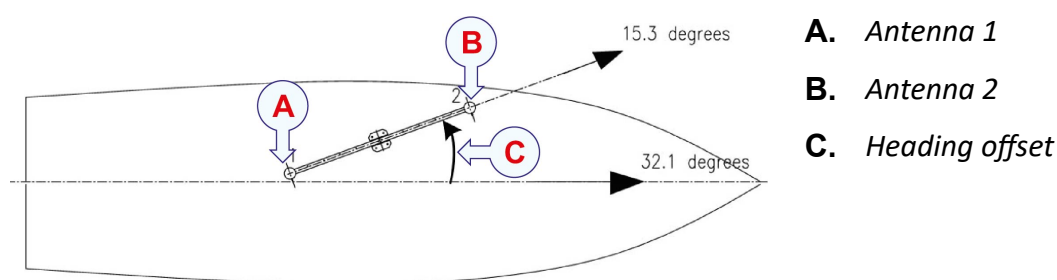


- A.** *Heading reference point #2*
- B.** *Position reference point and centre of the internal GNSS antenna no. 1 and Heading reference point #1.*

The location of the two heading reference points is used to determine the mounting angle, or the heading offset. The angular offset between the line from the heading reference point #1 to the heading reference point #2 and the vessel centre line (CL) have to be determined and entered into the NAVEngine Configuration as the **Heading offset**.

Heading offset calculation example

If the reference heading is found to be 32.1 degrees and the GNSS heading after the calibration is 15.3 degrees, the Determined heading offset will be $32.1 - 15.3$. Observe that the heading offset is positive counterclockwise, and in the range $[0, 360>$ degrees.



Procedure

1. Select the **System** menu > **NAV Engine** > **Standard** > **Sensors** > **GNSS** > **Geometry**.
2. Select **Show sensors**, **Show monitoring points** if you want to display these objects in the vessel illustration.
3. Type the surveyed distance vector to the position reference point (Antenna 1), X, Y, Z coordinates, in the table **Antenna location (from Survey origin)**. The value is metres.
4. Type the surveyed **Heading offset** in degrees.
5. Type the **Height difference** in metres.
6. Make sure that the Sensor Unit has been located in the expected spot in the vessel illustration.
If the Sensor Unit does not appear where you expect it to in the vessel illustration. observe the coordinates entered for Antenna 1, the vessel dimensions and the entered location of origin.
7. Select **Apply** to save your settings without closing the dialog box.

Related concepts

[About sensor survey](#), page 60

[Determining the Sensor Unit position and orientation](#), page 62

[Surveying the Sensor Unit](#), page 70

[Determining the system coordinates](#), page 73

[Survey accuracy values](#), page 75

Related tasks

[Setting vessel dimensions and reference points](#), page 101

[Using Calibration Wizard to determine antenna parameters](#), page 106

Related references

[Sensors GNSS Geometry page](#), page 208

Using Calibration Wizard to determine antenna parameters

You can use the **Calibration Wizard** to determine the heading offset and the antenna height difference for the Sensor Unit.

Prerequisites

Readings of the vessel reference heading data on another computer or by manual readings, have to be available before you start the wizard.

Context

Calibrating the direction of the Sensor Unit against an external reference. The type of reference must be decided according to the required accuracy.

The following calibration parameters have to be determined:

- The **Heading offset**. The direction of the Sensor Unit relative to the vessel's longitudinal axis is measured in degrees.
- The **Height difference**. The height difference between the two internal antennas within the Sensor Unit according to the vessel's horizontal plane is measured in metres. This is the height to Antenna #1 minus the height to Antenna #2, compensated for the vessel's roll and pitch.

It is of crucial importance to calibrate the heading offset correctly. During this calibration, several accurate reference measurements of the vessel heading must be read/logged simultaneously with the heading output from the Seapath. The data logging should continue for at least two hours under calm conditions alongside a quay. The best results are achieved if continuous logging of both the reference system and the Seapath measurements can be performed during the calibration period. If simultaneous logging of the two systems is not possible, one reading from both systems should be done at least every 30 seconds for a minimum of two full hours.

The long calibration time is necessary in order to eliminate errors in the Seapath measurements caused by multipath effects, which may be particularly pronounced in the static conditions of a harbour area.

Note: _____



*Before you start the **Calibration wizard**, make sure that all configuration changes, including the correct IMU mounting angles, are applied by pressing the **Apply** button on the menu bar. See **Sensors > MGC/MRU > Geometry** for mounting angles.*

Also, make sure that the roll, pitch and heading measurements are indicated as valid (green) in the top bar of the Seapath user interface before starting the wizard.

Procedure

1. Select the **System** menu > **NAV Engine** > **Standard** > **Sensors** > **GNSS** > **Geometry**.
2. Select the **Calibration Wizard**.

The system will indicate when the calibration measurements are ready.

3. In page 1, **Input parameters**, you can modify the calibration accuracy and period parameters.

- a. Modify the **Calibration baseline length accuracy** and **Calibration height difference accuracy** values, if needed.

If calibration measurements are unavailable, select **Cancel** and make sure that the mounting angles are correct and that the roll, pitch and heading measurements are valid.

Restart the **Calibration Wizard**. The **Next** button will be active as soon as the measurements are ready.

- b. Modify the **Calibration period** and **Message interval**, if needed.

The default values are recommended.

Before you select **Next** to start the calibration logging, it is recommended to start recording data of the vessel reference heading on a different computer, or by manual readings.

1. Input parameters 2. Processing 3. Data edit 4. Apply result

Data input

The baseline length between the two GNSS antennas to be measured within a tolerance of 1 centimeter or better.

Calibration baseline length accuracy m

Calibration height difference accuracy m

Calibration setup

The configuration will automatically start logging of the calibration data format on the client. The message interval for the logging must be set so that random noise can be averaged over the calibration period. A two hour logging period is recommended and a logging interval of 10 seconds is then adequate.

Calibration Period min (Default: 120 min)

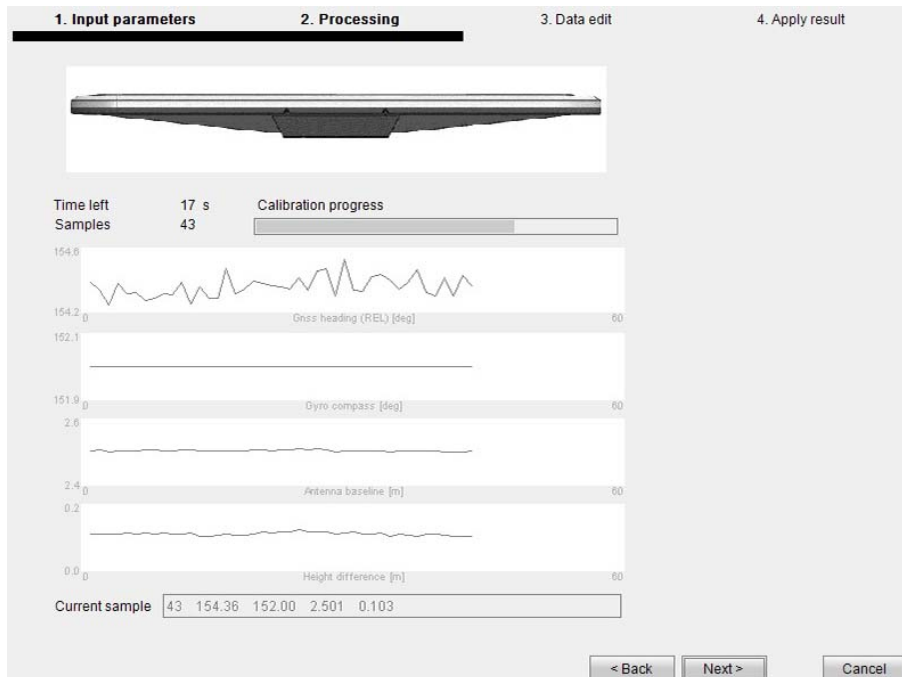
Message Interval s (Default: 10 s)

Press Next to proceed with the calibration procedure. The configuration will now enable Engine to transmit calibration messages. The configuration will log the transmitted data to a file for wild point detection and later processing.

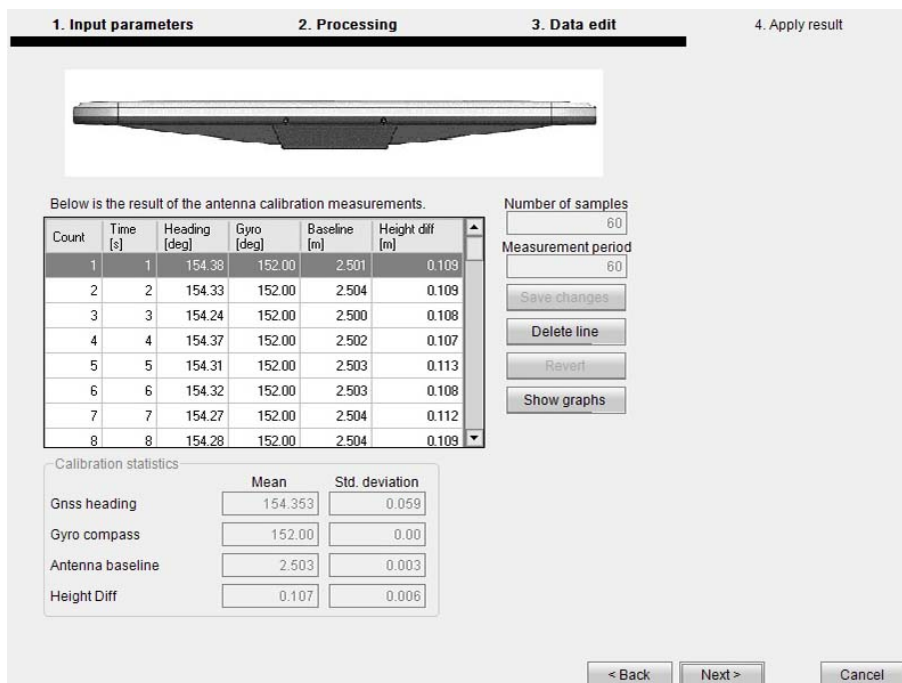
< Back Next > Cancel

4. Select **Next** to continue to page 2, **Processing**.

The progress of the logging is indicated on the screen with a graphical presentation of the measured data.



5. Select **Next** to continue to page 3, **Data edit**.
Under **Data edit** you can inspect the logged data.



6. Delete possible wild points. Select the corresponding row in the table > **Delete line**.

7. When the calibration result is acceptable, select **Next** to continue to page 4, **Apply result**.

Calibration result	
Heading offset calculation based on reference heading observation and the found Gns heading (mean).	
Reference heading	160 ° (0° - 360°)
- Gns heading	154.353 °
+ Current heading offset	0.000 °
= Determined heading offset	5.647 ° (0° - 360°)

Compute

Export log file

Press Finish to accept the result and exit the wizard.
Press Cancel to discard the calibration result.

WARNING! Pressing Cancel will clear measured data and requires a restart of the calibration process.

< Back Finish Cancel

8. Enter the mean value for the vessel **Reference heading**.
9. Select **Compute** to calculate the heading offset.
10. Select **Export log** if you want the calibration data for post processing.
11. Select **Finish** to accept the result and exit the **Calibration Wizard**.
The **Baseline length**, **Heading offset** and **Height difference** values are automatically updated upon successful completion of the wizard.
12. Select **Apply** at the top of the dialog box to save the calibration information.

Related concepts

[Survey accuracy values](#), page 75

Related tasks

[Entering antenna location parameters](#), page 104

Related references

[Sensors GNSS Geometry page](#), page 208

Setting MRU location and mounting angles

The physical location of the MRU relative to the origin and its mounting angles is required for the Seapath system to be able to calculate position, roll, pitch and heading correctly.

Prerequisites

For accurate location of the MRU (Motion Reference Unit) a survey has to be carried out.

Context

The MRU measures the roll, pitch, yaw and heave motions of the vessel. Under **MRU Geometry** you must define the physical location of the unit related to the origin location you created under **Vessel Geometry**.

In the **MRU Geometry** page you enter the MRU location parameters, the X, Y and Z coordinates in meters, and the MRU mounting angles, the roll, pitch and yaw parameters in degrees. Look at the vessel illustration in the page to help you enter the correct signs for the coordinates. The illustration will show if the MRU appears at the expected location on the vessel.

If something looks out of place, check the signs and X, Y, Z coordinates you typed for the unit location and/or return to the **Vessel Geometry** page and check the vessel shape dimensions, the origin location and the navigation reference point (NRP) location.

The MRU mounting angles can either be input manually or determined by use of the Mounting wizard. The Mounting Wizard is located in the **NAV Engine Configuration > Sensors > MRU > Geometry**.

☒ Show sensors ☒ Show equipment ☒ Show monitoring points

MRU location (from Origin)

X m Y m Z m

MRU mounting angles

Roll ° Pitch ° Yaw °

Physical mount

Procedure

1. Select the **System** menu > **NAV Engine** > **Standard** > **Sensors** > **MRU** > **Geometry**.
2. Type the X, Y and Z coordinates in metres from Origin to the unit location.
3. Type the unit's mounting angles in degrees for roll, pitch and yaw.
If the mounting angle values are not known to you, use the Mounting Wizard to calculate these values.
4. Select **Apply** to save your settings without closing the dialog box.

Related concepts

[About sensor survey](#), page 60

[Determining the MRU mounting orientation](#), page 64

[Surveying the MRU subsea bottle](#), page 70

[Determining the system coordinates](#), page 73

[Survey accuracy values](#), page 75

Related tasks

[Using Mounting Wizard to determine MRU mounting angles](#), page 112

Related references

[Sensors MRU Geometry page](#), page 210

Using Mounting Wizard to determine MRU mounting angles

Use the Mounting Wizard to determine the roll, pitch and yaw mounting angles in degrees for the MRU.

Prerequisites

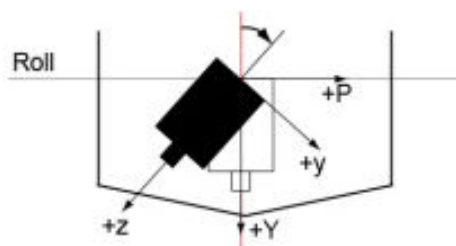
The MRU mounting bracket offset angles have to be available from a survey report or through other methods with similar accuracy.

Context

The mounting bracket offset angles which have to be entered are roll, pitch and yaw.

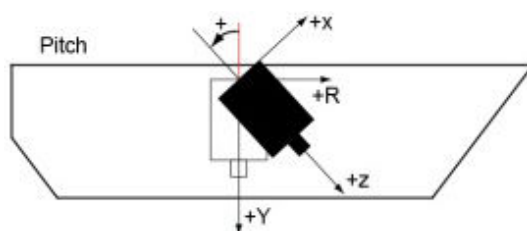
Roll offset angle

The angle between the ship's Y-axis and the projection of the unit's z-axis in the ship's PY-plane. Positive roll offset angle if the bracket tilts to starboard.



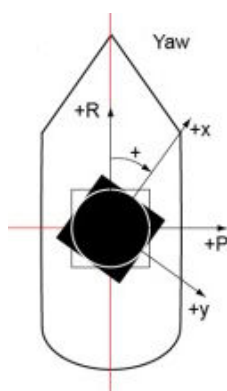
Pitch offset angle

The angle between the ship's Y-axis and the projection of the unit's z-axis in the ship's RY-plane. Positive pitch offset angle if the bracket tilts to stern.



Yaw offset angle

The angle between the ship's R-axis and the projection of the unit's x-axis in the ship's RP-plane. Positive yaw offset angle if the bracket is rotated clockwise.



Note: _____



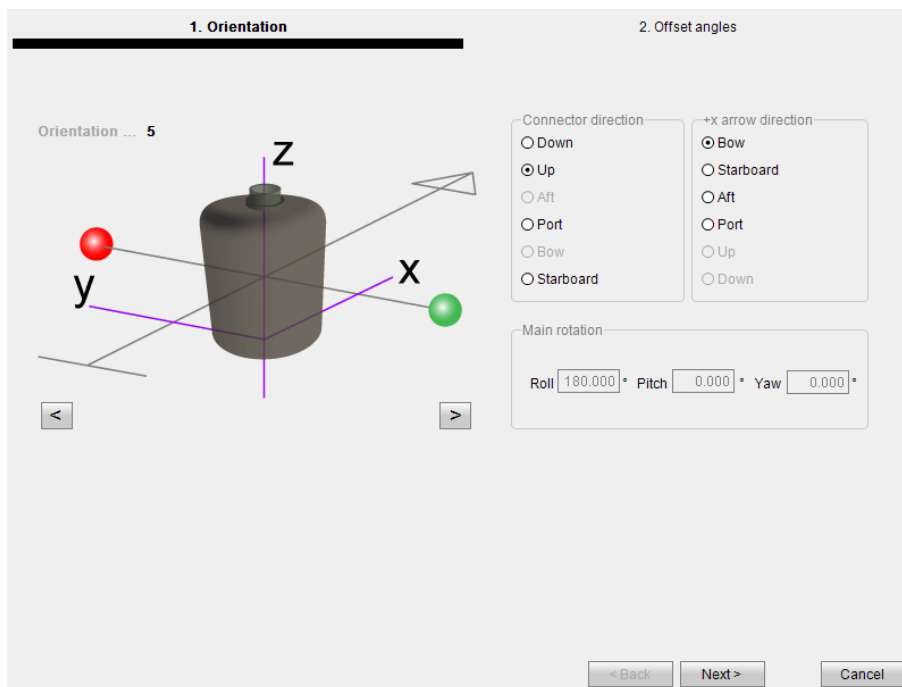
If the mounting bracket offset angles exceed 45 degrees, another main rotation should be selected.

Procedure

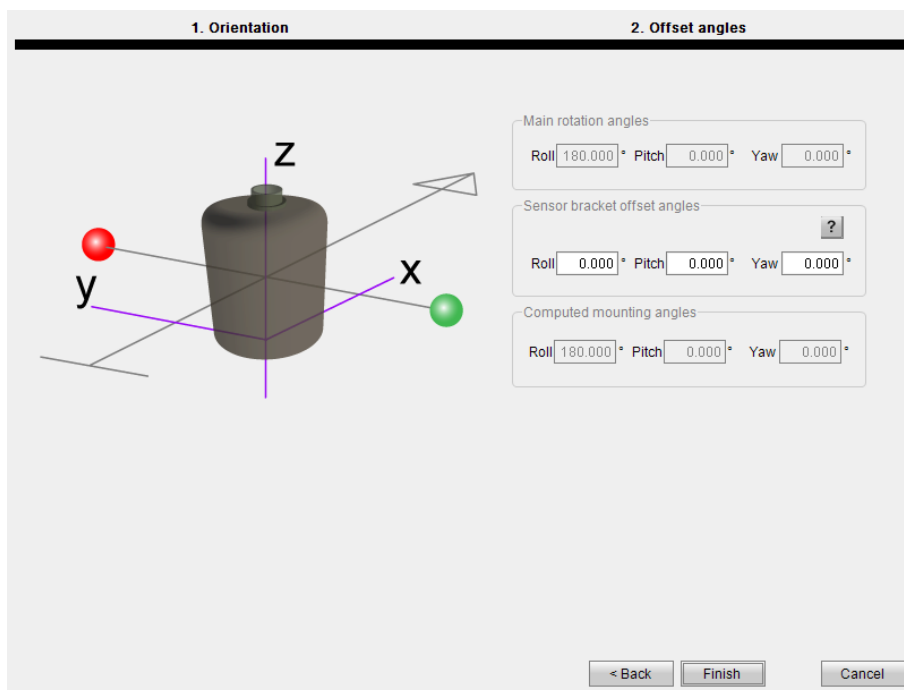
1. Select the **System** menu > **NAV Engine** > **Standard** > **Sensors** > **MRU** > **Geometry**.
2. Select the Mounting Wizard button and use the wizard to calculate the roll, pitch and yaw mounting angles.

The red circle indicates Port. The green circle indicates Starboard. The arrow points in the bow direction.

3. In step 1, **Orientation**, you shall determine the orientation of the unit. There are two ways to determine the orientation.
 - a. Select the < or > buttons to turn the unit around in 90-degree steps, axis by axis. Click until the correct mounting orientation of the unit has been found. Observe that the parameters for roll, pitch and yaw under **Main rotation** are automatically updated with the actual main rotation of the unit.
 - b. Select the **Connector direction** options or the **+x arrow direction** options to select the unit orientation.



4. Select Next to continue to step 2, **Offset angles**. Observe that the roll, pitch and yaw mounting angles are now indicated under **Main rotation angles**.
5. Type the surveyed unit bracket offset angles in degrees for roll, pitch and yaw. The system calculates the mounting angles automatically and the values appear under **Computed mounting angles**.



6. Select **Finish** when you are ready to complete the offset angle setting.
This will exit the wizard and take you back to the initial **MRU Geometry** page.
7. Select **Apply** to save your settings without closing the dialog box.

Related concepts

[Survey accuracy values](#), page 75

Related tasks

[Setting MRU location and mounting angles](#), page 111

Related references

[Sensors MRU Geometry - Mounting Wizard](#), page 211

Setting MGC location and mounting angles

The physical location of the MGC relative to the origin and its mounting angles is required for the Seapath system to be able to calculate position, roll, pitch and heading correctly.

Prerequisites

For accurate location of the MGC (Motion Sensor and Gyro Compass) a survey has to be carried out.

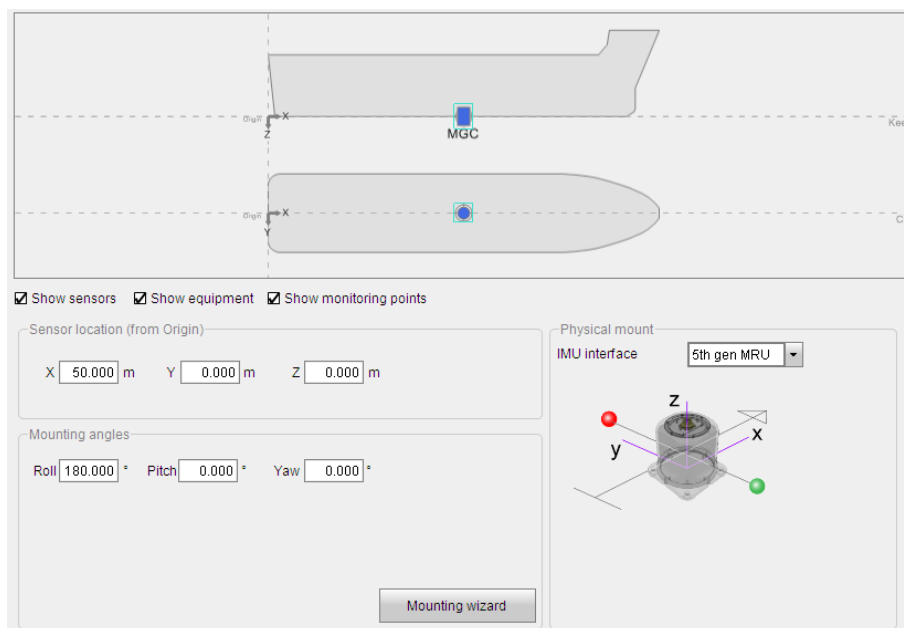
Context

The MGC measures the roll, pitch, yaw and heave motions of the vessel. Under **MGC Geometry** you must define the physical location of the unit related to the origin location you created under **Vessel Geometry**.

In the **MGC Geometry** page you enter the MGC location parameters, the X, Y and Z coordinates in meters, and the MGC mounting angles, the roll, pitch and yaw parameters in degrees. Look at the vessel illustration in the page to help you enter the correct signs for the coordinates. The illustration will show if the MGC appears at the expected location on the vessel.

If something looks out of place, check the signs and X, Y, Z coordinates you typed for the unit location and/or return to the **Vessel Geometry** page and check the vessel shape dimensions, the origin location and the navigation reference point (NRP) location.

The MGC mounting angles can either be input manually or determined by use of the Mounting wizard. The Mounting Wizard is located under **NAV Engine Configuration > Sensors > MGC > Geometry**.



Procedure

1. Select the **System** menu > **NAV Engine** > **Standard** > **Sensors** > **MGC** > **Geometry**.
2. Select the type of unit which is connected to your vessel.
3. Type the X, Y and Z coordinates in metres from Origin to the unit location.
4. Type the unit's mounting angles in degrees for roll, pitch and yaw.
If the mounting angle values are not known to you, use the Mounting Wizard to calculate these values.
5. Select **Apply** to save your settings without closing the dialog box.

Related concepts

[About sensor survey](#), page 60

[Determining the MGC mounting orientation](#), page 67

[Surveying the MGC subsea bottle](#), page 71

[Determining the system coordinates](#), page 73

[Survey accuracy values](#), page 75

Related tasks

[Using Mounting Wizard to determine MGC mounting angles](#), page 117

Related references

[Sensors MGC Geometry page](#), page 214

Using Mounting Wizard to determine MGC mounting angles

Use the Mounting Wizard to determine the roll, pitch and yaw mounting angles in degrees for the MGC.

Prerequisites

The MGC offset angles have to be available from a survey report or through other methods with similar accuracy.

Context

The mounting bracket offset angles which have to be entered are roll, pitch and yaw.

Note: _____

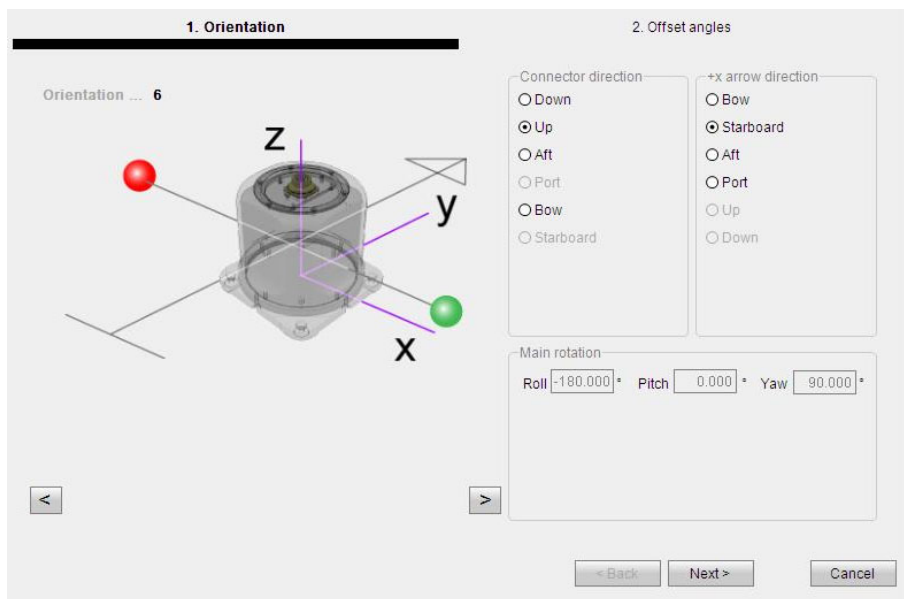


If the mounting bracket offset angles exceed 45 degrees, another main rotation should be selected.

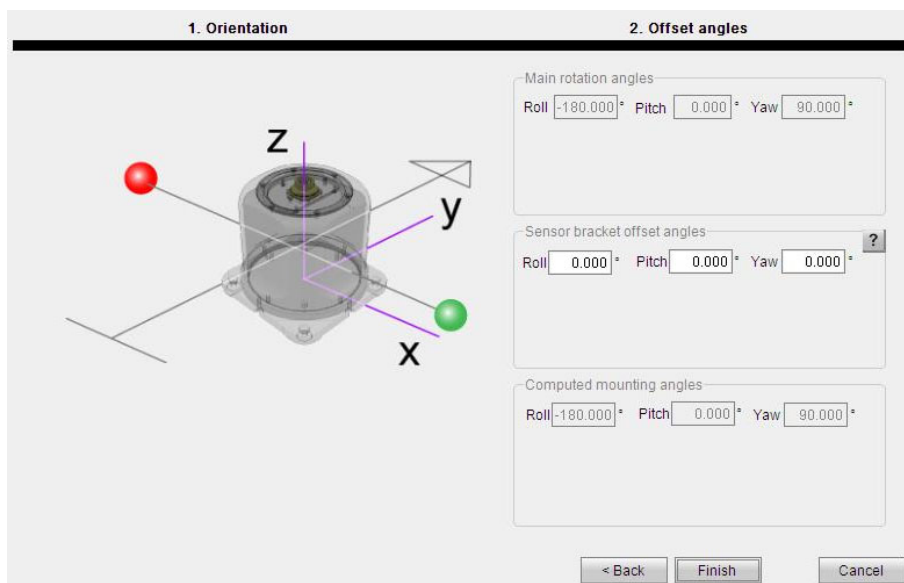
Procedure

1. Select the **System** menu > **NAV Engine** > **Standard** > **Sensors** > **MGC** > **Geometry**.
2. Select the Mounting Wizard button and use the wizard to calculate the roll, pitch and yaw mounting angles.
The red circle indicates Port. The green circle indicates Starboard. The arrow points in the bow direction.

3. In step 1, **Orientation**, you shall determine the orientation of the unit. There are two ways to determine the orientation.
 - a. Select the < or > buttons to turn the unit around in 90-degree steps, axis by axis. Click until the correct mounting orientation of the unit has been found. Observe that the parameters for roll, pitch and yaw under **Main rotation** are automatically updated with the actual main rotation of the unit.
 - b. Select the **Connector direction** options or the **+x arrow direction** options to select the unit orientation.



4. Select Next to continue to step 2, **Offset angles**. Observe that the roll, pitch and yaw mounting angles are now indicated under **Main rotation angles**.
5. Type the surveyed unit bracket offset angles in degrees for roll, pitch and yaw. The system calculates the mounting angles automatically and the values appear under **Computed mounting angles**.



6. Select **Finish** when you are ready to complete the offset angle setting.
This will exit the wizard and take you back to the initial **MGC Geometry** page.
7. Select **Apply** to save your settings without closing the dialog box.

Related concepts

[Survey accuracy values](#), page 75

Related tasks

[Setting MGC location and mounting angles](#), page 115

Related references

[Sensors MGC Geometry - Mounting Wizard](#), page 215

Setting miniMRU location and mounting angles

The physical location of the miniMRU relative to the origin and its mounting angles is required for the Seapath system to be able to calculate position, roll, pitch and heading correctly.

Prerequisites

For accurate location of the MRU (Motion Reference Unit) a survey has to be carried out. You will need detailed vessel drawings.

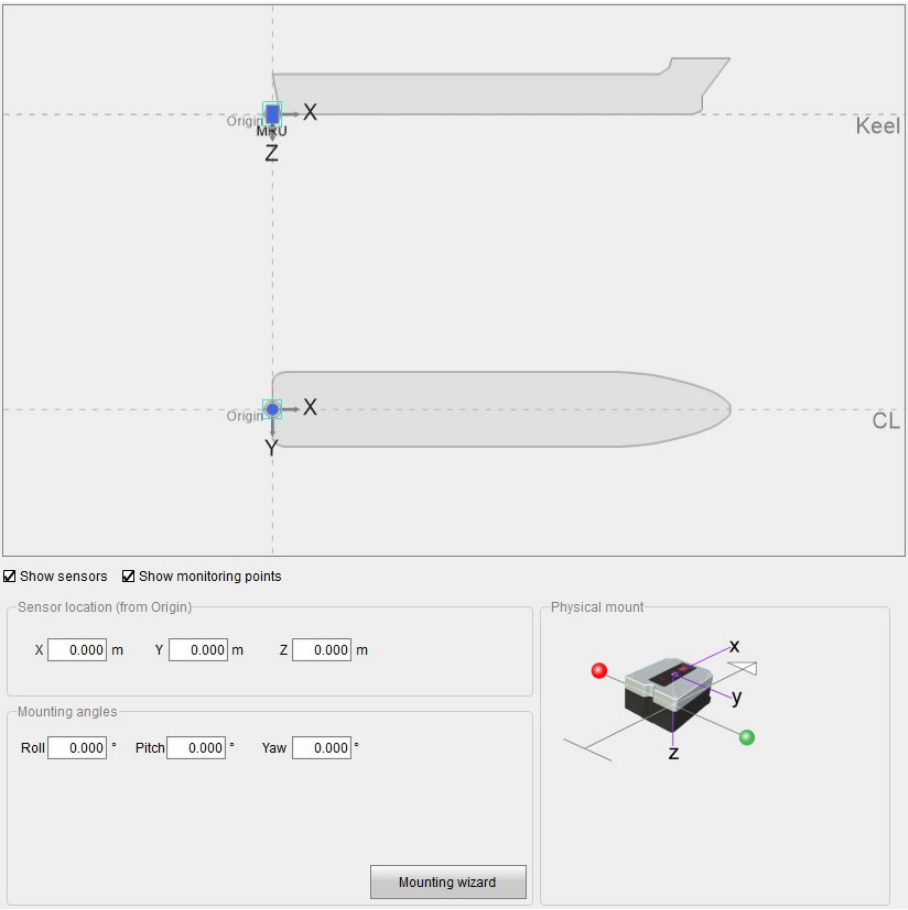
Context

The MRU measures the roll, pitch, yaw and heave motions of the vessel. Under **MRU Geometry** you must define the physical location of the unit related to the origin location you created under **Vessel Geometry**.

In the **MRU Geometry** page you enter the MRU location parameters, the X, Y and Z coordinates in meters, and the MRU mounting angles, the roll, pitch and yaw parameters in degrees. Look at the vessel illustration in the page to help you enter the correct signs for the coordinates. The illustration will show if the MRU appears at the expected location on the vessel.

If something looks out of place, check the signs and X, Y, Z coordinates you typed for the unit location and/or return to the **Vessel Geometry** page and check the vessel shape dimensions, the origin location and the navigation reference point (NRP) location.

The MRU mounting angles can either be input manually or determined by use of the Mounting wizard. The Mounting Wizard is located in the **NAV Engine Configuration > Sensors > MRU > Geometry**.



☒ Show sensors ☒ Show monitoring points

Sensor location (from Origin)

X m Y m Z m

Mounting angles

Roll ° Pitch ° Yaw °

Physical mount

Procedure

1. Select the **System** menu > **NAV Engine** > **Standard** > **Sensors** > **MRU** > **Geometry**.
2. Type the X, Y and Z coordinates in metres from Origin to the unit location.
3. Type the unit's mounting angles in degrees for roll, pitch and yaw.

If the mounting angle values are not known to you, use the Mounting Wizard to calculate these values.

4. Select **Apply** to save your settings without closing the dialog box.

Related concepts

[About sensor survey](#), page 60

[Determining the miniMRU mounting orientation](#), page 69

[Surveying the miniMRU subsea housing](#), page 72

[Determining the system coordinates](#), page 73

[Survey accuracy values](#), page 75

Related tasks

[Using Mounting Wizard to determine miniMRU mounting angles](#), page 121

Related references

[Sensors MRU Geometry page](#), page 210

Using Mounting Wizard to determine miniMRU mounting angles

Use the Mounting Wizard to determine the roll, pitch and yaw mounting angles in degrees for the MRU.

Prerequisites

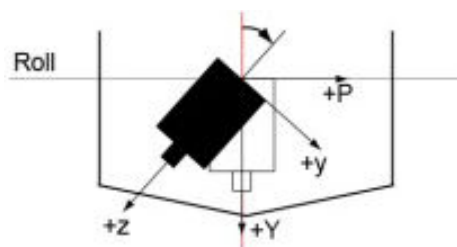
The MRU mounting bracket offset angles have to be available from a survey report or through other methods with similar accuracy.

Context

The mounting bracket offset angles which have to be entered are roll, pitch and yaw.

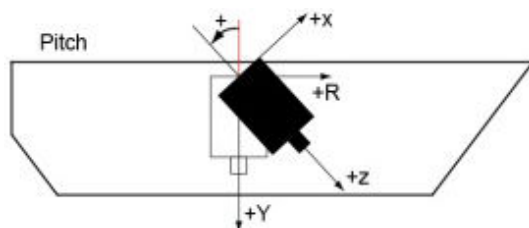
Roll offset angle

The angle between the ship's Y-axis and the projection of the unit's z-axis in the ship's PY-plane. Positive roll offset angle if the bracket tilts to starboard.



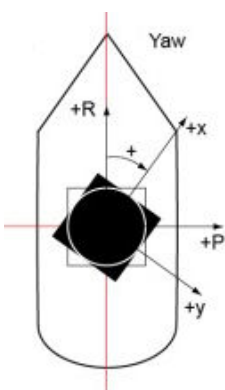
Pitch offset angle

The angle between the ship's Y-axis and the projection of the unit's z-axis in the ship's RY-plane. Positive pitch offset angle if the bracket tilts to stern.



Yaw offset angle

The angle between the ship's R-axis and the projection of the unit's x-axis in the ship's RP-plane. Positive yaw offset angle if the bracket is rotated clockwise.



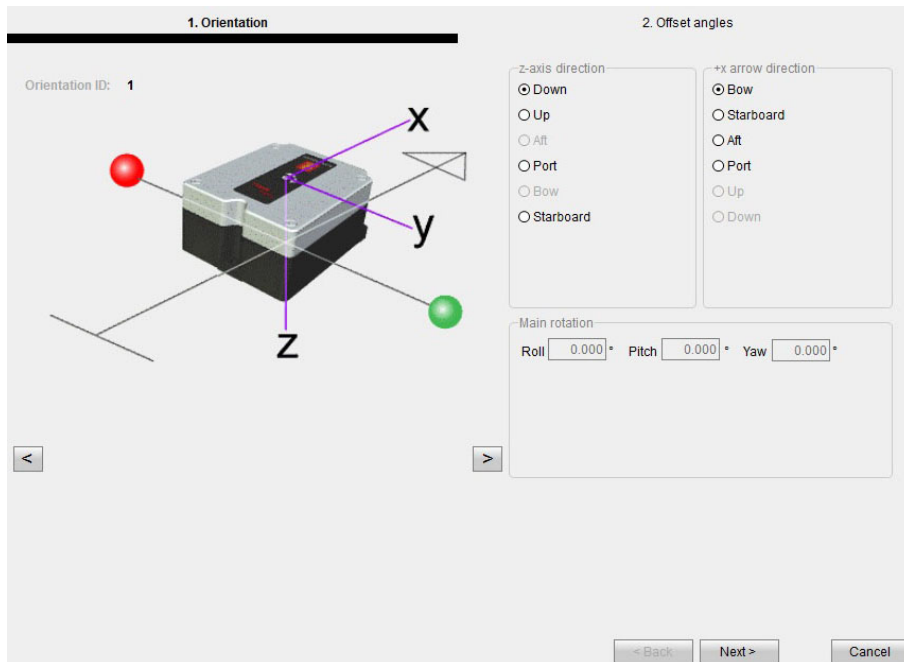
Note:



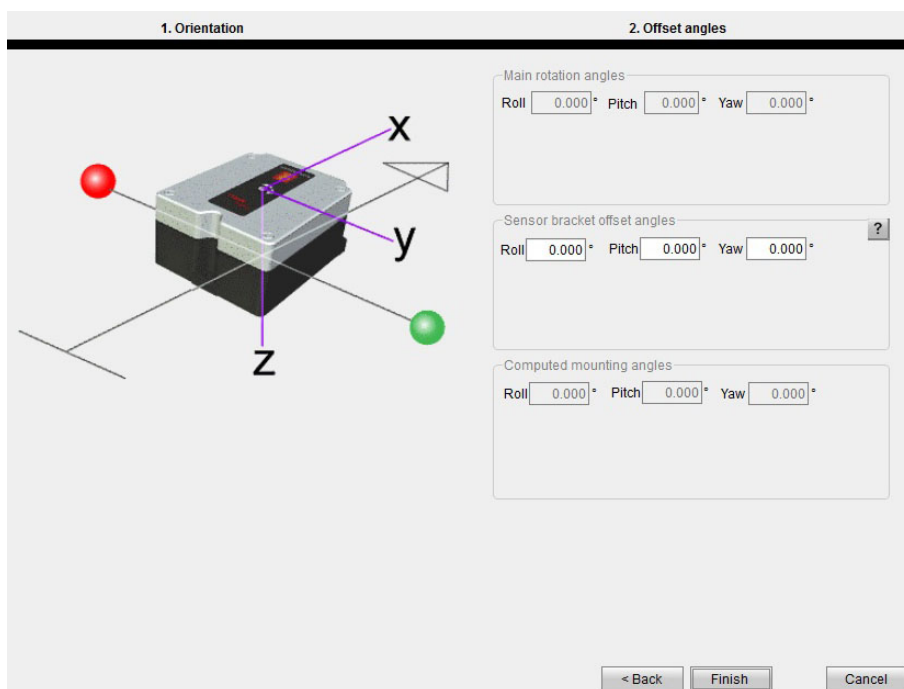
If the mounting bracket offset angles exceed 45 degrees, another main rotation should be selected.

Procedure

1. Select the **System** menu > **NAV Engine** > **Standard** > **Sensors** > **MRU** > **Geometry**.
2. Select the Mounting Wizard button and use the wizard to calculate the roll, pitch and yaw mounting angles.
The red circle indicates Port. The green circle indicates Starboard. The arrow points in the bow direction.
3. In step 1, **Orientation**, you shall determine the orientation of the unit. There are two ways to determine the orientation.
 - a. Select the < or > buttons to turn the unit around in 90-degree steps, axis by axis. Click until the correct mounting orientation of the unit has been found.
Observe that the parameters for roll, pitch and yaw under **Main rotation** are automatically updated with the actual main rotation of the unit.
 - b. Select the **Connector direction** options or the **+x arrow direction** options to select the unit orientation.



4. Select Next to continue to step 2, **Offset angles**.
Observe that the roll, pitch and yaw mounting angles are now indicated under **Main rotation angles**.
5. Type the surveyed unit bracket offset angles in degrees for roll, pitch and yaw.
The system calculates the mounting angles automatically and the values appear under **Computed mounting angles**.



6. Select **Finish** when you are ready to complete the offset angle setting.
This will exit the wizard and take you back to the initial **MRU Geometry** page.
7. Select **Apply** to save your settings without closing the dialog box.

Related concepts

[Survey accuracy values](#), page 75

Related tasks

[Setting miniMRU location and mounting angles](#), page 119

Related references

[Sensors MRU Geometry - Mounting Wizard](#), page 211

Selecting heave filter options

The heave configuration parameters allow you to tune the heave parameters to the vessel motion characteristics for the actual weather conditions. This is important when using real-time heave measurements in order to achieve optimum heave performance.

Context

Before a survey and/or during operation check the heave performance and tune the heave parameters until the best heave performance is achieved. An alternative is to select **Automatic** or **GNSS aided** and let the system automatically choose the best settings.

The screenshot shows a software interface for configuring heave parameters. It is divided into two main sections: 'Real-time heave' and 'Delayed heave'. In the 'Real-time heave' section, there is a 'Heave filter' dropdown menu currently set to 'Automatic', and a 'Heave mean level' checkbox labeled 'Roll/Pitch dependent' which is checked. The 'Delayed heave' section also has a 'Heave mean level' checkbox labeled 'Roll/Pitch dependent' which is checked.

Procedure

1. Select the **System** menu > **NAVEngine** > **Standard** > **Sensors** > **MGC/MRU** > **Heave config**.
2. Select the **heave filter** mode you want to use from the **Options** list.
3. If you select **Hydrographic survey** or **General purpose**, type the wanted filter period.
Values are between 1 and 25 seconds.

Or you can select **Automatic** or **GNSS aided** for the system to estimate the heave filter parameters.

4. Select the **Roll/Pitch dependent** box if you want the heave measurements dependent on the roll and pitch measurements.
There are separate selections for the real time heave and the delayed heave (PFreeHeave).
5. Select **Apply** to save your settings without closing the dialog box.

Related references

[Sensors MRU/MGC Heave config page](#), page 218

Setting monitoring points

You must define the locations on the vessel for which you want the system to calculate the position.

Prerequisites

To get exact coordinates from origin to each monitoring point, each monitoring point has to be measured or calculated based upon drawings or previously measured points.

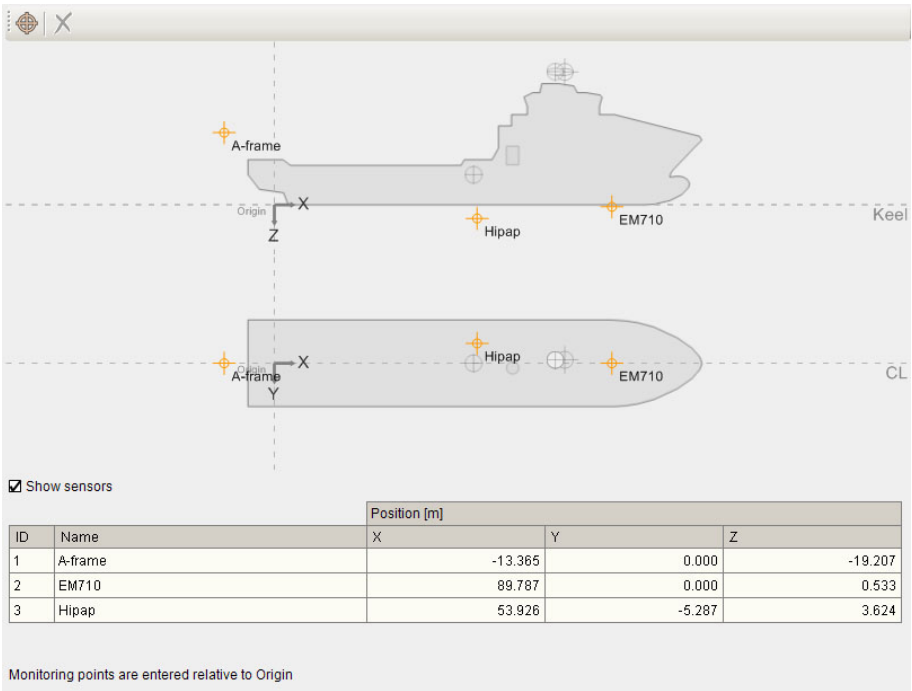
Context

You must define points (monitoring points) on the vessel where you want the position measurements to be output. The monitoring points are given relative to origin (positive forward, towards starboard and down). The position of a monitoring point relative to the origin is indicated in the vessel illustration when the cursor is over the monitoring point. As soon as a monitoring point has been defined, its location is indicated in the vessel illustration. If a monitoring point appears incorrect, check the signs and the coordinates input for each monitoring point and the vessel dimensions and the entered location of origin in the **Vessel Geometry** page.

The system supports up to eight user definable monitoring points.

Deleting a monitoring point

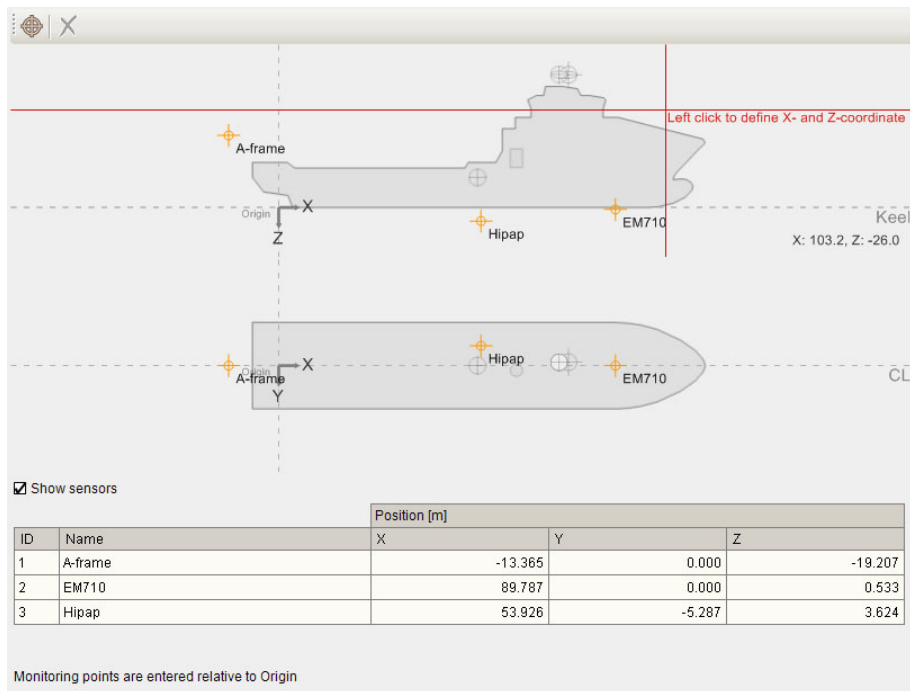
You can delete a monitoring point by selecting the wanted point in the table and clicking the Delete button, .



Procedure

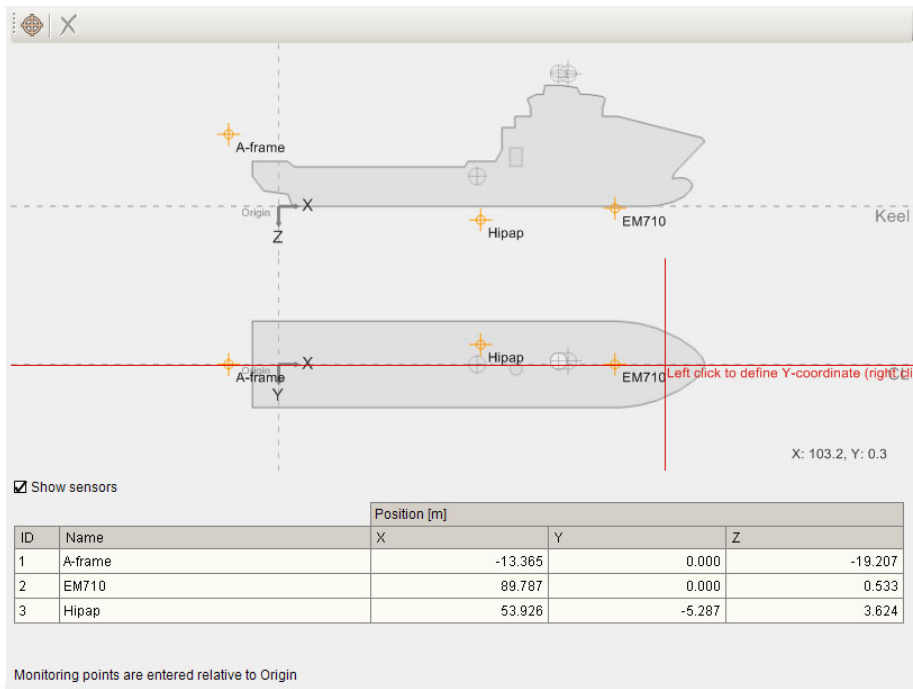
- 1. Select the **System** menu > **NAV Engine** > **Standard** > **Monitoring points** > **Geometry**.
- 2. Select the Add button  at the top of the page to add a monitoring point.
Observe that the cursor changes to two red lines which will help you to place the new monitoring point in the vessel illustration.

3. Drag the cursor to the location on the upper vessel illustration where you want to add the X and Z coordinates for your monitoring point and left-click the mouse button.

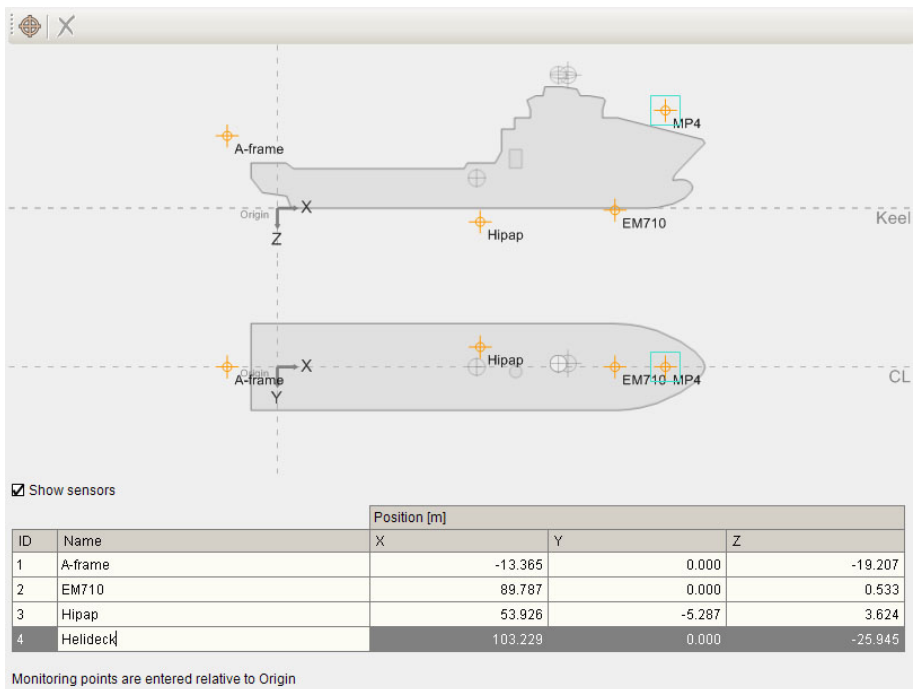


4. Continue and drag the cursor to the location in the lower vessel illustration where you want to add the Y coordinate for your monitoring point and left-click the mouse button.

Observe that the coordinates for the new monitoring point appear in the monitoring points table. The table will also help you to get the wanted location for your monitoring point.



5. Select the **Name** column in the table and type an identifying name for your monitoring point. Press Enter to confirm.



6. Select the **X**, **Y** and **Z** columns and adjust the coordinates by typing the exact location of the monitoring point. If necessary. Press Enter to confirm.
7. Select **Apply** to save your settings without closing the dialog box.

Related concepts

[Determining the system coordinates](#), page 73

[Survey accuracy values](#), page 75

Related references

[Monitoring points Geometry page](#), page 219

Setting up the Telegram out interface

The **TelegramOut** function allows you to enable and set up data messages transmitted to external equipment.

Context

Up to 16 serial and/or network interfaces can be configured.

The screenshot shows the 'Input/Output list' configuration window. At the top, there is a table with columns: Interface, Type, Direction, I/O Properties, and Description. The table lists four interfaces: TelegramOut1 (checked, Serial, Out, COM10 9600 n 8 1 rs-422, Telegram Out #1), TelegramOut2 (unchecked, Serial, Out, NONE, Telegram Out #2), TelegramOut3 (unchecked, Serial, Out, NONE, Telegram Out #3), and TelegramOut4 (unchecked, Serial, Out, NONE, Telegram Out #4). Below the table, there are status indicators: Disabled, OK, Warning, and Error.

Below the table, the 'Configuration details' section is expanded for the selected interface 'TelegramOut1'. It shows the following fields:

- Interface: TelegramOut1
- Description: Telegram Out #1
- Type: Serial
- Cable ID: (empty)
- I/O properties: Port: COM10, Baud rate: 9600, rs-232 (unchecked), rs-422 (checked)
- Advanced: (collapsed)
- Telegram out properties:
 - Format: NMEA
 - Datum: WGS84
 - Monitoring point: GNSS antenna
 - NMEA selection: GGA GST VTG
 - Options: (empty)
 - NMEA talker ID: IN
 - Log to file: (checked)
 - Time precision: 2
- Telegram timing: Interval [s]: 1.000, Event driven (checked), Timer driven (unchecked)

Procedure

1. Select the **System** menu > **NAV Engine** > **Standard** > **Communication interface** > **Input/Output**.
2. Select the **TelegramOut** interface you want to set up in the **Input/Output list**.
Observe that the **Configuration details** parameters appear at the lower part of the page.
3. Select either **Ethernet** or **Serial** in the **Type** list.
Enter the appropriate parameters for the selected interface type.
4. Continue to **Telegram out properties**.

5. Select the wanted output telegram format from the **Format** list.
If you select NMEA as telegram format, the **NMEA selection** list becomes active.
6. If NMEA is selected, select the wanted NMEA telegrams to use from the **NMEA** list.
7. Select the wanted datum format from the **Datum** list.
8. Select the wanted monitoring point from the **Monitoring point** list.
9. Type the talker ID of NMEA messages sent from this output in the **NMEA talker ID** box.
The default value is IN for systems with an Inertial Measurement Unit (IMU) connected. The default value is GP for systems without an IMU connected.
10. Select the **Log to file** box if you want to log the measurements to file internally in the Seapath system.
11. Select the wanted number of decimals in the time field in the NMEA telegrams containing time information from the **Time precision** box
12. Under **Telegram timing**, type the wanted output interval for the messages.
 - **Event driven**: This parameter outputs data only when the data are calculated or when a change occurs. Output data are delayed.
 - **Timer driven**: This is the interval between each sample, Type the wanted interval in seconds in the **Interval** box. The range is 0.01 to 3000 seconds.
13. Select **Apply** to save the settings.

Related concepts

[General Seapath configuration for PHS](#), page 84

[Setting up Seapath for SIS version 4 users](#), page 87

[Setting up Seapath for K-Controller users \(SIS version 5\)](#), page 89

Related tasks

[Communication interface description](#), page 97

[Using the Serial interface](#), page 99

[Using the Ethernet interface](#), page 100

Related references

[Communication interface - TelegramOut interface page](#), page 223

Setting up the DGNSS correction link parameters

You can set up the system to receive various types of corrections which will improve the position accuracy.

Context

The screenshot shows the 'Input/Output list' configuration window. It contains a table with columns: Interface, Type, Direction, I/O Properties, and Description. The table lists five DGNSS links. Link #2 is selected. Below the table, there are configuration details for the selected link, including fields for Interface, Type, Cable ID, and DGNSS link properties (Interface, Name, Format, Timeout, and GGA Interval).

Interface	Type	Direction	I/O Properties	Description
☒ DgnssLink2	Ethernet	In	UDP LAN2 15010 MULTICAST	Link #2
☐ DgnssLink3	Ethernet	In	UDP LAN2 13911 BROADCAST	Link #3
☐ DgnssLink4	Serial	In	COM1 38400 n 8 1 rs-232	Link #4
☐ DgnssLink5	Ethernet	In	UDP LAN2 32111 MULTICAST	Link #5

Legend: ☐ Disabled | ☒ OK | ☐ Warning | ☐ Error

Configuration details

Interface: Description:

Type:

Cable ID:

I/O properties

DGNSS link properties

Interface: Name: Timeout [s]:

Format:

☐ GGA interval [s]:

Procedure

1. Select the **System** menu > **NAV Engine** > **Standard** > **Communication interface** > **Input/Output**.
2. Select the **DGNSSLink** interface you want to set up in the **Input/Output list**.
Observe that the **Configuration details** parameters appear at the lower part of the page.
3. Select either **Serial** or **Ethernet** in the **Type** list.
Enter the appropriate parameters for the selected interface type.
4. Continue to **DGNSS link properties**.
5. Select the wanted interface from the **Interface** list.
The content of the **Format** list will depend on this selection.
6. Select the wanted format from the **Format** list.
7. Type the name of the DGNSS correction link.
This name will be displayed in the DGNSS link status bar at the bottom of View 1.
8. Type the correction **Timeout** age limit in seconds.
If the age of the corrections exceeds this limit, the corrections are invalid.
9. Select the **GGA Interval** box if you want the system to send GGA messages to the DGNSS receiver. Type the wanted interval in seconds between the telegrams.
10. Select **Apply** to save the settings.

Related concepts

[General Seapath configuration for PHS](#), page 84

Related tasks

[Communication interface description](#), page 97

[Using the Serial interface](#), page 99

[Using the Ethernet interface](#), page 100

Related references

[Communication interface - DgnssLink interface page](#), page 226

Changing the Sensor Unit IP address

You must enter the Internet Protocol (IP) address for the Sensor Unit so it can communicate on the local area network (LAN).

Context

Under **Interface settings** you can modify the IP address of the physical interface selected in the **Interface** list.

The Sensor Unit communicates with the operator software using multicast UDP/IP. Any client may join the configured multicast group provided that the network hardware between the Sensor Unit and the client supports multicast forwarding.

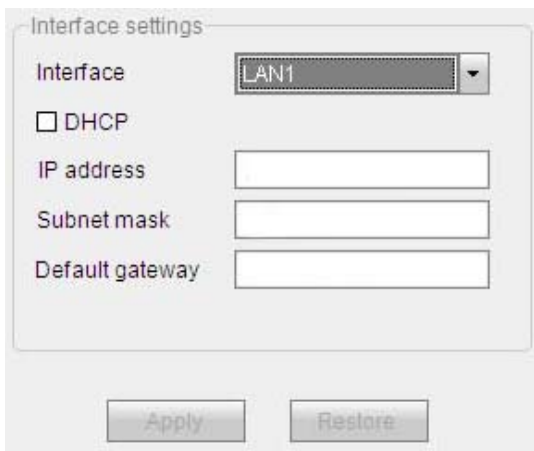
The default IP address for the Sensor Unit is: 192.168.1.10

The default multicast address for the Sensor Unit is: 239.255.0.3.

The default subnet mask for the Sensor Unit is: 255.255.255.0.

The computer which runs the operating software needs to be on the same subnet. Unless the IP address of the Sensor Unit is changed, the valid IP address for the computer would be 192.168.1.0-255, excluding the address of the Sensor Unit itself.

Contact the network administrator for advice on IP address assignments.

A screenshot of a 'Interface settings' dialog box. It features a title bar with the text 'Interface settings'. Below the title bar, there is a label 'Interface' followed by a dropdown menu showing 'LAN1'. Below this is a checkbox labeled 'DHCP'. Underneath the checkbox are three text input fields labeled 'IP address', 'Subnet mask', and 'Default gateway'. At the bottom of the dialog box are two buttons: 'Apply' and 'Restore'.

Procedure

1. Select the **System** menu > **NAV Engine** > **Standard** > **Network**.
2. Select the interface for which you want to change the IP address.
3. Type the new IP address for the interface. This is recommended.
Or you can select the **DHCP** box if the IP address is given by a DHCP server. The rest of the parameters will then be disabled.
4. Type the subnet mask address for this interface.
5. Type the IP address for the default gateway.
6. Select **Apply** to save the settings.
7. Restart the Sensor Unit for these changes to take effect and or the new settings to be used by NAV Engine.

Further requirements

To restart the Sensor Unit, select the **System** menu > **Restart** > **Sensor Unit**.

If you select **Restore**, you will return to the previous interface settings.

Related references

[Network page](#), page 228

Additional system configuration

Topics

[Entering vessel identification parameters](#), page 134

[Importing vessel shape from file](#), page 134

[Selecting SBAS satellites](#), page 137

[Enabling Fugro high precision services, page 138](#)

[Selecting heading input format from a gyro compass, page 139](#)

[Setting up the MGC as an inertial navigation system \(INS\), page 140](#)

[Setting up NTRIP client, page 142](#)

Entering vessel identification parameters

The vessel **Description** parameters allow you to enter information about the vessel which is needed for identification purposes.

Context



The screenshot shows a software interface for entering vessel information. It is divided into two main sections: 'Vessel description' and 'Vessel ID'. The 'Vessel description' section contains three input fields: 'Vessel name' with the value 'Arne Viking', 'Vessel owner' with the value 'Seatex', and 'Country of origin' with the value 'Norway'. The 'Vessel ID' section contains two input fields: 'MMSI' with the value '113113' and 'IMO number' with the value '123456'.

Procedure

1. Select the **System** menu > **NAV Engine** > **Standard** > **Vessel** > **Description**.
2. Type the name of your vessel. This box cannot be empty. The default value is **VESSEL**.
3. Type the name of the **vessel owner**. This is optional information.
4. Type the **country of origin** for the vessel. This is optional information.
5. Type the MMSI number assigned to the vessel. The default value is 0.
6. Type the IMO number assigned to the vessel. The default value is 0.
7. Select **Apply** to save the settings.

Related references

[Vessel Description page](#), page 207

Importing vessel shape from file

You can load a vessel model from file in order to get accurate dimensions for your vessel.

Context

The pre-defined scalable vessel shapes represent the actual vessel outline only in rare cases. In order to configure the accurate location of various sensors, equipment and monitoring points, it is recommended to load a separate vessel model from file.

The system supports two types of two dimensional outlines: side view (towards starboard) and top view. Three file types are available: **Vessel models** (*.svm), **Vessel vector images** (*.svi) and **Old vessel images** (*.txt).

The vessel image file must meet the following requirements:

- The vessel data have to be in an ASCII file generated by Excel, Notepad or similar tools.
- The file head includes Overall length (LOA), Overall width, Overall height and Stern to Origin data in metres.
- Profile (side view) data in X and Z coordinates must be in metres, related to the origin. The coordinates are specified clockwise from a point aft of the origin, and the last coordinate has to equal the first coordinate to form a closed polygon.
- The top view data in X and Y coordinates must be in metres. The first coordinate has to be aft of the origin along the centre line. Successive coordinates are specified clockwise, and the last coordinate has to equal the first to form a closed polygon.

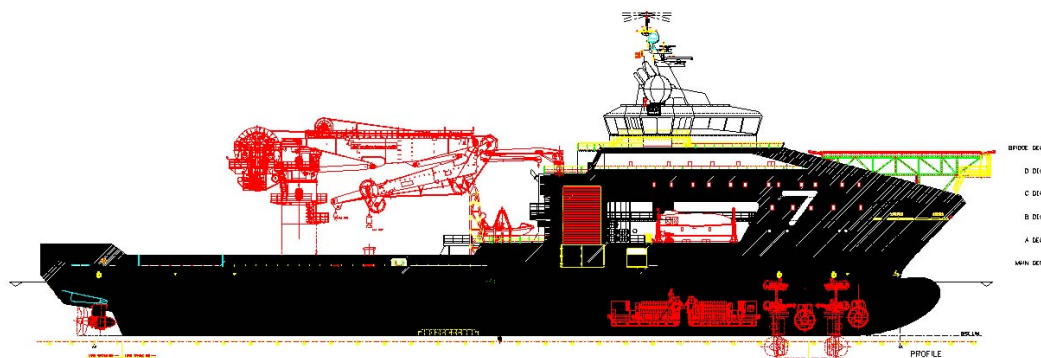
Vessel image files can be created by Kongsberg Discovery AS upon customer request. General arrangement (GA) drawings or similar are required to create vessel image files.

Procedure

1. Select the **System** menu > **NAV Engine** > **Standard** > **Vessel** > **Geometry**.
2. Select **Use vessel drawing**. The **Shape dimension** parameters will be locked.
3. Type the parameters for the location of origin (survey origin).
4. Type the navigation reference point location.X, Y, Z.
5. Select **Apply** to save the settings.

Vessel shape from file

The illustration shows an example of a GA drawing of a multi-purpose vessel.



A user text file from Notepad may look like this.

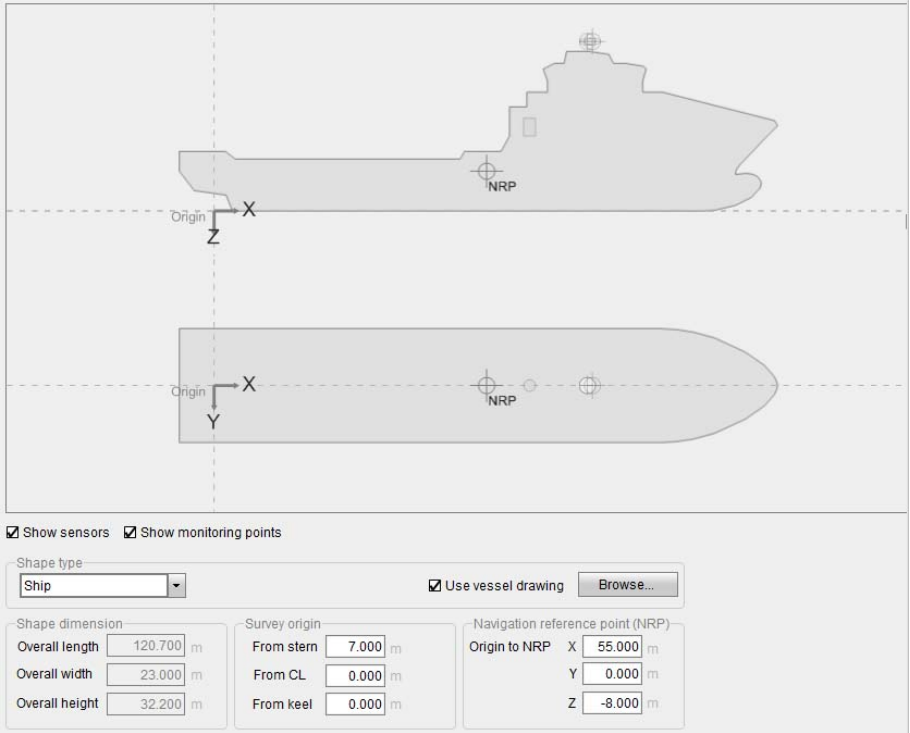
```
mpv.svi - Notepad
File Edit Format View Help
%Vessel Data [m]
%LOA = 120.70
%width = 23.00
%Height = 32.20
%Aft to AP = 7.00

%Profile coordinates in (X,Z) [m]
0.00,-3.55
2.44,-3.19
3.69,0.00
98.60,0.00
101.00,-0.14
105.20,-1.12
108.36,-2.70
110.09,-4.51
110.35,-5.20
110.40,-5.43
110.40,-5.69
.
.
.
63.10,-24.00
63.10,-21.00
59.62,-21.00
59.62,-15.13
57.87,-12.99
49.65,-10.50
4.25,-10.50
2.31,-12.00
-7.00,-12.00
-7.00,-8.00
-4.00,-4.11
0.00,-3.55

%Profile cutout
-23.20,-36.48
-23.20,-10.24
23.20,-10.24
23.20,-36.48
-23.20,-36.48

%Top view coordinates in (X,Y) [m]
-7.00,0.00
-7.00,11.50
90.30,11.50
.
.
.
113.60,0.57
113.70,0.00
```

The vessel shape in the NAV Engine Configuration looks like this.



In the example, only the port side of the vessel top view is defined in the file. Symmetry is assumed, so this is sufficient to draw a symmetric vessel shape. If the

vessel is not symmetric, use the section code **%Top view coordinates in (X,Y) [m] Complete** and give the coordinates along the complete shape, defined clockwise.

It is possible to define cutouts within the profile or top view polygons. For profile cutout, use **%Profile cutout n**, where **n** identifies the cutout.

Related references

[Vessel Geometry page](#), page 206

Selecting SBAS satellites

The SBAS parameters allow you enable tracking of SBAS satellites. You can set up automatic or manual tracking of the SBAS satellites.

Context

Maximum two SBAS satellites can be tracked by the receiver. If you manually select two SBAS satellites, the system will automatically use data from the best satellite. If no specific satellite is selected, the system will select and use data from the best of the available satellites.

The screenshot shows a configuration window for SBAS (Satellite-Based Augmentation System) tracking. At the top, there are two radio buttons: 'Enabled' (checked) and 'Automatic'. Below these, the 'Manual' option is selected. The interface is divided into four sections, each representing a different SBAS system with a list of satellites to be tracked:

- EGNOS:** A list box containing three satellites: 120 (checked), 124 (unchecked), and 126 (checked).
- WAAS:** A list box containing three satellites: 133 (unchecked), 135 (unchecked), and 138 (unchecked).
- MSAS:** A list box containing two satellites: 129 (unchecked) and 137 (unchecked).
- GAGAN:** A list box containing two satellites: 127 (unchecked) and 128 (unchecked).

Procedure

1. Select the **System** menu > **NAV Engine** > **Standard** > **Sensors** > **DGNSS** > **SBAS**.
2. Select **Enable** to enable tracking of SBAS satellites.
3. If you want the system to track SBAS satellites automatically, select **Automatic**.
4. If you want to select which SBAS satellites to use yourself, instead of automatic selection by the system, select **Manual**.
5. Select which SBAS satellites to use. You can select maximum two satellites.

6. Select **Apply** to save the settings.

Related references

[Sensors DGNSS SBAS page](#), page 229

Enabling Fugro high precision services

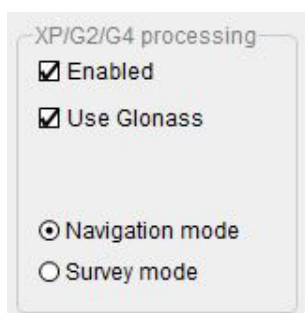
The **XP/G2/G4** parameters allow you to use high precision services to improve the accuracy of the GNSS signals which results in a more accurate position.

Prerequisites

A Fugro demodulator has to be connected and activated. A valid subscription to the Fugro high performance positioning service is required.

Context

You must enable the use of high precision services as this setting is not enabled by default.



Procedure

1. Select the **System** menu > **NAVEngine** > **Standard**.
2. Select **Sensors** > **DGNSS** > **XP/G2/G4**
3. Select the **Enabled** box to enable the use of high precision services.
4. Select **Glonass** if you want the system to use GLONASS corrections.
5. If you want more reliability during difficult conditions, select **Navigation mode** or if you want high accuracy, select **Survey mode**.
6. Select **Apply** to save the settings.

Related references

[Sensors DGNSS XP/G2/G4 page](#), page 230

Selecting heading input format from a gyro compass

Heading input from a gyro compass or similar can be input to the Seapath system as a backup to improve reliability.

Context

Heading input from a gyro compass, or heading input from the DP system, are used in the position filter and can be used to display heading and speed in the displays. In addition, heading is necessary to use the built-in lever arm compensation. Several types of heading formats are accepted by the system.

The screenshot shows the 'Input/Output list' window with a table of interfaces. The 'Gyro1' interface is selected. Below the table, the 'Configuration details' section is expanded, showing the configuration for 'Gyro1'.

Interface	Type	Direction	I/O Properties	Description
☒ GnssRec1	Serial	In/Out	GNSSA1 57600 n 8 1	Receiver #1
☒ MGC	Serial	In/Out	MRU 115200 n 8 1 rs-422	IMU #1
☒ Gyro1	Serial	In	COM11 9600 n 8 1 rs-232	Gyro #1
☐ Gyro2	In	NONE		Gyro #2

Legend: ☐ Disabled | ☒ OK | ☐ Warning | ☐ Error

Configuration details

Interface: Description:

Type:

Cable ID:

I/O properties

Port: Baud rate: ☒ rs-232 ☐ rs-422

Advanced

Parity: Data bits: Stop bits:

Telegram in properties

Format: Timeout [s]: Interval [s]:

Priority: ☒ Checksum required

☐ GGA/VTG Interval [s]:

Procedure

1. Select the **System** menu > **NAV Engine** > **Standard** > **Communication interface** > **Input/Output**.
2. Select the **Gyro** interface you want to set up in the **Input/Output list**.
Observe that the **Configuration details** parameters appear at the lower part of the page.
3. Select either **Ethernet** or **Serial** in the **Type** list.
Enter the appropriate parameters for the selected interface type.
4. Continue to **Telegram in properties**.
5. Select the wanted gyro telegram from the **Format** list.
6. Type the wanted **Timeout** age limit in seconds.
If the age of the gyro message exceeds this limit, the gyro message is invalid.
7. Type the wanted **Interval** for seconds between the incoming telegrams

8. Type a number for which priority the heading input shall have in the Seapath system
9. Select the **Checksum required** box if you want NMEA checksum to be required. This selection is selected by default. This is the recommended setting.
10. Select the **GGA/VTG** box if you want the system to send GGA and VTG messages to the gyro at specified intervals.
11. Select **Apply** to save the settings.

Related tasks

[Communication interface description](#), page 97

[Using the Serial interface](#), page 99

[Using the Ethernet interface](#), page 100

Related references

[Communication interface - Gyro interface page](#), page 231

Setting up the MGC as an inertial navigation system (INS)

You can set up the Motion Sensor and Gyro Compass (MGC) to operate as an inertial navigation system (INS).

Context

When the Motion Sensor and Gyro Compass (MGC) shall operate as an inertial navigation system (INS) in addition to being an Inertial Measurement Unit (IMU) for the Seapath system, the MGC requires input of the NMEA messages GGA, VTG and ZDA.

Note: _____



For some installations it will be convenient to send these NMEA messages from the Sensor Unit to the MGC instead of interfacing an external GNSS receiver to the MGC. However, if the MGC is installed as a type approved IMO gyro compass, these NMEA messages must be input from an IMO approved GNSS receiver. Otherwise the type approval will be voided.

Input/Output list

Interface	Type	Direction	I/O Properties	Description
☒ MGC	Serial	In/Out	MRU 115200 n 8 1 rs-422	IMU #1
☐ Gyro1	Serial	In	COM11 9600 n 8 1 rs-232	Gyro #1
☐ DgnssLink1	Ethernet	In	UDP LAN2 13912 MULTICAST	Xp2
☒ DgnssLink2	Ethernet	In	UDP LAN2 3003 MULTICAST	RTCM3.rtk

Disabled | OK | Warning | Error

▼ Configuration details

Interface: Description:

Type:

Cable ID:

▼ I/O properties

Port: Baud rate: ☐ rs-232 ☒ rs-422

▼ Advanced

Parity: Data bits: Stop bits:

▼ MGC properties

Heading priority:

☒ NMEA output interval [s]:

WARNING: Enabling output to an MGC used as compass will make its IMO type approval void.

Procedure

1. Select the **System** menu > **NAV Engine** > **Standard** > **Communication interface** > **Input/Output**.
2. Select the **MGC** interface in the **Input/Output list**.
Observe that the **MGC properties** parameters appear at the lower part of the page.
3. Select **NMEA output interval** to enable output of NMEA GGA, VTG and ZDA messages to the MGC.
4. Set **Heading priority** to 0.
5. Select **Apply** to save the settings.

Related tasks

[Communication interface description](#), page 97

[Using the Serial interface](#), page 99

[Using the Ethernet interface](#), page 100

Related references

[Communication interface - MGC interface page](#), page 227

Setting up NTRIP client

An NTRIP client is provided to ease access to external corrections provided over an internet connection. The Seapath unit needs to have access to internet through one of its Ethernet devices.

Prerequisites

You must enable a DGNSS link in **NAV Engine > Standard** before you can set up an NTRIP client. The NTRIP client configuration is done from **NAV Engine > Advanced** configuration.

Context

The Seapath software release 2.03.00 introduces an NTRIP client.

Procedure

1. **DGNSS link setup:**
 - a. Select the **System** menu > **NAV Engine** > **Standard** > **Communication interface** > **Input/Output**.
 - b. Select the **DGNSSLink** interface you want to set up in the **Input/Output** list.
It does not matter which DGNSSLink you use for this purpose.

Observe that the **Configuration details** parameters appear at the lower part of the page.

Interface	Type	Direction	I/O Properties	Description
☒ MRU	Serial	In/Out	MRU 115200 n 8 1	IMU #1
☐ Gyro 1	Serial	In	COM11 9600 n 8 1 rs-232	Gyro #1
☒ DgnssLink1	Serial	In	COM9 9600 n 8 1 rs-422	Link #1
☒ DgnssLink2	Serial	In	COM1 115200 n 8 1	Link #2

Disabled | OK | Warning | Error

▼ Configuration details

Interface: DgnssLink1 Description: Link #1

Type: Serial

Cable ID:

▼ I/O properties

Port: COM9 Baud rate: 9600 ☐ rs-232 ☒ rs-422

► Advanced

▼ DGNSS link properties

Interface: Generic Name: RTCM Timeout [s]: 60

Format: RTCM v3

Supplier: OTHER ☐ GGA interval [s]: 0

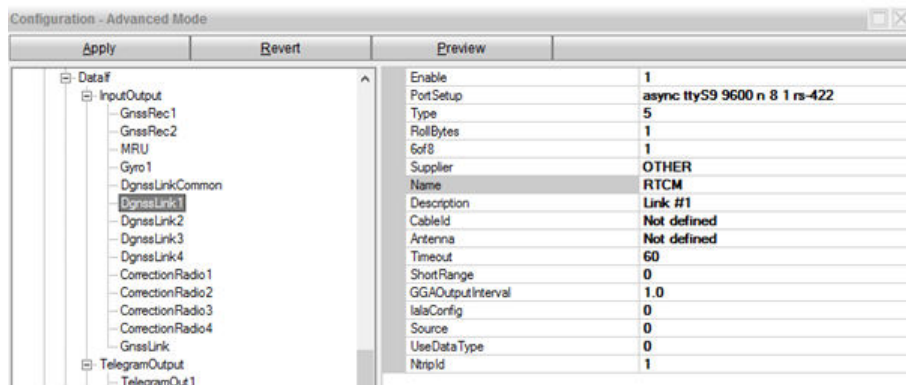
- c. Select either **Serial** or **Ethernet** in the **Type** list. It does not matter which you choose for the NTRIP functionality.

Note: _____



The COM port, UDP port or IP address are not important as long as the settings do not give conflicting settings for other IO settings.

- d. Select **Apply** to save the settings.
2. **Modifying the DGNSS link parameter:**
 - a. Select the **System** menu > **NAV Engine** > **Advanced**.
 - b. Navigate to **InputOutput**, select the DGNSS link you set up previously.



- c. Set **GGAOutputInterval** to 1.
This parameter is set to match the requirements for the NTRIP network. In this example it is 1 Hz.
- d. Set **Ntripid** to 1.
This parameter is set to match the NTRIP client link ID to be configured. In this example it is 1.
3. **Configuring the NTRIP client:**
 - a. Select the **System** menu > **NAV Engine** > **Advanced**.
 - b. Navigate to **NTRIP 1**.
 - c. Set the **IP** parameter to the requirement for the NTRIP network IP address.
 - d. Set the **Port** parameter to the requirement for the NTRIP network.
 - e. Set the **MountPoint** parameter to the available mount points from the NTRIP network.

Note: _____

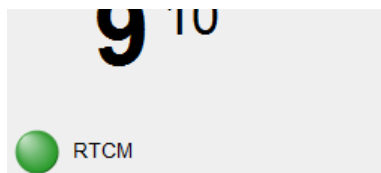


The input value must be preceded by / (forward slash). For example: /CPOSRTCM32

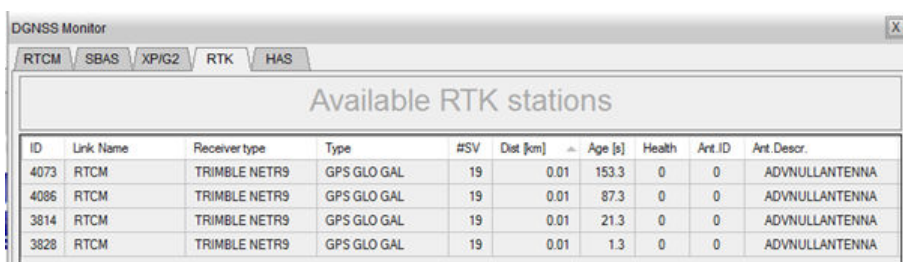
- f. Set the **Protocol** parameter: 0 = TCP. 1 = UDP.
- g. Select **Apply** to save the settings.

Result

When the settings are applied, a successful connection will be displayed as a green RTCM link lamp in the DGNSS link status bar.



Select the link lamp to get more information about the received DGNSS data. The information is available in the **RTK** tab in the **DGNSS Monitor**.



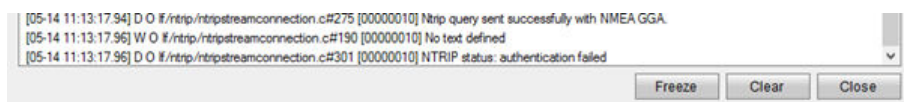
The screenshot shows the 'DGNSS Monitor' window with the 'RTK' tab selected. It displays a table titled 'Available RTK stations' with the following data:

ID	Link Name	Receiver type	Type	#SV	Dist [km]	Age [s]	Health	Ant.ID	Ant.Descr.
4073	RTCM	TRIMBLE NETR9	GPS GLO GAL	19	0.01	153.3	0	0	ADVNULLANTENNA
4086	RTCM	TRIMBLE NETR9	GPS GLO GAL	19	0.01	87.3	0	0	ADVNULLANTENNA
3814	RTCM	TRIMBLE NETR9	GPS GLO GAL	19	0.01	21.3	0	0	ADVNULLANTENNA
3828	RTCM	TRIMBLE NETR9	GPS GLO GAL	19	0.01	1.3	0	0	ADVNULLANTENNA

Further requirements

If the RTCM link lamp turns red you can find debug information for Seapath NAV Engine by selecting the **Alarm** menu > **NAV Engine debug**

The illustration shows an example of wrong user name and password, which results in authentication failure.



This information must be provided to the Kongsberg Discovery AS customer support for further fault finding of the issue.

Related tasks

[Communication interface description](#), page 97

[Using the Serial interface](#), page 99

[Using the Ethernet interface](#), page 100

Related references

[Communication interface - DgnssLink interface page](#), page 226

Operator software configuration

Topics

[Selecting the position of views in the display, page 145](#)

[Selecting the appearance of the Sky view, page 146](#)

[Adjusting the Integrity view, page 147](#)

[Adjusting the Compass view, page 148](#)

[Adjusting UTM presentation, page 149](#)

[Selecting the Seapath Operator software data source, page 149](#)

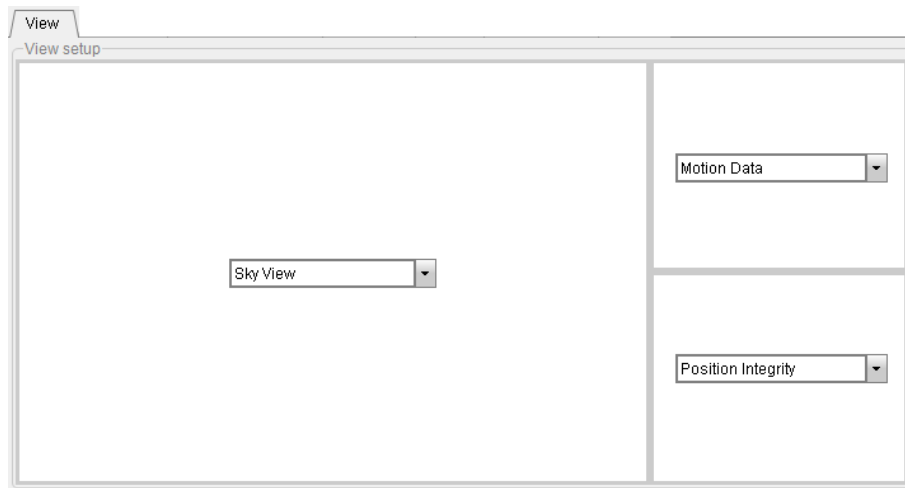
[Selecting reception of alarm messages, page 150](#)

Selecting the position of views in the display

The **View** page allows you to select the contents of each view when the HMI (Human Machine Interface) application starts.

Context

Two views cannot have the same contents. When one view is selected as contents in View 1, other contents will automatically be selected for View 2.



Procedure

1. Select the **System** menu > **Operator SW** > **View**.
2. Select which view you want for View 1 and View 2 from the drop-down lists.
3. Select **Apply** to save the settings.

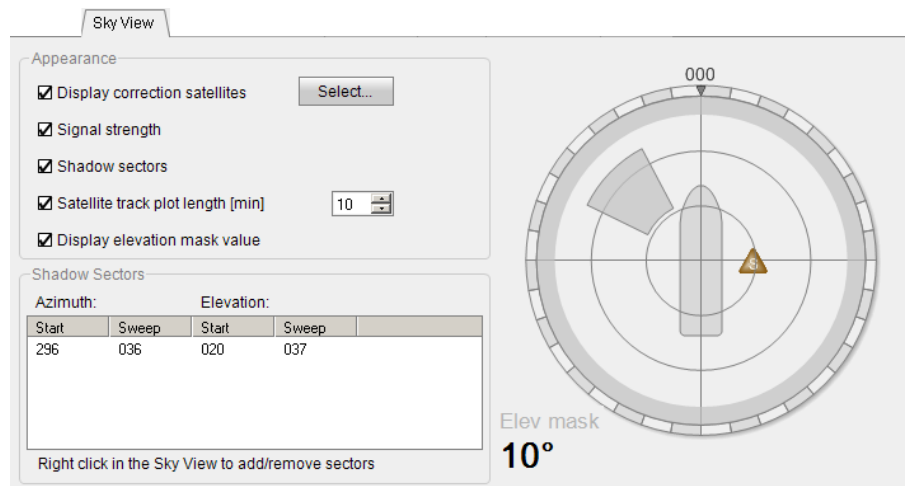
Related references

[Operator software configuration - View page, page 233](#)

Selecting the appearance of the Sky view

The *Sky View* can contain various information. You can define what information and objects you want to appear in the *Sky View*.

Context



Procedure

1. Select the **System** menu > **Operator SW** > **Sky View**.
2. Select **Display correction satellites**. Observe that the **Select** button appears.
3. Select this button to open the **Select Correction Satellites** dialog box.
4. Select the satellites you want to appear in the Sky view. Select **OK**.
5. Select **Signal strength** if you want to display the signal bar under the satellites in the Sky view.
6. Add shadow sectors to be able to display them in the Sky view.
 - a. Place the cursor over the sky view area to the right in the Sky view page.
 - b. Right-click and select **Add sector**.
Observe that the sector appears in the sky view area and in the table under **Shadow Sectors**. The table shows your shadow sectors.
 - c. Hover the cursor over the shadow sector. Observe that the cursor changes to arrow symbols.
 - d. Drag the arrows horizontally and vertically to create your shadow sector.
Observe the **Azimuth** and **Elevation** values in degrees.
7. Delete shadow sectors if they are no longer applicable.
 - a. Select a sector in the sky view area to the right in the **Sky View** page.

- b. Right-click and select **Remove sector**.
Observe that the shadow sector disappears from the sky view area and from the table.
8. Select **Satellites track plot length** if you want to show this in the Sky view. Observe that the **Satellite track plot length** list appears.
9. Select the wanted value for the satellite track plot length in minutes.
10. Select **Display elevation mask value** if you want the value to appear in the Sky view.
11. Select **Apply** to save the settings.

Related references

[Operator software configuration - Sky view page](#), page 233

Adjusting the Integrity view

The **Position Integrity** tab allows you to adjust the scaling of the Integrity view.

Context



Procedure

1. Select the **System** menu > **Operator SW** > **Position Integrity**.
2. Type the **Max ellipse EPE** in metres.
3. Type the steps for **Ellipse diagram resolution**.
4. Select **Apply** to save the settings.

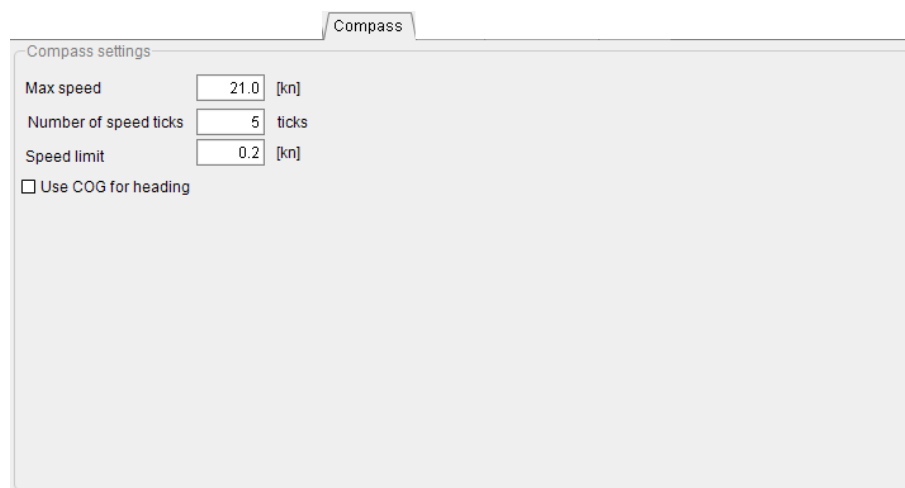
Related references

[Operator software configuration - Position Integrity page](#), page 235

Adjusting the Compass view

The **Compass** page allows you to adjust the speed scaling of the Compass view.

Context



The screenshot shows a software window titled "Compass" with a sub-tab "Compass settings". Inside the settings area, there are three input fields: "Max speed" with a value of 21.0 [kn], "Number of speed ticks" with a value of 5 ticks, and "Speed limit" with a value of 0.2 [kn]. Below these fields is a checkbox labeled "Use COG for heading" which is currently unchecked.

Procedure

1. Select the **System** menu > **Operator SW** > **Compass**.
2. Type the maximum vessel speed, **Max speed**, to be displayed in the Compass view.
3. Type the number of circles to be displayed, **Number of speed ticks**.
4. Type the lower **Speed limit** for when COG (Course Over Ground) and SOG (Speed Over Ground) shall be displayed in the Compass view.
5. Select the **Use COG for heading** box if true heading is unavailable.
6. Select **Apply** to save the settings.

Related references

[Operator software configuration - Compass page](#), page 236

Adjusting UTM presentation

You can control how UTM positions are treated by the application. UTM is the Universal Transverse Mercator coordinate system.

Context



Procedure

1. Select the **System** menu > **Operator SW** > **UTM**.
2. Clear the **False Northing** check box if you want positions south of the equator to be presented as negative values in the Position data when displaying position as UTM.
3. Select which **zone options** you want to use. If you select Manual:
 - a. Type the value for the zone you want to use.
 - b. Type the zone offset for this zone, range 1 to 60.
4. Select **Apply** to save the settings.

Related references

[Operator software configuration - UTM page](#), page 237

Selecting the Seapath Operator software data source

You can select the data source which the operator software receives its data from.

Context

The operator software will automatically detect the default IP address for the Sensor Unit. If you want to receive data from another unit, you can select which unit from this page.

Select **Refresh** to update the list of available units. If the wanted data source is not displayed in the list, you can check the network connections and that all equipment is switched on.

The screenshot shows a software window titled 'Data source'. It has two tabs: 'Connection' and 'Data source'. The 'Connection' tab is active, showing fields for 'Network interface' (set to 'Local Area Connection'), 'IP Address' (set to '239.255.0.130'), and 'IP Port' (set to '31000'). There is a 'List servers' button next to the IP Port field. Below these fields is a table with columns 'Source IP address', 'Type', and 'Description'. The table contains one entry: 'Seapath 134' under 'Source IP address' and 'Unit #1' under 'Description'. At the bottom of the window are 'Apply', 'OK', and 'Cancel' buttons.

Procedure

1. Select the **System** menu > **Operator SW** > **Data Source**.
2. Select the wanted data source from the list.
3. Select **Apply** to save the settings.

Related references

[Operator software configuration - Data source page](#), page 238

Selecting reception of alarm messages

You can define how to receive alarm messages.

Prerequisites

UDP Broadcast is the default (and recommended) setting. Defining a multicast address for alarm message distribution requires advanced network configuration skills.

Context



Procedure

1. Select the **System** menu > **Operator SW** > **Alarms**.
2. Select the wanted connection type: **UDP Multicast** or **UDP Broadcast**.
3. Select **Apply** to save the settings.

Related references

[Operator software configuration - Alarms page](#), page 239

Verifying that the Seapath 130 system is ready for operational use

When the Seapath system configuration is completed, you must verify that the system is operational.

Context

Observe these steps Seapath to make sure that the system is ready for operation.

Procedure

1. Make sure that all cables are properly connected.
2. Make sure that the Inertial Measurement Unit (IMU) cable is connected to connector A on the subsea bottle.
3. Make sure that the power supply is correct.
The system operates on 24 VDC power.

4. Make sure that the Seapath operator software has been installed on an external computer.

Related tasks

[Installing the Seapath operator software](#), page 41

[Applying power to the Seapath system](#), page 93

Creating a backup of the configuration and software installation

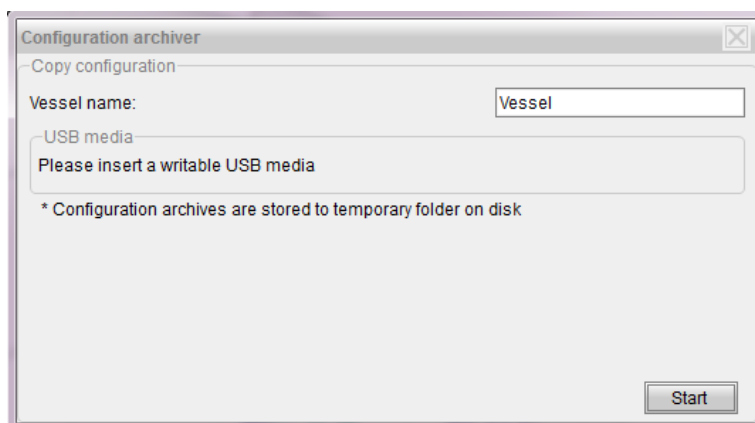
If you have a complex configuration setup in your system, it can be useful to make a copy of this configuration in case you should need it later. The **Copy Configuration** tool will copy the system configuration to a disk based archive file or to a USB flash drive.

Context

Note: _____



This procedure will only copy the configuration setup and not a full image of the installed system.



Note: _____



If a USB flash drive is not inserted, the archive will be stored in a temporary location on the local disk. In this case, the archive will only be available for restore until the next reboot.

Procedure

1. Insert a USB flash drive into a USB port on the computer with the Seapath operator software installed.

2. Select the **Tools** menu > **Copy Configuration**.
3. The configured vessel name is automatically entered into the **Vessel name** box but you can change this if you want.
4. Select **Start** to copy the configuration files to the USB flash drive.
The copied configuration will be stored as a compressed archive (ZIP file) under the **ConfigBackup** folder in the root of the USB flash drive.

Result

You can use the USB flash drive with the copied configuration to restore the system configuration at a later date.

Restoring the configuration backup

If you need to restore the configuration setup to your system, you can use the USB flash drive with a copy of your configuration which you created with the **Copy Configuration** tool.

Prerequisites

A USB flash drive with the Seapath application must be available.

Context

Note: _____



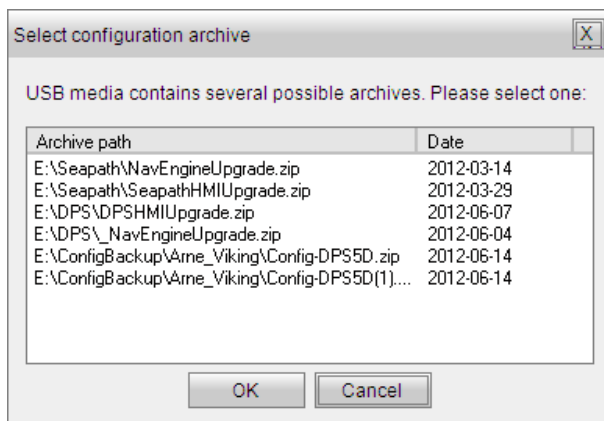
*The **Restore Configuration** tool will stop NAV Engine before restoring the configuration. NAV Engine will be restarted automatically.*

The screenshot shows the 'Configuration archiver' dialog box with the 'Restore configuration' tab selected. Under 'Information to restore', the 'NAV Engine configuration' checkbox is checked. The 'Selected configuration archive' section shows 'No archive selected' with a 'Select...' button. Below this is a table comparing installed and archive versions of the product, NAV Engine, and Operator SW. At the bottom, the 'USB media' section shows 'USB media (F:\ (KINGSTON)). Free size: 57098 MB'.

	Installed	Archive
Product	1.3.1-alpha30055	-
Product version	1.3.1-alpha30055	-
NAV Engine version	4.27.0-alpha01	-
Operator SW version	8.9.8-alpha01+20220-	5.14

Procedure

1. Insert a USB flash drive into a USB on the computer with the Seapath operator software installed.
2. Select the **System** menu > **Change system mode** > **Engineering**.
3. Type the password: **stx**. The password is not case sensitive.
4. Select the **Tools** menu > **Restore configuration**.
5. Select **NAV Engine configuration**.
6. Select **Select...**
7. Select the wanted configuration archive from the list. Select **OK**.



8. Select at least one option under **Information to restore** in the **Configuration archiver** dialog box. This will enable the **Restore** button.
9. Select **Restore** to restore the wanted configuration.

Drawings

Topics

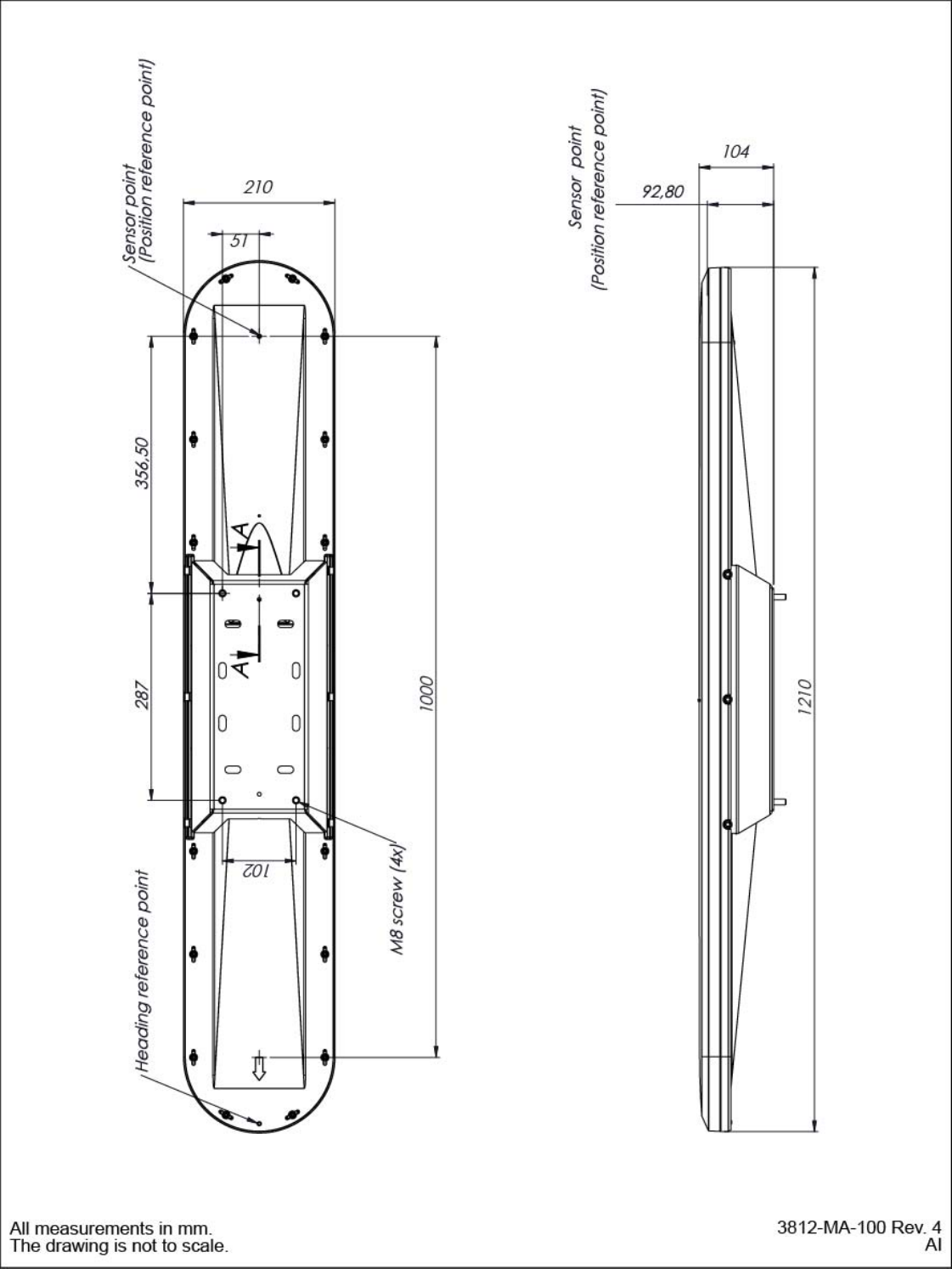
[Sensor Unit dimensions, page 156](#)

[MRU subsea bottle SB12 dimensions, page 157](#)

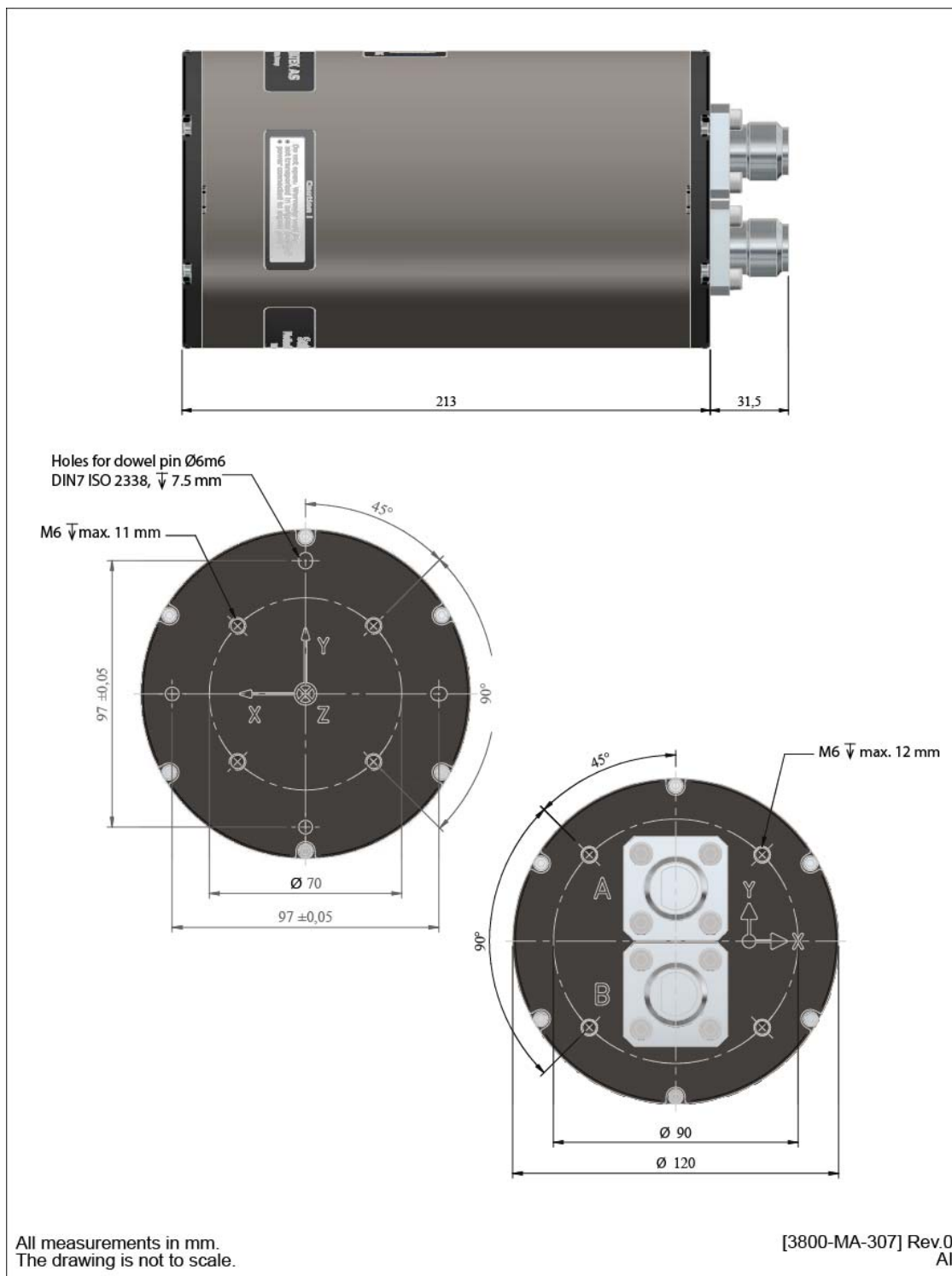
[MGC subsea bottle SB50 dimensions, page 158](#)

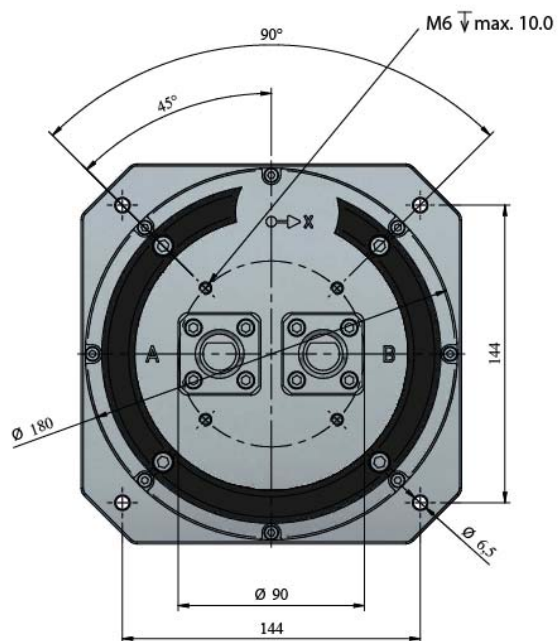
[miniMRU subsea housing SH1 dimensions, page 160](#)

Sensor Unit dimensions



MRU subsea bottle SB12 dimensions

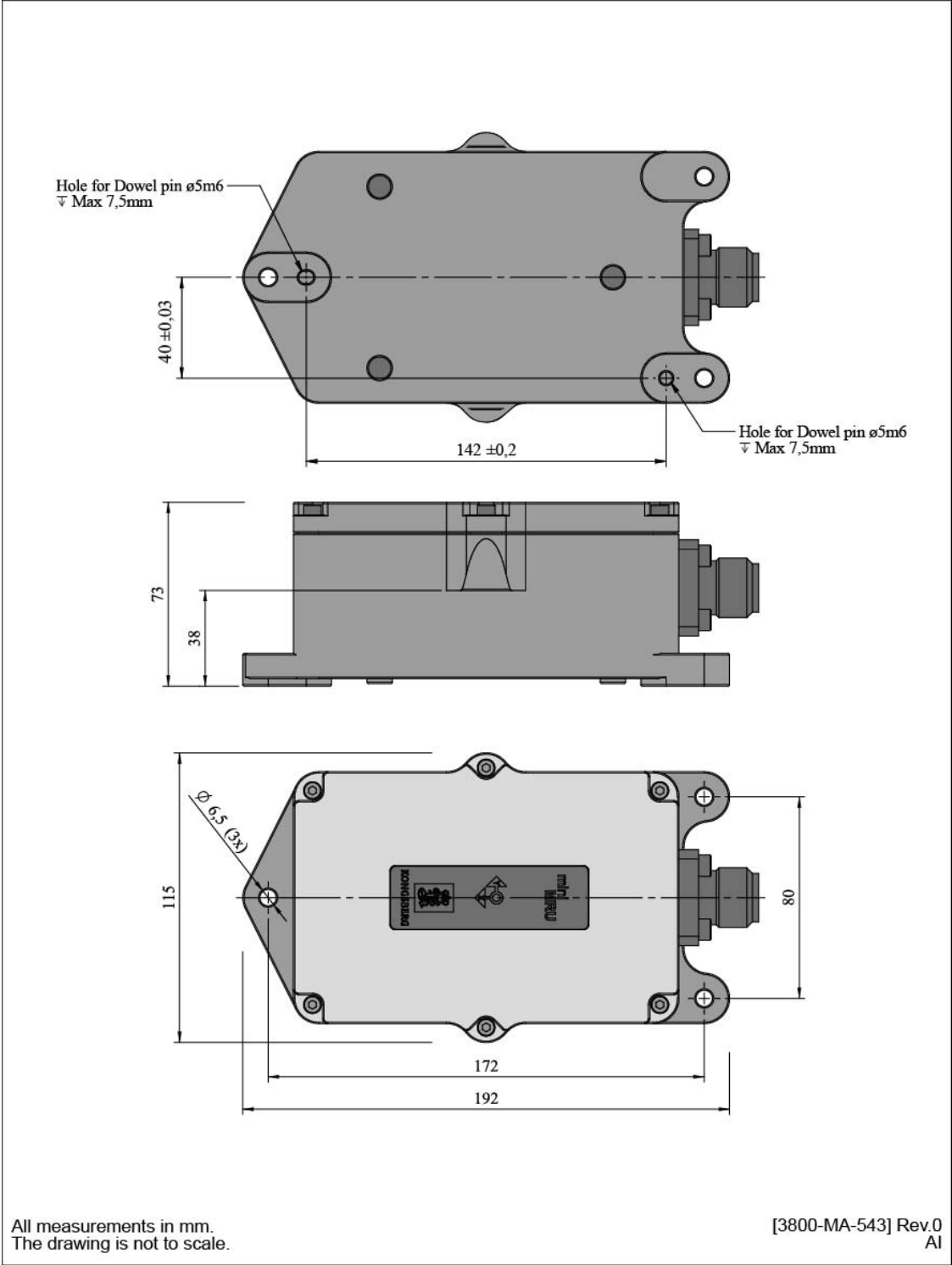




All measurements in mm.
The drawing is not to scale.

[3800-MA-507] Rev.2
AI

miniMRU subsea housing SH1 dimensions



Technical specifications

Topics

- [Weights and outline dimensions, page 161](#)
- [Power specifications, page 163](#)
- [Environmental specifications, page 163](#)
- [Interface specifications, page 165](#)
- [Performance specifications - MRU and miniMRU, page 165](#)
- [Performance specifications - MGC, page 167](#)
- [Data output specifications, page 168](#)
- [Data input specifications, page 168](#)
- [Datum specifications, page 169](#)
- [Cable specifications, page 169](#)
- [Manufacturer's conformity declaration, page 170](#)
- [NMEA telegram output options, page 171](#)

Weights and outline dimensions

Sensor Unit

- **Outline dimensions:**
 - **Length:** 1210 mm
 - **Width:** 210 mm
 - **Height:** 94 mm
- **Weight:** 7.7 kg, incl. 1 m cable

MRU subsea bottle

- **Type:** MRU-M-SB12
- **Outline dimensions:**
 - **Height:** 209 mm, 240.5 mm incl. connectors
 - **Diameter:** 120 mm
- **Weight:**
 - **Dry weight:** 3.7 kg, incl. MRU
 - **Submerged weight:** 1.3 kg, incl. MRU
- **Depth:** 10 m
- **Connectors:** 2 x 8-pin Seacon

MGC subsea bottle

- **Type:** MGC-S-R2/R3-SB50
- **Outline dimensions:**
 - **Length:** 184 mm
 - **Width:** 184 mm
 - **Height:** 275 mm
- **Weight:**
 - **Dry weight:** 10.5 kg, incl. MGC
 - **Submerged weight:** 5.5 kg, incl. MGC
- **Connectors:** 2 x 8-pin Seacon, 5506-1508 (male)

miniMRU subsea housing

- **Type:** miniMRU-M-SH1
- **Outline dimensions:**
 - **Length:** 192 mm
 - **Width:** 115 mm
 - **Height:** 73 mm
- **Weight:**
 - **Dry weight:** 2.9 kg, incl. miniMRU
 - **Submerged weight:** 1.8 kg, incl. miniMRU
- **Depth:** 80 m
- **Connectors:** 8-pin Seacon

Power specifications

Sensor Unit

- **Voltage:** 10 - 36 VDC
- **Voltage, recommended:** 24 VDC
- **Power consumption:** 10 W (max), typical 8 W

MRU subsea bottle

- **Voltage:** 10 - 36 VDC
- **Voltage, recommended:** 24 VDC
- **Power consumption MRU 5, MRU 5+, MRU H:** 12 W (max) , typical 8 W
- **Power consumption MRU 3:** 5 W (max)

MGC subsea bottle

- **Voltage:** 18 - 32 VDC
- **Voltage, recommended:** 24 VDC
- **Power consumption:** 12 W (max) , typical 11 W

miniMRU subsea housing

- **Voltage:** 10 - 36 VDC
- **Voltage, recommended:** 24 VDC
- **Power consumption:** 6 W (max)

Environmental specifications

Sensor Unit

- **Operating temperature:** -40 - 70 °C
- **Storage temperature:** -40 - 70 °C
- **Operating humidity:** Sealed, no limit
- **Storage humidity:** Sealed, no limit
- **Ingress protection:** IP56
- **Enclosure material:** Aluminium, polyurethane
- **Electromagnetic compatibility (immunity/emission):** IEC 60945/EN 60945

- **Vibration:** IEC 60945/EN 60945

MRU subsea bottle

- **Operating temperature:** -5 - 55 °C
- **Storage temperature:** -25 - 70 °C
- **Operating humidity:** Sealed, no limit
- **Storage humidity:** Sealed, no limit
- **Ingress protection:** IP68, depth rated to 10 metres
- **Enclosure material:** Anodised aluminium
- **Electromagnetic compatibility (immunity/emission):** IEC 60945/EN 60945
- **Vibration:** IEC 60945/EN 60945
- **Shock non-operational:** 1000 m/s², max (10 ms peak)
- **MTBF:** 50000 hours (computed)
- **MTBF:** 100000 hours (service history based)

MGC subsea bottle

- **Operating temperature:** -15 - 55 °C
- **Storage temperature:** -25 - 70 °C
- **Operating humidity:** Sealed, no limit
- **Storage humidity:** Sealed, no limit
- **Ingress protection:** IP68, depth rated to 50 metres
- **Enclosure material:** Titanium
- **Electromagnetic compatibility (immunity/emission):** IEC 60945/EN 60945
- **Vibration:** IEC 60945/EN 60945
- **Shock non-operational:** 1000 m/s², max (10 ms peak)
- **MTBF:** 50000 hours (computed)
- **MTBF:** 100000 hours (service history based)

miniMRU subsea housing

- **Operating temperature:** -5 - 55 °C
- **Storage temperature:** -25 - 70 °C
- **Operating humidity:** Sealed, no limit
- **Storage humidity:** Sealed, no limit

- **Ingress protection:** IP68, depth rated to 80 metres
- **Enclosure material:** Titanium
- **Electromagnetic compatibility (immunity/emission):** IEC 60945/EN 60945
- **Vibration:** IEC 60945/EN 60945
- **Shock non-operational:** 1000 m/s², max (10 ms peak)
- **MTBF:** 50000 hours (computed)
- **MTBF:** 100000 hours (service history based)

Related concepts

[Storage](#), page 242

Interface specifications

Sensor Unit

- **Output serial ports:** 3 non-dedicated isolated ports, RS-232/RS-422
- **Input serial ports:** 1 non-dedicated isolated ports, RS-232/RS-422
- **Baud rate:** Up to 115 200 bytes/sec
- **LAN:** 1 Ethernet port
- **Data output rate:** Up to 100 Hz
- **Timing accuracy:** 1 ms
- **Data delay:** All data in real-time (0 ms) plus transmission delay

Performance specifications - MRU and miniMRU

Roll, pitch and heading accuracy

- **Roll and pitch accuracy ±5° amplitude:** 0.010° RMS - Seapath 130-3/40
- **Roll and pitch accuracy ±5° amplitude:** 0.008° RMS - Seapath 130-5/60
- **Roll and pitch accuracy ±5° amplitude:** 0.005° RMS - Seapath 130-5+
- **Heading accuracy:** 0.10° RMS - Seapath 130-3/40

- **Heading accuracy:** 0.08° RMS - Seapath 130-5/60 and 5+

Heave accuracy and heave motion

- **Heave accuracy (real-time output):** 5 cm or 5 %, whichever is highest
- **Heave motion periods (real-time output):** 0 - 18 seconds - Seapath 130-3/40
- **Heave motion periods (real-time output):** 0 - 25 seconds - Seapath 130-5/60 and 5+
- **Heave accuracy (delayed signal, PFreeHeave®):** 2 cm or 2 %, whichever is highest
- **Heave motion periods (delayed signal, PFreeHeave®):** 0 - 50 seconds

Position accuracy

- **Position accuracy with DGNS:** 0.5 m RMS or 1 m 95 % CEP
- **Position accuracy with SBAS:** 0.5 m RMS or 1 m 95 % CEP
- **Position accuracy with Fugro Seastar® XP2/XP3/G2/G2+/G4/G4+:** 0.05 m RMS or 0.1 m 95 % CEP
- **Position accuracy with VERIPOS Ultra/Ultra²:** 0.05 m RMS or 0.1 m 95 % CEP
- **Position accuracy with C-NavC¹, C-NavC²:** 0.05 m RMS or 0.1 m 95 % CEP
- **Position accuracy with RTK (x and y):** 1 cm + 1 ppm RMS

The accuracy is dependent on GPS satellite geometry, environment, ionospheric conditions and distance to the reference station. Excessive multipath, GPS signal obstructions or interference may also reduce the performance.

- **Position accuracy with RTK (z):** 2 cm + 1 ppm RMS

The accuracy is dependent on GPS satellite geometry, environment, ionospheric conditions and distance to the reference station. Excessive multipath, GPS signal obstructions or interference may also reduce the performance.

Position drift, horizontal

- **Typical position drift 1 minute after GNSS dropout (RTK):** 1.6 m, Seapath 130-3/40
- **Typical position drift 1 minute after GNSS dropout (RTK):** 0.6 m, Seapath 130-5/60
- **Typical position drift 1 minute after GNSS dropout (RTK):** 0.3 m, Seapath 130-5+

Velocity accuracy

- **Velocity accuracy:** 0.03 m/s RMS or 0.07 m/s 95 % CEP

Performance specifications - MGC

Roll, pitch and heading accuracy

- Roll and pitch accuracy $\pm 5^\circ$ amplitude: 0.008° RMS - Seapath 130-R2
- Roll and pitch accuracy $\pm 5^\circ$ amplitude: 0.007° RMS - Seapath 130-R3
- Heading accuracy : 0.06° RMS - Seapath 130-R2
- Heading accuracy : 0.05° RMS - Seapath 130-R3

Heave accuracy and heave motion

- Heave accuracy (real-time output): 5 cm or 5 %, whichever is highest
- Heave motion periods (real-time output): 0 - 25 seconds
- Heave accuracy (delayed signal, PFreeHeave®: 2 cm or 2 %, whichever is highest
- Heave motion periods (delayed signal, PFreeHeave®: 0 - 50 seconds

Position accuracy

- Position accuracy with DGNSS: 0.5 m RMS or 1 m 95 % CEP
- Position accuracy with SBAS: 0.5 m RMS or 1 m 95 % CEP
- Position accuracy with Fugro Seastar® XP2/XP3/G2/G2+/G4/G4+: 0.05 m RMS or 0.1 m 95 % CEP
- Position accuracy with VERIPOS Ultra/Ultra²: 0.05 m RMS or 0.1 m 95 % CEP
- Position accuracy with C-NavC¹, C-NavC²: 0.05 m RMS or 0.1 m 95 % CEP
- Position accuracy with RTK (x and y): 1 cm + 1 ppm RMS

The accuracy is dependent on GPS satellite geometry, environment, ionospheric conditions and distance to the reference station. Excessive multipath, GPS signal obstructions or interference may also reduce the performance.

- Position accuracy with RTK (z): 2 cm + 1 ppm RMS

The accuracy is dependent on GPS satellite geometry, environment, ionospheric conditions and distance to the reference station. Excessive multipath, GPS signal obstructions or interference may also reduce the performance.

Position drift, horizontal

- Typical position drift 1 minute after GNSS dropout (RTK): 0.6 m, Seapath 130-R2
- Typical position drift 1 minute after GNSS dropout (RTK): 0.2 m, Seapath 130-R3

Velocity accuracy

- Velocity accuracy: 0.03 m/s RMS or 0.07 m/s 95 % CEP

Data output specifications

Sensor Unit

- **Message format:**
 - Simrad EM 3000
 - Seapath binary format 3, 11, 23, 26
 - Calibration format
 - Echo sounder format
 - Echo sounder format 18, TSS1
 - RD Instrument ADCP proprietary NMEA format "PRDID"
 - KM binary
 - 1 PPS time tag, NMEA ZDA message and Trimble compatible messages
 - Atlas Fansweep format
 - RTCM v3, raw GNSS output
 - PFreeHeave® format
 - IMU raw data output
 - NMEA 0183 v3.0, Proprietary
- **Message types NMEA:**
 - DTM, GBS, GGA, GGK, GLL, GNS, GRS, GSA, GST, GSV, HDT, RMC, ROT, THS VBW, VTG, PTNL, ZDA.
 - NMEA proprietary: PSXN20, PSXN21, PSXN22, PSXN23, PSXN24,.PSXN25, PSXN26, PSXN27.

Data input specifications

Sensor Unit

- **DGNSS corrections:** Seastar® XP2/XP3, Seastar® G2/G2+/G4/G4+, RTCM-SC104 v. 2.2, 2.3, 3.0 and 3.2, VERIPOS Ultra/Ultra², C-NavC¹, C-NavC², Trimble CMR
- **Gyro compass:** NMEA 0183 HDM, HDT, HRC, PSXN10, PSXN23, Robertson LR22 BCD format, EM3000

Datum specifications

Sensor Unit

- **Datum types:** NAD27, ED50, WGS84, MINNA, ARATU Bahia, ARATU Campos, ARATU ES, ARATU Santos, SIRGAS2000 and CAMACUPA.

These datum types can only be selected if the corrections input to the product are in WGS84. Or if no corrections are input.

Cable specifications

Sensor Unit cable

- **Type:** Heavy duty screened, 14 x 2 x 0.25 mm²
- **Length:** 20 m
- **Diameter:** 13.5 mm
- **Weight:** 0.27 kg/m
- **Flame retardation:** IEC 60332-1
- **Insulation:** PP (conductors) and PUR (outer cover)
- **Cable screen:** Cu-braid
- **Bending radius:** 100 mm

IMU umbilical cable

- **Type:** Umbilical cable, 4 x 2 x 0.75 mm²
- **Length:** 15 or 30 m
- **Diameter:** 12.6 mm
- **Weight - in air:** 241 kg/km
- **Weight - in sea:** 112 kg/km
- **Cable screen:** Alum/braid
- **Bending radius - static/dynamic:** 150 mm (min.)

Manufacturer's conformity declaration

This product is in compliance with relevant directives and product standards.



KONGSBERG

EU DECLARATION OF CONFORMITY

Manufacturer's name: **Kongsberg Discovery AS**

Manufacturer's address: **Havnegata 9, N-7010 Trondheim, Norway**

declares that the product:

Product name: **Seapath 130 series**

Product items: **Seapath 130-3, 130-H, 130-5, 130-5+, 130-R2, 130-R3**

is in conformity with the **Radio Equipment Directive, RED, 2014/53/EU** and with reference to ETSI guide **ETSI EG 203 367**, using relevant sections of the following product standards:

Essential requirements	Standards
Health and Safety (Article 3.1(a))	EN 61010-1:2010/IEC 61010-1:2010
EMC (Article 3.1(b)) (GNSS receivers)	EN 301 489 V2.1.1 (2017-02), EN 301 489-19 (2017-03)
EMC (Article 3.1(b)) (Sensor Unit)	EN 60945:2002
Spectrum (GNSS receivers)	EN 303 413 V1.1.0

Test reference

File: *Seapath 130 series TCF*, **SPH130S-2017-1**, issued by Kongsberg Seatex AS.

RoHS

To the best of our knowledge, with reference to standard **EN IEC 63000:2018**, the product is compliant with Directive **2011/65/EU** as amended by Commission Delegated Directive **EU 2015/863**.

Supplementary information

The product was tested in its normal configuration.

Date and signature
2023-11-21



Erlend Vågsholm, Vice President R&D

110-0058553/A

NMEA telegram output options

When you set up the **TelegramOut** interface, the contents of some of the available NMEA telegrams may be modified according to options listed in the **Options** list in the NAVEngine configuration. This is for example useful when interfacing to older equipment.

This list holds a description of the various options.

Output residuals on Ashtech RRE format (GRS)

Use this option if you have enabled the GRS sentence and want the residuals output on the Ashtech RRE format instead.

Send VHW message after VTG using ground speed from VTG

Use this option when a VHW sentence is needed, and vessel heading and vessel speed relative to the water are not available. When this option is enabled, an NMEA VHW sentence is output, using SOG as Speed, and COG as heading. The VHW sentence is output immediately after the VTG sentence.

Output empty fields in NMEA HDT and NMEA THS messages also for reduced accuracy

Use this option when you want to set invalid heading (empty HDT/THS field) when heading status is reduced (low accuracy).

Use inertial roll, pitch and heave only

Use this option if you want the output of roll, pitch and heave to be calculated from IMU measurements only (no GNSS).

Use time from dataset in NMEA ZDA message

GNSS systems: Use this option if you want the time stamp in the NMEA ZDA message to be equal to the time stamp of the GNSS data set and the GGA message.

Disable additional GNS messages when diffcorr is used for both GPS and GLONASS

Use this option if you do not want additional NMEA messages if differential corrections are used for both GPS and GLONASS.

Limit correction age to 9.9 sec in GGA

Use this option if your system does not handle correction ages above 9.9 seconds in the GGA sentence. If this option is enabled, the correction age will increase and stop at 9.9 seconds even if the correct correction age is more than 9.9 seconds.

Use GNSS solution only

Integrated systems only: Use this option if you want to output position based on GNSS only (no IMU).

Set GGA quality indicator to 5 if converged high precision

Use this option if you want the Quality Indicator in the NMEA GGA sentence set to 5, when position solution is converged clock orbit or float filter (XP, G2, Ultra, Apex etc).

Freeze NMEA position if invalid

Use this option if you want the position output to use the last known valid position when the current position becomes invalid.

Use current GNSS info if only integrated position is valid

Integrated systems only: Use this option if you want to output current HDOP, number of satellites and corrections age in the GGA message though the GNSS position is invalid and the integrated position is valid.

Allow more than 12 satellites in GGA message

The NMEA standard limits the number of satellites in the GGA sentence to 12. Use this option if you want the GGA sentence to use the actual number of satellites.

Use modified quality indicator in GGA message

Use this option if you want the quality indicator in the NMEA GGA sentence to be replaced by GQI.

Use external attitude for lever arm compensation

Use this option if you want to use external attitude for lever arm compensation and velocity decomposition.

Use DQI(0-9) as GGA quality indicator

DP only: Use this option if you want to use talker DP and output DQI instead of NMEA Quality Indicator for GGA.

Send each NMEA telegram in separate UDP datagram

Use this option if TelegramOut is configured to send on UDP, and you want each NMEA telegram to be sent in a separate UDP telegram.

Use 2 decimals instead of 1 for velocity in NMEA VTG and RMC

Use this option if you want the velocity field in NMEA VTG and NMEA RMC messages to contain 2 decimals instead of the default 1.

Stop GGA, GLL, GNS and RMC output if invalid position

Use this option if you want the output of the position telegrams to stop if the position is invalid.

Telegram specifications

Topics

[NMEA DDC, page 174](#)
[NMEA DTM, page 175](#)
[NMEA GBS, page 175](#)
[NMEA GGA, page 176](#)
[NMEA GGK, page 177](#)
[NMEA GLL, page 178](#)
[NMEA GNS, page 179](#)
[NMEA GRS, page 180](#)
[NMEA GSA, page 180](#)
[NMEA GST, page 181](#)
[NMEA GSV, page 182](#)
[NMEA HDT, page 182](#)
[NMEA RMC, page 183](#)
[NMEA ROT, page 184](#)
[NMEA VBW, page 184](#)
[NMEA THS, page 185](#)
[NMEA VER, page 186](#)
[NMEA VTG, page 187](#)
[NMEA ZDA, page 187](#)
[PSXN20, page 188](#)
[PSXN21, page 189](#)
[PSXN22, page 189](#)
[PSXN23, page 190](#)
[PSXN24, page 191](#)
[Seapath Binary 26, page 191](#)

[Simrad EM 3000, page 193](#)
[KM Binary datagram format, page 195](#)
[Calibration format 7, page 197](#)
[Echo sounder format 9, page 198](#)
[Echo sounder format 18, TSS1, page 199](#)
[RDI ADCP, page 200](#)
[1PPS, NMEA ZDA format 13, page 200](#)
[1PPS, Trimble format 14, page 201](#)
[PFreeHeave, page 201](#)
[RTCM format 80, page 202](#)
[Cyclic redundancy check \(CRC\) algorithm, page 203](#)

NMEA DDC

The NMEA DDC sentence provides controls for equipment display dimming presets and a display brightness percentage.

The sentence is as specified in NMEA standard 0183, version 4.0.

Format

\$--DDC,a,xx,a,a*hh

Description

1. **a:** Display dimming preset
 - D = Day time setting
 - K = Dusk setting
 - N = Night time setting
 - O = Backlighting off setting
2. **xx:** Brightness percentage, 00 - 99
3. **a:** Colour palette
 - D = Day time setting
 - K = Dusk setting
 - N = Night time setting
 - O = Backlighting off setting
4. **a:** Sentence status flag. This shall not be a null field.

R = Status report

C = Configuration or command to change a setting

NMEA DTM

The DTM sentence contains local geodetic datum and datum offsets from a reference datum.

The sentence is as specified in NMEA standard 0183, version 3.0.

Format

```
$--DTM,ccc,a,x.x,a,x.x,a,x.x,ccc*hh
```

Description

1. **ccc**: Local datum code. Null field.
2. **a**: Local datum subdivision code
3. **x.x**: Latitude offset, minutes, North/South
4. **a**: North/South
5. **x.x**: Longitude offset, minutes, East/West
6. **a**: East/West
7. **x.x**: Altitude offset, metres, (+/—)
8. **ccc**: Reference datum code (WGS84 = W84)
9. ***hh**: Checksum

NMEA GBS

The NMEA GBS sentence is used to support RAIM (Receiver Autonomous Integrity Monitoring). It reports the integrity checks of the position quality of the position solution.

The sentence is as specified in NMEA standard 0183, version 3.0.

Format

```
$--GBS,hhmmss.ss,x.x,x.x,x.x,xx,x.x,x.x,x.x*hh
```

Description

1. **hhmmss.ss**: UTC of the GGA or GNS fix associated with this sentence. Hours, minutes and seconds.
2. **x.x**: Expected error in latitude.
3. **x.x**: Expected error in longitude.
4. **x.x**: Expected error in altitude.
5. **xx**: ID number of most likely failed satellite. GPS: 1–32, WAAS: 33–64, GLONASS: 65–96.
6. **x.x**: Probability of missed detection for most likely failed satellite.
7. **x.x**: Estimate of bias in metres on lost likely failed satellite.
8. **x.x**: Standard deviation of bias estimate.
9. ***hh**: Checksum

NMEA GGA

The NMEA GGA sentence transfers the time, position and fix related data from a global positioning system (GPS).

The sentence is as specified in NMEA standard 0183, version 3.0.

Format

```
$--  
GGA, hhmmss.ss, llll.ll, a, yyyyy.yy, a, x, xx, x.x, x.x, M, x.x, M, x.x, xxxx*hh
```

Description

1. **hhmmss.ss**: UTC of position (Hours, minutes and seconds)
- 2.
3. **llll.ll**: Latitude (Degrees, minutes and fractions of minutes)
4. **a** : Latitude sector, North/South
5. **yyyyy.yy**: Longitude (Degrees, minutes and fractions of minutes)
- 6.
7. **a** : Longitude sector,
8. **x**: GPS quality indicator. This shall not be a null field.
0 = Fix not available or invalid

- 1 = GPS/GLONASS, Fix valid
- 2 = DGPS/DGLONASS, Fix valid
- 5 = Float RTK fix
- 6 = Estimated (dead reckoning) Mode
- 9. **xx**: Number of satellites in use, 00 - 12
- 10. **x.x**: Horizontal dilution of precision (HDOP)
- 11. **x.x**: Altitude, ref: mean-sea level (geoid)
- 12. **M**: Altitude unit, M = Metres
- 13. **x.x**: Geoidal separation
The difference between the WGS-84 earth ellipsoid surface and mean-sea-level (geoid) surface.
- 14. **M**: Geoidal separation unit, M = Metres
- 15. **x.x**: Age of differential GPS data
Time i seconds. Null field if DGPS is not used.
- 16. **xxxx**: Differential reference station ID, 0000 - 1023
- 17. ***hh**: Checksum

NMEA GPK

The NMEA GPK datagram is used to decode the PTNL, Time, Position, Type and DOP (Dilution of Precision) string of the NMEA 0183 output.

The sentence is as specified in NMEA standard 0183, version 3.0.

Format

```
$--  
GPK,hhmmss.ss,ddmmyy,nnnnn.nnnnnnnn,a,yyyyy.yyyyyyyy,a,x,zz,w.w,EHTe  
eeee,u*hh<CR><LF>
```

Description

- 1. **hhmmss.ss**: Coordinated Universal Time (UTC) of the current position
- 2. **ddmmyy**: Day, month and year
- 3. **nnnnn.nnnnnnnn**: Latitude, Degrees, minutes and hundredths
- 4. **a**: Direction of latitude

- **N** = North
 - **S** = South
5. **yyyyy.yyyyyyy**: Longitude, Degrees, minutes and hundredths
 6. **a**: Direction of longitude
 - **E** = East
 - **W** = West
 7. **x**: Quality indicator for the GPS (Global Positioning System) (Refer to the NMEA standard for further information about the GPS quality indicator.)
 8. **zz**: Number of satellites in use
 9. **w.w**: PDOP (Position dilution of precision)
 10. **EHTeeteeeee**: Ellipsoidal height of fix
 11. **u**: Unit of height measurement
 12. ***hh**: Checksum

NMEA GLL

The NMEA GLL sentence transfers the latitude and longitude of vessel position, the time of the position fix and the current status from a global positioning system (GPS).

The sentence is as specified in NMEA standard 0183, version 3.0.

Format

```
$--GLL,l111.l1,a,yyyyy.yy,a,hmmss.ss,A,a*hh
```

Description

1. **lll.l**: Latitude (Degrees, minutes and fractions of minutes)
2. **a** : Latitude sector,
3. **yyyyy.yy**: Longitude (Degrees, minutes and fractions of minutes)
4. **a** : Longitude sector,
5. **hmmss.ss**: UTC of position (Hours, minutes and seconds)
6. **A**: Status
 - A = The data are valid.
 - V = The data are not valid.

7. **a**: Mode indicator
A = Autonomous
D = Differential
N = The data are not valid.
8. ***hh**: Checksum

NMEA GNS

This sentence provides position fix data for GPS, GLONASS, possible future satellite systems and systems combining these.

The sentence is as specified in NMEA standard 0183, version 3.0.

Format

```
$--GNS,hhmmss.ss,llll.ll,a,yyyy.yy,a,c--c,xx,x.x,x.x,x.x,x.x,x.x*hh
```

Description

1. **hhmmss.ss**: UTC of position (Hours, minutes and seconds)
2. **llll.ll**: Latitude
3. **a**: North/South
4. **yyyy.yy**: Longitude
5. **a**: Longitude/West
6. **c--c**: Mode indicator. The first character indicates the use of GPS/GLONASS satellites.
N = No fix
A = Autonomous mode
D = Differential mode
7. **xx**: Number of satellites in use, 00 – 99
8. **x.x**: HDOP
9. **x.x**: Antenna altitude, Metres, Ref: mean-sea level (geoid)
10. **x.x**: Geoidal separation, Metres, Difference between the earth ellipsoid and mean-sea level
11. **x.x**: Age of differential data

12. **x.x**: Differential reference station ID
13. ***hh**: Checksum

NMEA GRS

This message is used to support Receiver Autonomous Integrity Monitoring (RAIM). It reports the range residuals in the position solution.

The sentence is as specified in NMEA standard 0183, version 3.0.

Format

```
$--  
GRS,hhmmss.ss,x,x.x,x.x,x.x,x.x,x.x,x.x,x.x,x.x,x.x,x.x,x.x,x.x*hh
```

Description

1. **hhmmss.ss**: UTC time of the GGA or GNS fix associated with this sentence (Hours, minutes and seconds)
2. **x**: Mode indicator, 1 or 0
3. **x.x x.x**: Range residuals in metres for satellites used in the navigation solution. Order must match order of the satellite ID numbers in GSA. When GRS is used, GSA and GSV are generally required.
4. ***hh**: Checksum

NMEA GSA

The NMEA GSA sentence transfers the satellites used in the navigation solution and the dilution of precision (DOP) values.

The sentence is as specified in NMEA standard 0183, version 3.0.

Format

```
$-GSA,a,x,xx,xx,xx,xx,xx,xx,xx,xx,xx,xx,xx,x.x,x.x,x.x*hh
```

Description

1. **a**: Mode
M = Manual
A = Automatic

2. **x**: Mode
 - 1 = Fix not available
 - 2 = 2D
 - 3 = 3D
3. **xx**: Identification numbers for satellites used in solution
 - Satellite numbers 1 - 32 for GPS satellites
 - Satellite numbers 33 - 64 for WAAS satellites
 - Satellite numbers 65 - 96 for GLONASS satellites
4. **x.x**: PDOP(Position dilution of precision)
5. **x.x**: HDOP(Horizontal dilution of precision)
6. **x.x**: VDOP(Vertical dilution of precision)
7. ***hh**: Checksum

NMEA GST

The NMEA GST sentence transfers pseudo-range error statistics.

The sentence is as specified in NMEA standard 0183, version 3.0.

Format

```
$--GST,hhmmss.ss,x.x,x.x,x.x,x.x,x.x,x.x,x.x*hh
```

Description

1. **hhmmss.ss**: UTC of position (Hours, minutes and seconds)
2. **x.x**: RMS value of the standard deviation of the range inputs to the navigation process
3. **x.x**: Standard deviation of semi-major axis of error ellipse (Metres)
4. **x.x**: Standard deviation of semi-minor axis of error ellipse (Metres)
5. **x.x**: Orientation of semi-major axis of error ellipse (Degrees from true north)
6. **x.x**: Standard deviation of latitude error (Metres)
7. **x.x**: Standard deviation of longitude error (Metres)
8. **x.x**: Standard deviation of altitude error (Metres)

9. ***hh**: Checksum

NMEA GSV

The NMEA GSV sentence transfers the number of satellites in view (SV), satellite identification numbers, elevation, azimuth and signal–noise ratio (SNR) value. Four satellites maximum per transmission. Additional satellite data sent in second or third message.

The sentence is as specified in NMEA standard 0183, version 3.0.

Format

`$--GSV,x,x,xx,xx,xx,xxx,xx, . . . . . ,xx,xx,xxx,xx*hh`

Description

1. **x**: Total number of messages, 1 - 9
2. **x**: Message number, 1 - 9
3. **xx**: Total number of satellites in view
4. **xx**: Satellite identification number
 Satellite numbers 1 - 32 for GPS satellites
 Satellite numbers 33 - 64 for WAAS satellites
 Satellite numbers 65 - 96 for GLONASS satellites
5. **xx**: Elevation in degrees, 90° maximum
6. **xxx**: Azimuth in degrees, True, 000 - 359
7. **xx**: SNR, 00 - 99 dB-Hz, null when not tracking
8. **.....,xx,xx,xxx,xx**: A variable number of “Satellite identification number, Elevation, Azimuth, SNR” sets, maximum four sets per message.
9. ***hh**: Checksum

NMEA HDT

The NMEA HDT sentence contains the actual vessel heading in degrees true produced by any device or system producing true heading.

Note: _____



This is a deprecated sentence which has been replaced by THS.

Format

```
$--HDT,x.x,T*hh<CR><LF>
```

Description

1. **x.x**: Heading, degrees true.
2. **T**: Heading, degrees true.
3. ***hh**: Checksum

NMEA RMC

The NMEA RMC datagram transfers the time, date, position, course and speed data from a global navigation satellite system (GNSS) receiver.

Format

```
$-RMC,hhmmss.ss,A,llll.ll,a,yyyy.yy,a,x.x,x.x,xxxxxx,x.x,a,a*hh
```

Description

1. **hhmmss.ss**:
2. Coordinated Universal Time (UTC) of the current position **A**: Status
A = The data are valid.
V = Navigation receiver warning.
3. **llll.ll,a**: Latitude North/South
4. **yyyy.yy,a**: Longitude East/West
5. **x.x**: Speed over ground (knots)
6. **x.x**: Course over ground (Degrees (True))
7. **xxxxxx**: Date: ddmmyy
8. **x.x,a**: Magnetic variation, East/West (Degrees)
E = Easterly variation, subtracts from True course
W = Westerly variation, adds to True course

9. **a:**

Mode indicator A = Autonomous mode

D = Differential mode

E = Estimated (dead reckoning) mode

M = Mode indicator mode

S = Simulator mode

N = The data are not valid.

10. ***hh:** Checksum

NMEA ROT

The NMEA ROT sentence contains rate of turn and direction of turn information.

Format

```
$--ROT,x.x,A*hh<CR><LF>
```

Description

1. **x.x:** Rate of turn, °/min, "-" = bow turns to port.
2. **A:** Status.
A = Data valid.
V = Data invalid.
3. ***hh:** Checksum

NMEA VBW

The NMEA VBW datagram contains water- and ground-referenced vessel speed data.

Format

```
$--VBW,x.x,x.x,A,x.x,x.x,A,x.x,A,x.x,A*hh<CR><LF>
```

Description

1. **x.x:** Speed relative to water (knots)

2. **x.x**: Speed relative to water (knots)
3. **A**: Status, Speed relative to water,
A = The data are valid.
4. **x.x**: Speed relative to ground, Longitudinal (knots)
5. **x.x**: Speed relative to ground, Transverse (knots)
6. **A**: Status, Speed relative to ground
A = The data are valid.
7. **x.x**: Speed relative to water, Stern, Transverse (knots)
8. **A**: Status, Speed relative to water, Stern
A = The data are valid.
9. **x.x**: Stern, Transverse (knots)
10. **A**: Status, Speed relative to ground, Stern
A = The data are valid.
V = The data are not valid.
11. ***hh**: Checksum

Note: _____



Transverse speed: " – " = port. Longitudinal speed: " – " = astern.

NMEA THS

The NMEA THS sentence contains the actual vessel heading in degrees true produced by any device or system producing true heading.

This sentence includes a "mode indicator" field providing critical safety related information about the heading data.

Note: _____



This sentence replaces the HDT sentence.

Format

<code>\$--THS,x.x,a*hh<CR><LF></code>

Description

1. **x.x**: Heading, degrees true.
2. **T**: Mode indicator. This field should not be null.
 A = Autonomous
 E = Estimated (dead reckoning)
 M = Manual input
 S = Simulator mode
 V = Data not valid (including standby)
3. ***hh**: Checksum

NMEA VER

The NMEA VER sentence provides identification and version information about a device. This sentence is produced as a reply to a query sentence.

The sentence is as specified in NMEA standard 0183, version 4.0.

Format

\$--VER,x,x,aa,c--c,c--c,c--c,c--c,c--c,x*hh

Description

1. **x**: Total number of sentences needed, 1 - 9
2. **x**: Sentence number, 1 - 9
3. **aa**: Device type
4. **c--c**: Vendor identification
5. **c--c**: Unique identifier. Max 15 characters.
6. **c--c**: Manufacturer serial number. Max. 32 characters.
7. **c--c**: Model code (product code). Max. 32 characters.
8. **c--c**: Software revision. Max. 32 characters.
9. **c--c**: Hardware revision. Max. 32 characters.
10. **x**: Sequential message identifier. Message identification number from 0 - 9.
11. ***hh**
 : Checksum

NMEA VTG

The NMEA VTG sentence transfers the actual course and speed relative to the ground.

The sentence is as specified in NMEA standard 0183, version 3.0.

Format

```
$--VTG,x.x,T,x.x,M,x.x,N,x.x,K,a*hh
```

Description

1. **x.x**: Course over ground, Degrees (True)
2. **T**: Course over ground, marker
3. **x.x**: Course over ground, Degrees (Magnetic)
4. **M**: Course over ground, marker
5. **x.x**: Speed over ground, knots
6. **N**: Speed over ground, knots
7. **x.x**: Speed over ground, km/h
8. **K**: Speed over ground, km/h
9. **a**: Mode indicator. This shall not be a null field.
 A = Autonomous
 D = Differential
 N = The data are not valid.
10. ***hh**: Checksum

NMEA ZDA

The NMEA ZDA sentence contains the universal time code (UTC), day, month, year and local time zone.

The sentence is as specified in NMEA standard 0183, version 3.0.

Format

```
$--ZDA,hhmmss.ss,xx,xx,xxxx,xx,xx*hh
```

Description

1. **hhmmss.ss**: UTC of position (Hours, minutes and seconds)
2. **xx**: Day UTC, 01 - 31
3. **xx**: Month UTC, 01 - 12
4. **xxxx**: Year UTC
5. **xx**: Local time zone, 00 - ± 13 hrs
6. **xx**: Local time zone, minutes, 00 – +59
7. ***hh**: Checksum

PSXN20

The proprietary PSXN20 NMEA sentence contains quality indicators for roll, pitch, heading and position.

The sentence destination is positioning reference systems.

The sentence is based on NMEA sentence format.

Format

<code>\$PSXN,20,x,x,x,x*hh<CR><LF></code>

Description

1. **\$**: Start character.
2. **PSXN**: Seatex ID.
3. **Message number**: 20.
4. **x**: horiz-qual - Horizontal position and velocity quality.
0 = Normal
1 = Reduced performance
2 = Invalid data
5. **x**: hgt-qual - Height and vertical velocity quality.
0 = Normal
1 = Reduced performance
2 = Invalid data
6. **x**: head-qual - Heading quality.

- 0 = Normal
- 1 = Reduced performance
- 2 = Invalid data
- 7. **x**: rp-qual - Roll and pitch quality.
 - 0 = Normal
 - 1 = Reduced performance
 - 2 = Invalid data
- 8. ***hh**: Checksum.
- 9. **<CR><LF>**: End of sentence.

PSXN21

The proprietary PSXN21 NMEA sentence contains system restart status.

The sentence is based on NMEA sentence format.

Format

```
$PSXN,21,x*hh<CR><LF>
```

Description

1. **\$**: Start character.
2. **PSXN**: Seatex ID.
3. **Message number**: 21.
4. **x**: Event code.
 - 1 = System restart
5. ***hh**: Checksum.
6. **<CR><LF>**: End of sentence.

PSXN22

The proprietary PSXN22 NMEA sentence contains calibration values for input gyro compass.

The sentence destination is positioning reference systems.

The sentence is based on NMEA sentence format.

Format

```
$PSXN,22,d.dd,d.dd*hh<CR><LF>
```

Description

1. **\$**: Start character.
2. **PSXN**: Seatex ID.
3. **Message number**: 22.
4. **d.dd**: gyro-calib - Gyro calibration value since system start-up in degrees.
5. **d.dd**: gyro-offs - Short-term gyro offset in degrees.
6. ***hh**: Checksum.
7. **<CR><LF>**: End of sentence.

PSXN23

The proprietary PSXN23 NMEA sentence contains attitude and heave data calculated in the Seapath system.

The sentence destination is PRS monitoring systems.

The sentence is based on NMEA sentence format.

Format

```
$PSXN,23,x.x,x.x,x.x,x.x*hh<CR><LF>
```

Description

1. **\$**: Start character.
2. **PSXN**: Seatex ID.
3. **Message number**: 23
4. **x.x**: Roll in degrees. Positive with port side up.
5. **x.x**: Pitch in degrees. Positive with bow up.
6. **x.x**: Heading, degrees true.
7. **x.x**: Heave [m]. Positive down.

8. ***hh**: Checksum (delimiter and field).
9. **<CR><LF>**: End of sentence.

PSXN24

The proprietary PSXN43 NMEA sentence contains angular and vertical velocities calculated in the Seapath system.

The sentence destination is PRS monitoring systems.

The sentence is based on NMEA sentence format.

Format

`$PSXN,24,x.x,x.x,x.x,x.x*hh<CR><LF>`

Description

1. **\$**: Start character.
2. **PSXN**: Seatex ID.
3. **Message number**: 24
4. **x.x**: Roll rate in degrees per second. Positive with port side up.
5. **x.x**: Pitch rate in degrees per second. Positive with bow up.
6. **x.x**: Yaw rate in degrees per second. Positive clockwise.
7. **x.x**: Vertical velocity [m/s]. Positive down.
8. ***hh**: Checksum (delimiter and field).
9. **<CR><LF>**: End of sentence.

Seapath Binary 26

This binary format consists of a fixed-length message using 1, 2 and 4-byte signal and unsigned integers. The signed integers are represented as two-complement numbers. For the multi-byte elements, the most significant byte is transmitted first. The total number of bytes is 52.

Format

Element	Scaling	Format	Bytes	Value
Header		Unsigned	1	AA Hex
Header		Unsigned	1	53 Hex
Time, seconds	seconds	Integer	4	
Time, fraction of second	0.0001 second	Unsigned	2	0 - 9999
Latitude	$2^{30} = 90$ degrees	Integer	4	$-2^{30} - 2^{30}$
Longitude	$2^{30} = 90$ degrees	Integer	4	$-2^{31} - 2^{31}$
Height	centimetres	Integer	4	
Heave real-time	centimetres	Integer	2	
North velocity	centimetres/ second	Integer	2	
East velocity	centimetres/ second	Integer	2	
Down velocity	centimetres/ second	Integer	2	
Roll	$2^{14} = 90$ degrees	Integer	2	$-2^{15} - 2^{15}$
Pitch	$2^{14} = 90$ degrees	Integer	2	$-2^{15} - 2^{15}$
Heading	$2^{14} = 90$ degrees	Unsigned	2	0 - 2^{16}
Roll rate	$2^{14} = 90$ degrees/ second	Integer	2	$-2^{15} - 2^{15}$
Pitch rate	$2^{14} = 90$ degrees/ second	Integer	2	$-2^{15} - 2^{15}$
Yaw rate	$2^{14} = 90$ degrees/ second	Integer	2	$-2^{15} - 2^{15}$
Delayed heave time, seconds	seconds	Integer	4	
Delayed heave time, fraction of second	0.0001 second	Unsigned	2	0 - 9999
Heave, delayed	centimetres	Integer	2	
Status word		Bit-fields	2	
Checksum		Unsigned	2	

Description

Checksum is calculated as a 16-bit Block Cyclic Redundancy Check of all bytes between, but not including the Header and Checksum fields. The CRC algorithm is described in

a separate section. Time is divided in an integer seconds part and a fractional second part. The integer seconds part of time is counted from 1970-01-01 UTC time, ignoring leap seconds.

Latitude is positive north of the Equator. Longitude is positive east of Greenwich. Height is above the ellipsoid. Heave is positive down. Roll is positive with port side up. Pitch is positive with bow up.

The status word consists of 16 single bit flags numbered from 0 to 15, where 0 is the least significant bit.

A 1 value (true) means:

Bit no.	Interpretation
0	Reduced horizontal position and velocity performance
1	Invalid horizontal position and velocity data
2	Reduced heave and vertical velocity performance
3	Invalid heave and vertical velocity data
4	Reduced roll and pitch performance
5	Invalid roll and pitch data
6	Reduced heading performance
7	Invalid heading data
8	Invalid delayed heave data

The remaining bits in the status word are reserved for future expansion.

Simrad EM 3000

The Simrad EM 3000 is a proprietary datagram format created by Simrad for use with digital motion sensors. It holds roll, pitch, heave and heading information. The datagram contains a 10-byte message.

Format

Data description	Example	Format	Valid range
Sync byte 1 / Sensor status [1]	90h to Afh = sensor status	1U	00h, 90h to Afh
Sync byte 2	Always 90h	1U	144
Roll LSB [2]		1U	
Roll MSB [2]		1U	

Data description	Example	Format	Valid range
Pitch LSB [2]		1U	
Pitch MSB [2]		1U	
Heave LSB [2]		1U	
Heave MSB [2]		1U	
Heading LSB [2]		1U	
Heading MSB [2]		1U	

Description

LSB = least significant byte

MSB = most significant byte.

1. Sync byte 1 / Sensor status

- **00h**: This value is sync byte 1.
- **90h**: This value indicates valid measurements with full accuracy.
- Any value from **91h** to **99h** indicates valid data with reduced accuracy (decreasing accuracy with increasing number).
- Any value from **9Ah** to **9Fh** indicates non-valid data but normal operation (for example configuration or calibration mode).
- Any value from **A0h** to **AFh** indicates a sensor error status.

2. All data are in 2's complement binary.

Resolution is 0.01 degrees for roll, pitch and heading, and 1 cm for heave.

- Roll is positive with port side up with valid range ± 179.99 degrees.
- Pitch is positive with bow up with valid range ± 179.99 degrees.
- Heave is positive up with valid range ± 9.99 m.
- Heading is positive clockwise with valid range 0 to 359.99 degrees.

If a value is outside the valid range, it is assumed to be non-valid, and rejected.

Note:



Heave is logged as positive downwards (the sign is changed) including roll and pitch induced lever arm translation to the transmit transducer.

You can define how roll is assumed to be measured, either with respect to the horizontal plane (the *Hippy 120* or *TSS* convention), or to the plane tilted by the given pitch angle (i.e. as a rotation angle around the pitch tilted forward pointing x-axis).

The latter convention (called *Tate-Bryant* in the POS/MVdocumentation) is used inside the system in all data displays and in the logged data. A transformation is applied if the roll is given with respect to the horizontal.

Note: _____

 *This format was originally designed for use with the early multibeam echo sounders manufactured by Kongsberg Discovery. In the original version of the format (Simrad EM 1000), the first synchronisation byte was always assumed to be zero. The sensor manufacturers were then requested to include sensor status in the format using the first synchronisation byte for this purpose.*

KM Binary datagram format

KM Binary is a proprietary datagram format created by Kongsberg Discovery for general use.

Format

Data description	Unit of measurement	Format	No. of bytes
Start ID	#KMB	char	4U
Datagram length		uint16	2U
Datagram version (=1)		uint16	2U
UTC seconds	s	uint32	4U
UTC nanoseconds	ns	uint32	4U
Status		uint32	4U
Latitude	deg	double	8F
Longitude	deg	double	8F
Ellipsoid height	m	float	4F
Roll	deg	float	4F
Pitch	deg	float	4F
Heading	deg	float	4F
Heave	m	float	4F
Roll rate	deg/s	float	4F
Pitch rate	deg/s	float	4F
Yaw rate	deg/s	float	4F
North velocity	m/s	float	4F

Data description	Unit of measurement	Format	No. of bytes
East velocity	m/s	float	4F
Down velocity	m/s	float	4F
Latitude error	m	float	4F
Longitude error	m	float	4F
Height error	m	float	4F
Roll error	deg	float	4F
Pitch error	deg	float	4F
Heading error	deg	float	4F
Heave error	m	float	4F
North acceleration	m/s ²	float	4F
East acceleration	m/s ²	float	4F
Down acceleration	m/s ²	float	4F
Delayed heave:			
UTC seconds	s	uint32	4U
UTC nanosecond	ns	uint32	4U
Delayed heave	m	float	4F

Description

Data format	Little endian (the least significant byte is transmitted first). Float is according to IEEE - 754.
Datagram length	The total number of bytes in the datagram
Datagram version	The version is incremented if the datagram format is changed.
Timestamp format	Epoch 1970-01-01 UTC time
Position and height	At user-defined sensor reference point. Position in decimal degrees. - Latitude: Negative on Southern hemisphere - Longitude: Negative on Western hemisphere - Height: Positive above ellipsoid
Positive roll	Port side up
Positive pitch	Bow up
Positive heave	Downwards, at user-defined sensor reference point
	True north
Error fields	Sensor data quality: RMS-1= not implemented

Status

One bit per status info, 1= active

Bit	
	Invalid data:
0	Horizontal position and velocity
1	Roll and pitch
2	
3	Heave and vertical velocity
4	Acceleration
5	Delayed heave
Reduced performance:	
16	Horizontal position and velocity
17	Roll and pitch
18	
19	Heave and vertical velocity
20	Acceleration
21	Delayed heave

Calibration format 7

The Calibration format 7 is used when calibrating the GNSS antenna installation. The format is a columnar ASCII text format.

Format

Element	Columns	Scaling	Decimals	Value
Time	1 - 7	seconds	1	0.0 - 86399.9
Heading	10 - 15	degrees	2	0.00 - 359.99
Gyro heading	18 - 23	degrees	2	0.00 - 359.99
Baseline	26 - 31	metres	3	
Height	34 - 38	metres	2	
Term	39 - 40			CR-LF

Description

Each record consists of numbers on ASCII format separated by spaces and terminated by carriage return and linefeed (values 10 and 13). Leading spaces are used, so the numbers are separated by two or more spaces, and spaces may occur before the first number on the record.

Time is counted since last midnight UTC time. Heading is true heading from the GNSS phase measurement, which is not the same as the heading output on the other formats. Gyro heading is from an external gyro, 0.00 if no gyro is connected. Baseline is the slant range between the antenna centres from the GNSS phase measurement. Height is the height difference between the antennas from the GNSS phase measurement. Height is positive if antenna 1 is above antenna 2.

The data are intended for calibration of the antenna installation, so no data are output unless the GNSS phase measurements are valid.

Echo sounder format 9

The Echo sounder 9 format is used when connecting Simrad EA500 and other echo sounders. The format is a proprietary ASCII text format with fixed-length records.

Format

Element	Columns	Scaling	Format
Header	1 - 7		:000000
Heave	9 - 13	1 cm	sdddd
Warning	14		space or "?"
Roll	15 - 19	0.01 degree	sdddd
Pitch	21 - 25	0.01 degree	sdddd
Term	26 - 27		CR-LF

Description

Heave is positive up. Roll is positive with the port side up.

Pitch is positive with the bow up. The zeroes in the header occupy the columns used for acceleration when this format is output from other systems. Seapath does not output acceleration.

"s" is the sign character, space if positive and "-" if negative. "dddd" is a decimal number with leading zeroes where appropriate.

The warning character is space if data are normal, "?" if data are invalid or they are of reduced quality.

Columns between elements are filled with spaces.

The definition of the attitude angles in this format is different from the Euler angles definition used elsewhere. The difference appears in the roll angle, where:

$$roll_{echo-sounder} = \arcsin[\sin(roll_{Euler}) * \cos(pitch_{Euler})]$$

Echo sounder format 18, TSS1

The Echo sounder 18, TSS1, format is used when connecting Seapath to Seabeam and other echo sounders. The format is a proprietary ASCII text format with fixed-length records.

Format

Element	Columns	Scaling	Format
Header	1 - 7		:000000
Heave	9 - 13	1 cm	sdddd
Warning	14		"F" or "f"
Roll	15 - 19	0.01 degree	sdddd
Pitch	21 - 25	0.01 degree	sdddd
Term	26 - 27		CR-LF

Description

Heave is positive up. Roll is positive with the port side up. Pitch is positive with the bow up.

The zeroes in the header occupy the columns used for acceleration when this format is output from other systems. Seapath does not output acceleration.

"s" is the sign character, space if positive and "-" if negative. "dddd" is a decimal number with leading zeroes where appropriate.

The warning character is "F" if data are normal, "f" if data are invalid or they are of reduced quality.

Columns between elements are filled with spaces.

The definition of the attitude angles in this format is different from the Euler angles definition used elsewhere. The difference appears in the roll angle, where:

$$roll_{echo-sounder} = \arcsin[\sin(roll_{Euler}) * \cos(pitch_{Euler})]$$

RDI ADCP

The RDI format is used when connecting RDI ADCP equipment. The format is a proprietary ASCII text format.

Format

```
$PRDID,sddd.dd,sddd.dd,ddd,dd,<CR><LF>
```

Description

- **sddd.dd**: pitch - Pitch, degrees. s is the sign character, "+" or "-". ddd.dd is a decimal number with leading zeroes where appropriate. Positive with the bow up.
- **sddd.dd**: roll - Roll, degrees. s is the sign character, "+" or "-". ddd.dd is a decimal number with leading zeroes where appropriate. Positive with the port side up.
- **ddd.dd**: head - Heading, degrees true, with leading zeroes where appropriate.
- **<CR><LF>**: term - End of sentence (2 bytes, values 13 and 10).

1PPS, NMEA ZDA format 13

This 1PPS time tag message is output once per second, approximately 0.5 seconds before the time pulse. The 1PPS, NMEA ZDA format 13 contains the UTC time when the message is output. The next time pulse appears at the first integer second after the time in the message. The format is ASCII text using the ZDA message.

Format

```
$INZDA,hhmmss.ss,x,x,yyyy,,*hh<CR><LF>
```

Description

- **hhmmss.ss**: UTC time. hh = hours (00 - 23), mm = minutes (00 - 59), ss.ss = seconds (00.00 - 59.99)
- **x**: Day of month (01 - 31)
- **x**: Month of year (01 - 12)
- **yyyy**: Year

- **hh**: Checksum
- **<CR><LF>**: End of sentence (2 bytes, values 13 and 10).

This format is recommended used together with 1PPS signal output on the 1PPS terminal at the rear of the Processing Unit. This since the message is output synchronised with the 1PPS signal and is easier/faster to decode than the standard NMEA output with a number of NMEA messages included.

1PPS, Trimble format 14

This 1PPS time tag message is output once per second, approximately 0.5 seconds before the time pulse. The message contains the UTC time of the next time pulse. The message format is fixed length ASCII text.

Format

Element	Columns	Format
Header	1 -3	UTC
Date	5 - 12	yy.mo.da
Time	14 - 21	hh:mm:ss
Fix type	23	digit or "?"
No. of satellites	24	digit or "?"
Term	25 - 26	CR-LF

Description

"yy.mo.da" is year (00 - 99), month of year (01 - 12) and day of month (01 - 31).

"hh:mm:ss" is hours (00 - 23), minutes (00 - 59) and seconds (00 - 59). Fix type is "5" for 3D fix with accurate time, "?" for no fix (time from receiver clock). No. of satellites is "1" - "8" for 1 - 8 satellites tracked, "9" for 9 or more satellites tracked, "?" for no fix (time from receiver clock).

Columns between elements are filled with spaces.

PFreeHeave

The PfreeHeave[®] format is used to improve the accuracy on the real-time heave.

Format

Element	Scaling	Format	Bytes	Value
Header		Unsigned	1	AA Hex
Header		Unsigned	1	52 Hex
Time, seconds	Seconds	Integer	4	
Time, fraction of second	0.0001 second		2	0 - 9999
Heave	Centimetres	Integer	2	
Status word		Bit-fields	1	
Checksum		Unsigned	2	

Description

The PFreeHeave[®] format consists of a fixed-length message using 1-, 2- and 4-byte signed and unsigned integers. The signed integers are represented as two-complement numbers. For the multi-byte elements, the most significant byte is transmitted first. The total number of bytes is 13.

The PFreeHeave output is delayed by a few minutes due to processing. The time fields contain time of validity for the data.

Checksum is calculated as a 16-bit Block Cyclic Redundancy Check (CRC) of all bytes between, but not including the Header and Checksum fields. Time is divided in an integer seconds part and a fractional second part. The integer seconds part of time is counted from 1970-01-01 UTC time, ignoring leap seconds.

Heave is positive down. The status field is zero if heave is valid, non-zero if heave is invalid.

Related references

[Cyclic redundancy check \(CRC\) algorithm](#), page 203

RTCM format 80

This format is used to output raw GNSS data for post processing of the position. All data are output in the GNSS antenna only and applies for both antennas.

This protocol is based on the RTCM Standard 10403.2, *Differential GNSS services*, version 3 with Amendments 1 and 2. Refer to this standard for a description of the output properties.

Cyclic redundancy check (CRC) algorithm

The 16-bit Block Cyclic Redundancy Check (CRC) algorithm is used to calculate the checksum in some formats. The algorithm is described in C and Fortran source code.

C code

```
#define POLY 0x8408
unsigned short blkcrc(
    unsigned char *bufptr,      /* message buffer */
    unsigned long len           /* number of bytes */
)
{
    unsigned char i;
    unsigned short data;
    unsigned short crc = 0xffff;

    if (len == 0L) {
        return ~crc;
    }

    do {
        for (i=0, data = (unsigned short) (0xff & *bufptr++);
            i < 8;
            i++, data >>= 1) {
            if ((crc & 0x0001) ^ (data & 0x0001)) {
                crc = (crc >> 1) ^ POLY;
            } else {
                crc >>= 1;
            }
        }
    } while (--len);

    crc = ~crc;
    data = crc;
    crc = (crc << 8) | ((data >> 8) & 0xff);

    return crc;
}
```

Fortran code

```
SUBROUTINE blkcrc(inbuffer, len, crc)

INTEGER*2 len, i , bit
INTEGER*4 crc, data, poly
CHARACTER inbuffer*(*)

poly = 16#8408
crc = 16#FFFF
data = 0

IF (len.EQ.0) THEN
    crc = 0
    RETURN
END IF

DO i = 1, len
    data = ICHAR(inbuffer(i:i))
    DO bit = 1, 8
        data = IAND(data,16#FF)
        IF (IAND(crc,16#01).EQ.(IAND(data,16#01))) THEN
            crc = ISHL(crc,-1)
        ELSE
            crc = ISHL(crc,-1)
            crc = IEOR(crc, poly)
        END IF
        data = ISHL(data,-1)
    END DO
END DO

data = IEOR(crc,16#FFFF)
crc = IOR(ISHL(data,8), IAND(ISHL(data,-8),16#FF))

END
```

Related references

[PFreeHeave](#), page 201

Functions and dialog boxes

Topics

[NAV Engine Configuration, page 205](#)

[Operator software configuration, page 232](#)

NAV Engine Configuration

Topics

[Vessel Geometry page, page 206](#)

[Vessel Description page, page 207](#)

[Sensors GNSS Geometry page, page 208](#)

[Sensors MRU Geometry page, page 210](#)

[Sensors MRU Geometry - Mounting Wizard , page 211](#)

[Sensors MGC Geometry page, page 214](#)

[Sensors MGC Geometry - Mounting Wizard , page 215](#)

[Sensors MRU/MGC Heave config page, page 218](#)

[Monitoring points Geometry page, page 219](#)

[Communication interface - Input/Output, page 221](#)

[Network page, page 228](#)

[Sensors DGNSS SBAS page, page 229](#)

[Sensors DGNSS XP/G2/G4 page, page 230](#)

[Communication interface - Gyro interface page, page 231](#)

Vessel Geometry page

Here you can set the vessel dimensions and reference points for the vessel on which the Seapath system is installed as well as defining the origin of the vessel coordinate system.

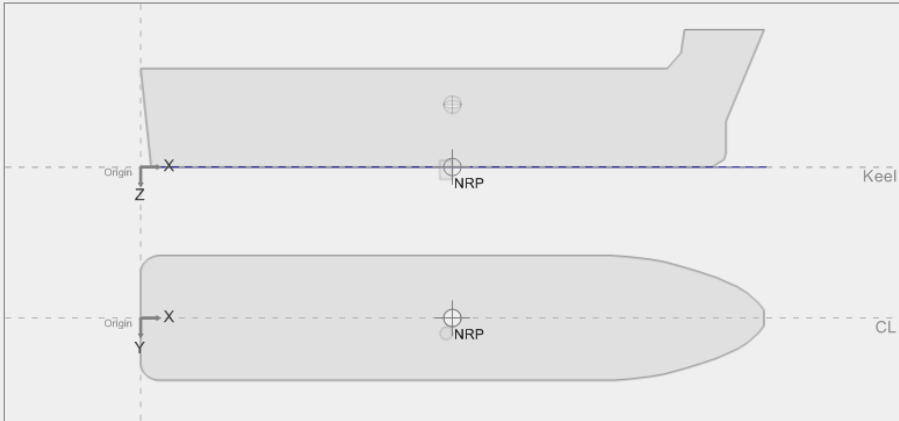
Prerequisites

The navigation reference points you type here must be measured or defined before you start the configuration process.

How to open

Select the **System** menu > **NAV Engine** > **Standard** > **Vessel** > **Geometry**.

Example



The diagram shows two views of a vessel. The top view is a plan view showing the vessel's outline with a horizontal centerline. A coordinate system is shown with the origin at the stern, X-axis pointing forward, and Z-axis pointing down. A navigation reference point (NRP) is marked on the centerline. The bottom view is a side profile of the vessel showing the keel and centerline (CL). A coordinate system is shown with the origin at the stern, X-axis pointing forward, and Y-axis pointing down. A navigation reference point (NRP) is marked on the centerline.

☒ Show sensors ☒ Show equipment ☒ Show monitoring points

Shape type
Ship

☐ Use vessel drawing

Shape dimension		Survey origin		Navigation reference point (NRP)	
Overall length	100.000 m	From stern	0.000 m	Origin to NRP X	50.000 m
Overall width	20.000 m	From CL	0.000 m	Y	0.000 m
Overall height	22.000 m	From keel	0.000 m	Z	0.000 m

Description

The pre-defined scalable vessel shape types rarely represent the actual outline of your vessel. In order to configure the accurate location of the various sensors, equipment and monitoring points on your vessel, you can load a separate vessel model from file. Select **Use vessel drawing** and browse for your specific vessel model file.

Details

Show sensors, Show equipment, Show monitoring points

These items are displayed in the vessel illustration when you select the boxes.

Shape type

It defines the shape of the vessel which hosts the system. You can select between Ship, Rig, Jackup (3 leg) and Jackup (4 leg). These are all scaled according to the dimensions given in the **Shape dimension** section.

Use vessel drawing

The general shape outline can be overridden by an actual shape defined in a drawing file. Supported file extensions are **Vessel models (*.svm)**, **Vessel vector images (*.svi)** and **Old vessel images (*.txt)**. This file can be created or edited in a text editor. When a valid drawing file has been loaded, the dimensions are defined by the loaded shape and the **Shape dimension** parameters are locked.

Shape dimensions

It holds parameters for the overall length of the vessel from stern to bow, the overall width of the vessel and the overall height, which is the distance from the highest point of the vessel to the keel.

Survey origin

All point locations in the configuration refer to the origin. The location of the origin is defined using the distance from stern, centre line (CL) and keel. The location of origin is often referred to as the common reference point (CRP) in survey reports. The distance from stern is the distance from the aft point of the ship to origin along the X axis. The distance from CL is the distance from the vessel's centre line, positive towards starboard. The distance from keel is the distance from the keel, positive downwards.

Navigation reference point (NRP)

The Navigation Reference Point location (NRP) is the reference point for all measurements in the system. The recommended NRP is near the centre of gravity (CG), but it can be freely chosen. It is always defined related to the origin.

Related tasks

[Setting vessel dimensions and reference points](#), page 101

[Importing vessel shape from file](#), page 134

Vessel Description page

The vessel **Description** parameters allow you to enter information about the vessel which is needed for identification purposes.

How to open

Select the **System** menu > **NAV Engine** > **Standard** > **Sensors** > **GNSS** > **Geometry**.

Example

Vessel description			
Vessel name	Arne Viking		
Vessel owner	Seatex	Country of origin	Norway
Vessel ID			
MMSI	113113	IMO number	123456

Details

Vessel name

This is the name of the vessel.

Vessel owner

This is the owner of the vessel.

Country of origin

This is the country in which the vessel is registered.

MMSI

This is the nine-digit Maritime Mobile Service Identity (MMSI) number which uniquely identifies your vessel.

IMO number

This is the International Maritime Organization (IMO) number which uniquely identifies your vessel.

Related tasks

[Entering vessel identification parameters](#), page 134

Sensors GNSS Geometry page

Here you can enter the coordinates for the antenna location(s) on-board your vessel. The GNSS antennas are located inside the Sensor Unit.

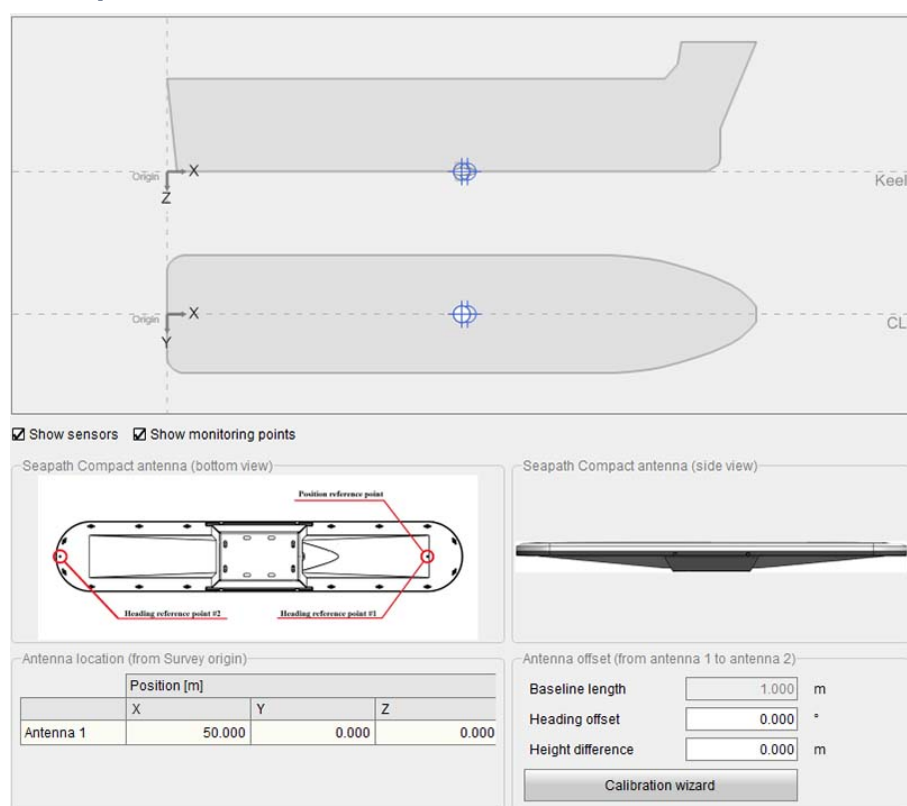
Prerequisites

The distance vector from the origin to the GNSS antenna has to be measured before you can enter the parameters into the configuration.

How to open

Select the **System** menu > **NAV Engine** > **Standard** > **Sensors** > **GNSS** > **Geometry**.

Example



Details

Show sensors, Show monitoring points

These items are displayed in the vessel illustration when you select the boxes.

Antenna location (from Survey origin)

Position: X, Y, Z. This is the surveyed antenna co-ordinates.

Antenna offset from antenna 1 to antenna 2

The **Baseline length** is the distance between the antennas. The **Heading offset** is the angle between the antennas. The **Height difference** is the difference in height between the antennas.

If you change the **Antenna location** parameters, the **Antenna offset** parameters will change as well.

Calibration Wizard

The **Calibration wizard** will help you to calculate the offset (length, heading and height) from antenna 1 to antenna 2.

Related tasks

[Entering antenna location parameters](#), page 104

[Using Calibration Wizard to determine antenna parameters](#), page 106

Sensors MRU Geometry page

Here you can enter the physical location, as well as the mounting angels, for the Inertial Measurement Unit (IMU) on your vessel. The location is relative to origin. The IMU is either an MGC (Motion Sensor and Gyro Compass) or an MRU (Motion Reference Unit).

Prerequisites

For accurate location of the MRU (Motion Reference Unit) a survey has to be carried out.

How to open

Select the **System** menu > **NAV Engine** > **Standard** > **Sensors** > **MRU** > **Geometry**.

Example

☒ Show sensors ☒ Show equipment ☒ Show monitoring points

MRU location (from Origin)

X m Y m Z m

MRU mounting angles

Roll ° Pitch ° Yaw °

Physical mount

Details

Show sensors, Show equipment, Show monitoring points

These items are displayed in the vessel illustration when you select the boxes.

Sensor location (from origin)

This is the position of the MRU in X, Y, Z coordinates in metres from Origin. The sensor unit (IMU) location has to be measured. The default position of the IMU is in the vessel Origin.

IMU interface

Select the Inertial Measurement Unit connected to this product. 5th generation MRU or MGC.

Mounting angles

This is the mounting angles of the Inertial Measurement Unit in degrees for roll, pitch and yaw. The Mounting Wizard is a helpful tool to obtain the correct roll and pitch compensation.

Mounting wizard button

Select this button and the Mounting wizard will assist you with the determination of the MGC mounting angles.

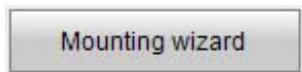
Related tasks

[Setting MRU location and mounting angles](#), page 111

[Setting miniMRU location and mounting angles](#), page 119

Sensors MRU Geometry - Mounting Wizard

Use the Mounting Wizard to determine the roll, pitch and yaw mounting angles in degrees for the MRU.

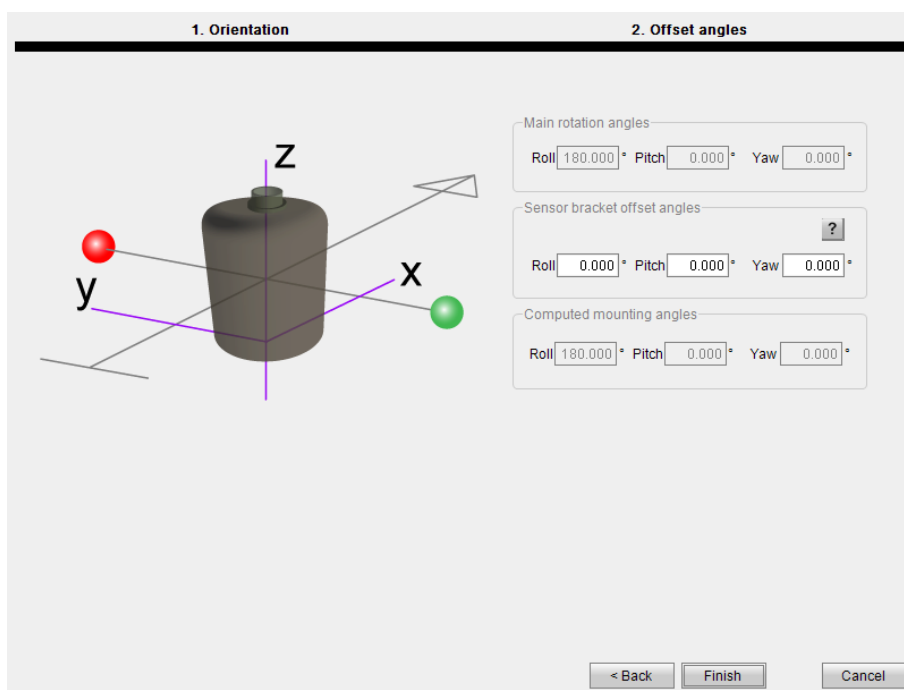
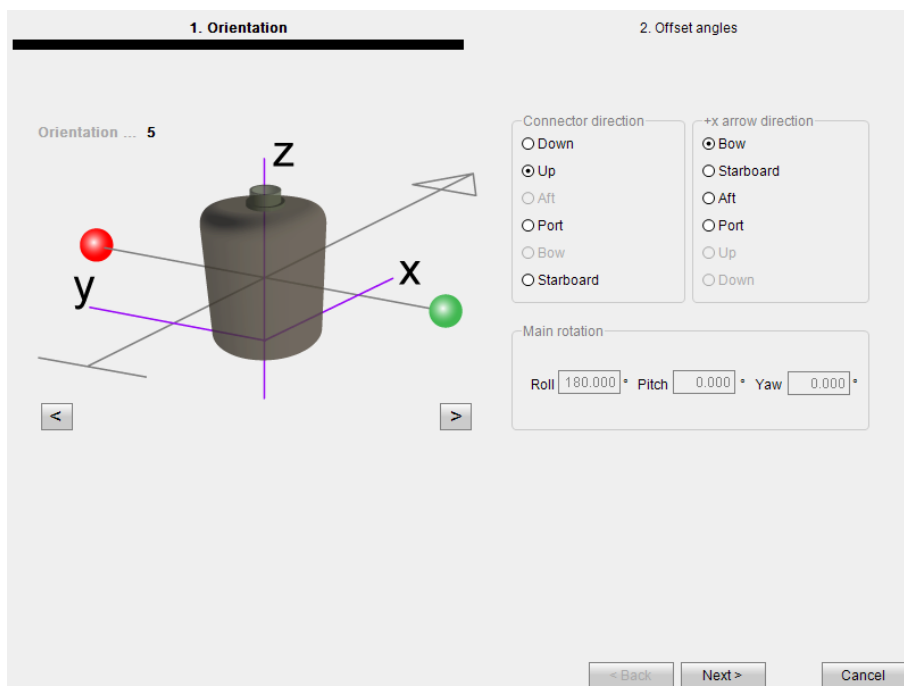
**Prerequisites**

The MRU mounting bracket offset angles have to be available from a survey report or through other methods with similar accuracy.

How to open

Select the Mounting Wizard button in the **Sensors MRU Geometry** page.

Example

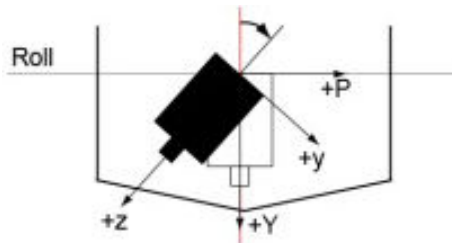


Description

The Mounting Wizard will help you to determine the offset angles of the sensor unit mounting bracket. The mounting bracket offset angles which have to be entered are roll, pitch and yaw.

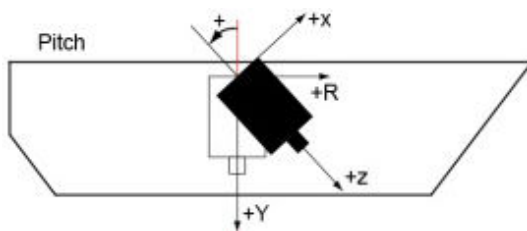
Roll offset angle

The angle between the ship's Y-axis and the projection of the unit's z-axis in the ship's PY-plane. Positive roll offset angle if the bracket tilts to starboard.



Pitch offset angle

The angle between the ship's Y-axis and the projection of the unit's z-axis in the ship's RY-plane. Positive pitch offset angle if the bracket tilts to stern.



Yaw offset angle

The angle between the ship's R-axis and the projection of the unit's x-axis in the ship's RP-plane. Positive yaw offset angle if the bracket is rotated clockwise.

Details

Connector direction

This is the direction in which the connector on the sensor unit points. The selections are Down, Up, Aft, Port, Bow or Starboard.

+x arrow direction

This is the direction in which the +x arrow on the sensor unit points. The selections are Bow, Starboard, Aft, Port, Up or Down.

Main rotation/Main rotation angles

This is the designated installation orientation of the MGC/MRU in the vessel, as indicated by **Connector direction** and **+ arrow direction**. These angles are multiples of 90 degrees.

Sensor bracket offset angles

This is the surveyed offset angles from the designated installation orientation.

Computed mounting angles

This is the actual installation orientation of the MGC/MRU in the vessel, computed from the main rotation and sensor bracket offset angles.

Related tasks

[Using Mounting Wizard to determine MRU mounting angles](#), page 112

[Using Mounting Wizard to determine miniMRU mounting angles](#), page 121

Sensors MGC Geometry page

Here you can enter the physical location, as well as the mounting angles, for the Inertial Measurement Unit (IMU) on your vessel. The location is relative to origin. The IMU is either an MGC (Motion Sensor and Gyro Compass) or an MRU (Motion Reference Unit).

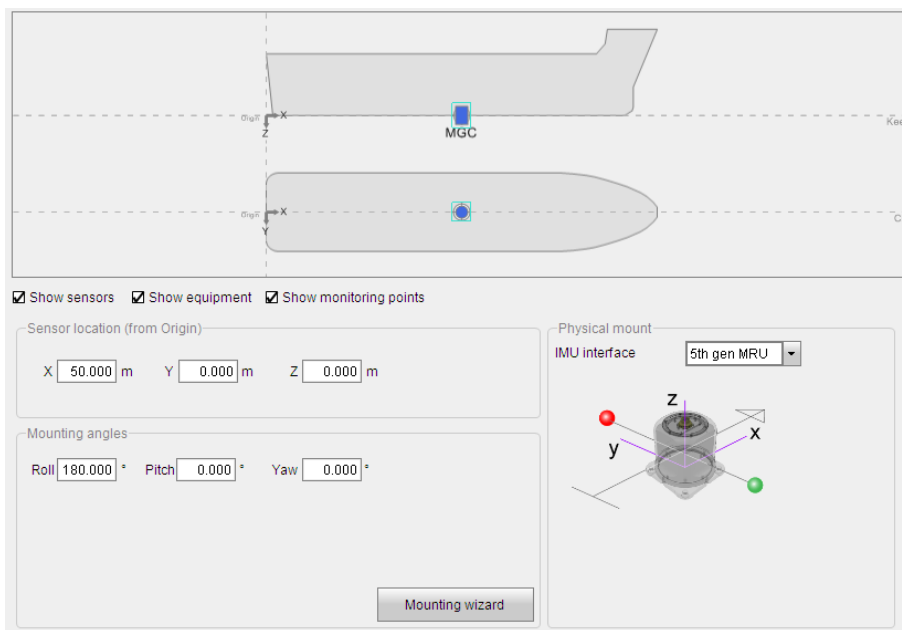
Prerequisites

For accurate location of the MGC (Motion Sensor and Gyro Compass) a survey has to be carried out.

How to open

Select the **System** menu > **NAV Engine** > **Standard** > **Sensors** > **MGC** > **Geometry**.

Example



The screenshot displays the 'Sensors MGC Geometry' configuration page. At the top, two vessel diagrams are shown: a side view and a top view. The side view shows the 'Origin' at the bow, with 'X' and 'Z' axes. The top view shows the 'Origin' at the center, with 'X', 'Y', and 'Z' axes. A blue square labeled 'MGC' is positioned on the side view, and a blue circle is on the top view. Below the diagrams are three checkboxes: ☒ Show sensors, ☒ Show equipment, and ☒ Show monitoring points. The 'Sensor location (from Origin)' section contains input fields for X (50.000 m), Y (0.000 m), and Z (0.000 m). The 'Mounting angles' section contains input fields for Roll (180.000 °), Pitch (0.000 °), and Yaw (0.000 °). A 'Mounting wizard' button is located at the bottom right. On the right side, there is a 'Physical mount' section with a dropdown menu for 'IMU interface' set to '5th gen MRU'. Below this is a 3D diagram of the sensor unit with 'X', 'Y', and 'Z' axes.

Details

Show sensors, Show equipment, Show monitoring points

These items are displayed in the vessel illustration when you select the boxes.

Sensor location (from origin)

This is the position of the MGC in X, Y, Z coordinates in metres from Origin. The sensor unit (IMU) location has to be measured. The default position of the IMU is in the vessel Origin.

IMU interface

Select the Inertial Measurement Unit connected to this product.

Mounting angles

This is the mounting angles of the Inertial Measurement Unit in degrees for roll, pitch and yaw. The Mounting Wizard is a helpful tool to obtain the correct roll and pitch compensation.

Mounting wizard button

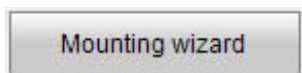
Select this button and the Mounting wizard will assist you with the determination of the MGC mounting angles.

Related tasks

[Setting MGC location and mounting angles](#), page 115

Sensors MGC Geometry - Mounting Wizard

Use the Mounting Wizard to determine the roll, pitch and yaw mounting angles in degrees for the MRU.

**Prerequisites**

The MGC offset angles have to be available from a survey report or through other methods with similar accuracy.

How to open

Select the Mounting Wizard button in the **Sensors MGC Geometry** page.

Example

1. Orientation

Orientation ... 6

< >

2. Offset angles

Connector direction

☐ Down
☒ Up
☐ Aft
☐ Port
☐ Bow
☐ Starboard

+x arrow direction

☐ Bow
☒ Starboard
☐ Aft
☐ Port
☐ Up
☐ Down

Main rotation

Roll ° Pitch ° Yaw °

< Back Next > Cancel

1. Orientation

< Back Finish Cancel

2. Offset angles

Main rotation angles

Roll ° Pitch ° Yaw °

Sensor bracket offset angles

Roll ° Pitch ° Yaw ° ?

Computed mounting angles

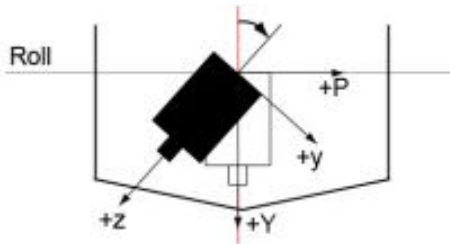
Roll ° Pitch ° Yaw °

Description

The Mounting Wizard will help you to determine the offset angles of the sensor unit mounting bracket. The mounting bracket offset angles which have to be entered are roll, pitch and yaw.

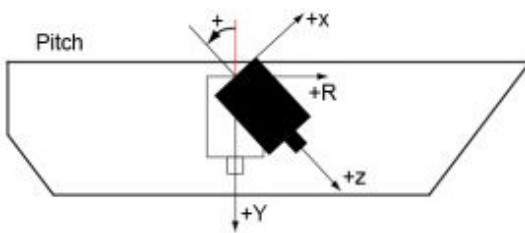
Roll offset angle

The angle between the ship's Y-axis and the projection of the unit's z-axis in the ship's PY-plane. Positive roll offset angle if the bracket tilts to starboard.



Pitch offset angle

The angle between the ship's Y-axis and the projection of the unit's z-axis in the ship's RY-plane. Positive pitch offset angle if the bracket tilts to stern.



Yaw offset angle

The angle between the ship's R-axis and the projection of the unit's x-axis in the ship's RP-plane. Positive yaw offset angle if the bracket is rotated clockwise.

Details

Connector direction

This is the direction in which the connector on the sensor unit points. The selections are Down, Up, Aft, Port, Bow or Starboard.

+x arrow direction

This is the direction in which the +x arrow on the sensor unit points. The selections are Bow, Starboard, Aft, Port, Up or Down.

Main rotation/Main rotation angles

This is the designated installation orientation of the MGC/MRU in the vessel, as indicated by **Connector direction** and **+ arrow direction**. These angles are multiples of 90 degrees.

Sensor bracket offset angles

This is the surveyed offset angles from the designated installation orientation.

Computed mounting angles

This is the actual installation orientation of the MGC/MRU in the vessel, computed from the main rotation and sensor bracket offset angles.

Related tasks

[Using Mounting Wizard to determine MGC mounting angles](#), page 117

Sensors MRU/MGC Heave config page

The **Heave config** parameters allow you to tune the heave parameters to the vessel motion characteristics for the actual weather conditions. This is important when using real-time heave measurements in order to achieve optimum heave performance.

How to open

Select the **System** menu > **NAV Engine** > **Standard** > **Sensors** > **MGC/MRU** > **Heave config**.

Example

The screenshot shows the 'Heave config' interface. It is divided into two main sections: 'Real-time heave' and 'Delayed heave'. In the 'Real-time heave' section, there is a 'Heave filter' dropdown menu set to 'Automatic' and a 'Heave mean level' checkbox labeled 'Roll/Pitch dependent' which is checked. The 'Delayed heave' section has a 'Heave mean level' checkbox labeled 'Roll/Pitch dependent' which is also checked.

Description

You can select the heave filter options from the **Options** list. In the list you can select between four different heave filter modes: *Hydrographic survey*, *Automatic*, *GNSS aided* and *General purpose*.

If you select other options than Automatic, you must enter an expected heave period.

Details

Hydrographic survey

Select **Hydrographic survey** when the heave phase and amplitude have to be output correctly in real time. This mode is typically selected when the heave output signal from the system is to be used for heave compensation of echo sounders and offshore crane systems.

Automatic

Select **Automatic** when the vessel is operating in various sea states or when the average heave period is unknown. The *Automatic* filter mode estimates the average heave period and automatically sets the filter period in real time during operation. The Automatic filter mode uses the Hydrographic survey filter structure.

GNSS aided

Select **GNSS aided** when RTK DGNSS corrections are available or the GNSS velocity measurements are accurate. In this mode the heave and height measurements are determined by blending vertical acceleration and GNSS height measurements

in a Kalman filter. This combination makes it possible to measure wave slopes and the tide in real time with high precision ideal for hydrographic work. The height measurements are provided with centimeter accuracy and independent of wave frequency. If RTK is not available, the algorithm will use the GNSS velocity measurements for aiding the heave. If GNSS velocities are not available, the Automatic algorithm is used.

General purpose

Select **General purpose** when the heave phase is of no importance. This mode is typically selected when the system is to be used for measuring the heave height and period on oceanographic buoys.

Period

An expected average heave period has to be set to the heave filter unless the automatic mode is chosen. The settling time for the heave measurements from power-on or after a turn will be about 10 times the selected period, T_0 .

Roll/Pitch dependent

Select the **Roll/Pitch dependent** check box to enable whether the heave mean level should be dependent on the roll and pitch measurements or not. When enabled, the heave position in the monitoring points (MP) has now longer zero mean level, instead its value depends on the vessel tilt at any time. This option is useful especially in applications where the distance between the MP and the sea level is to be determined, like in echo sounder installations with depth changes due to changes in vessel trim and list. If not enabled, the heave will always have zero mean level. There are separate selections for the real-time heave and the delayed heave (PFreeHeave).

Related tasks

[Selecting heave filter options](#), page 124

Monitoring points Geometry page

Here you can define the locations on the vessel for which you want the system to calculate the position.

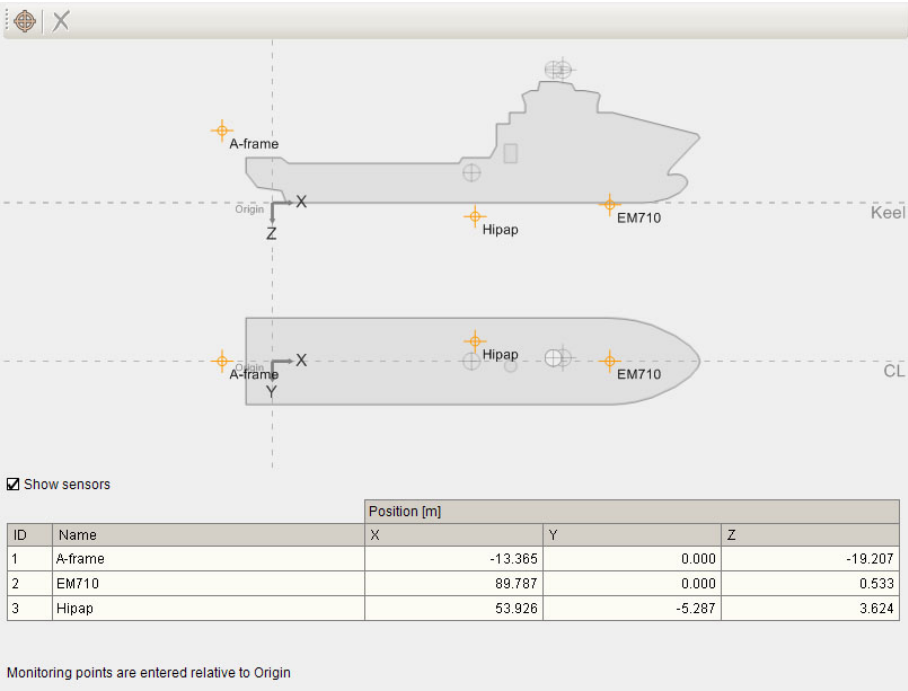
Prerequisites

To get exact coordinates from origin to each monitoring point, each monitoring point has to be measured or calculated based upon drawings or previously measured points.

How to open

Select the **System** menu > **NAV Engine** > **Standard** > **Monitoring points** > **Geometry**.

Example



Description

The toolbar at the top contains two icons. One for adding a monitoring point, , and one for deleting a monitoring point, .

The monitoring points are entered relative to Origin.

Details

Show sensors, Show equipment

These items are displayed in the vessel illustration when you select the boxes.

ID

This is the ID number for the given monitoring point.

Name

This is the name you give the monitoring point.

Position: X, Y, Z

These are the surveyed co-ordinates in metres for the various monitoring points.

Related tasks

[Setting monitoring points](#), page 125

Communication interface - Input/Output

Here you can set the parameters for communication with external equipment.

How to open

Select the **System** menu > **NAV Engine** > **Standard** > **Communication interface** > **Input/Output**.

Communication interface - Serial or Ethernet

When you have selected an interface in the **Input/Output** list, you must select which type of communication you want for that interface. You can select between serial or Ethernet communication.

How to open

Select the **System** menu > **NAV Engine** > **Standard** > **Communication interface** > **Input/Output**.

Example

▼ Configuration details

Interface Description

Type

Cable ID

▼ I/O properties

Port Baud rate ☒ rs-232 ☐ rs-422

▼ Advanced

Parity Data bits Stop bits

Description

When you select a communication interface from the **Input/Output** list, various parameters will appear at the lower part of the page, depending on your choice of interface. Some of these parameters are common for all interfaces.

The Serial interface allows you to decide how the Processing Unit shall communicate with and interface to other equipment.

The Ethernet interface allows you to decide how the Processing Unit shall communicate via the internet protocol (IP) network.

Configuration details

Interface

This is the interface you have selected from the **Input/Output** list.

Description

Here you can type an informative text about the interface you have selected.

Type

Here you can select which type of communication you want for your interface. You can select between communication via **Serial** line or **Ethernet**.

The selection you make here, will affect the parameters which appear under **I/O properties**.

Cable ID

Here you can type a short identification text for the cable connected to the Processing Unit. The **Cable ID** box is optional. It is intended for installation documentation.

I/O properties - Serial interface

Port

Select which port to use for the serial communication. The serial port number corresponds with the number on the Processing Unit.

Baud rate

Select which baud rate to use for the serial communication.

RS-232/RS-422

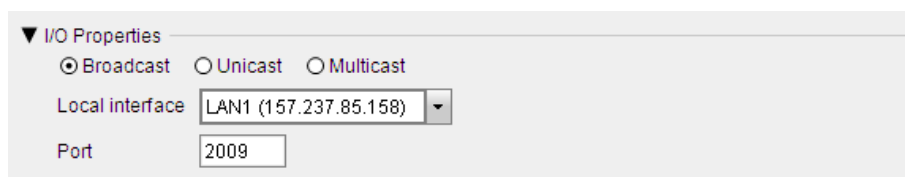
Select if you want to use RS-232 or RS-422 for the electrical interface. This selection depends on the **Port** you selected.

Advanced

Under **Advanced** you are able to modify the parity, stop bits and data bits. These parameters should be left unchanged. If these parameters are to be modified, they should only be modified by skilled personnel.

I/O properties - Ethernet interface - Broadcast

Broadcasting is a method of transferring a message to all recipients simultaneously.



▼ I/O Properties

☒ Broadcast ☐ Unicast ☐ Multicast

Local interface LAN1 (157.237.85.158)

Port 2009

Local interface

This is the LAN port on the Processing Unit.

Port

This is one of the LAN ports on the Processing Unit.

I/O Properties - Ethernet interface - Unicast

Unicast transmission is the sending of messages to a single network destination identified by a unique address.

☐ Broadcast ☒ Unicast ☐ Multicast

Local interface: IP address:

Local port: Remote port:

Local interface

Select which local interface you want to use from the list.

IP address

This is the target IP address, to which the unit is receiving or sending.

Local port

When receiving, this is the port on which the unit listens.

Remote port

When transmitting, this is the port to which the unit sends.

Note: _____



It is recommended to use the same port number for both Local and Remote ports.

I/O Properties - Ethernet interface - Multicast

Multicast (one-to-many or many-to-many distribution) is group communication where information is addressed to a group of destination computers simultaneously.

☐ Broadcast ☐ Unicast ☒ Multicast

Local interface: IP address:

Remote port:

Local interface

This is the LAN port on the Processing Unit.

IP address

This is the multicast group address. Recommended range: 239.255.000.000 to 239.255.255.255.

Remote port

When transmitting, this is the port to which the unit sends.

Communication interface - TelegramOut interface page

Here you can enable and set up data messages which are transmitted to external equipment.

How to open

Select the **System** menu > **NAV Engine** > **Standard** > **Communication interface** > **Input/Output**.

Select the **TelegramOut** interface in the **Input/Output** list.

Example

The screenshot shows the 'Input/Output list' window. It contains a table with the following data:

Interface	Type	Direction	I/O Properties	Description
☒ TelegramOut1	Serial	Out	COM10 9600 n 8 1 rs-422	Telegram Out #1
☐ TelegramOut2		Out	NONE	Telegram Out #2
☐ TelegramOut3		Out	NONE	Telegram Out #3
☐ TelegramOut4		Out	NONE	Telegram Out #4

Below the table are configuration details for the selected interface (TelegramOut1):

- Configuration details:** Interface: TelegramOut1, Description: Telegram Out #1, Type: Serial, Cable ID: (empty).
- I/O properties:** Port: COM10, Baud rate: 9600, rs-232 (radio), rs-422 (radio).
- Advanced:** Telegram out properties.
 - Format: NMEA, Datum: WGS84, Monitoring point: GNSS antenna.
 - NMEA selection: GGA GST VTG.
 - Options: (empty).
 - NMEA talker ID: IN, Log to file: ☒, Time precision: 2.
 - Telegram timing: Interval [s]: 1.000, Event driven (radio), Timer driven (radio).

Telegram out properties

Details

Format

This is the format of the output telegram.

Datum

The datum selection is only valid if the datum on the corrections input to the product are in WGS84 or no corrections are input. If the corrections input are in another datum than WGS84, you must select WGS84. The datum of the output will then be on the same datum as the datum on the corrections input to the product. The other choices can only be used when the system navigates in WGS84 datum.

Monitoring point

This is a point on the vessel for which you want the position measurements to be output.

NMEA selection

The NMEA selection option is activated if the **Format** is selected as NMEA. Select between a number of NMEA telegrams.

Note: _____



To output \$DPGGA sentence, enable GGA and select the Use DQI(0-9) as GGA quality indicator option.

Options

The contents of some of the available NMEA telegrams can be modified according to options listed in the **Options** list. This is for example useful when interfacing to older equipment.

NMEA talker ID

The talker ID of NMEA messages sent from this output. The default value is IN for systems with an Inertial Measurement Unit (IMU) connected. The default value is GP for systems without an IMU connected.

Log to file

This option logs the measurements to file internally in the Seapath system.

Time precision

This is the number of decimals in the time field in NMEA telegrams which contain time information.

Telegram timing properties

Details

Interval

This is the interval between each sample. It can be selected in the range 0.005 to 3000 seconds.

Event driven

The output of data is driven by receipt of IMU (Inertial Measurement Unit) data to the Processing Unit. **Event driven** data is valid for the point in time the sensors within the IMU are sampled. The option is recommended used when transmission in real time is not required.

Timer driven

When using timer driven output the data will be output in real time. (0 ms delay.) **Timer driven** output is recommended used when the data is preferred in real-time. For example when the system which receives the data time-stamp these data when receiving them.

Related tasks

[Setting up the Telegram out interface](#), page 129

Communication interface - DgnssLink interface page

Here you can set up the system to receive various kinds of corrections which will improve the position accuracy.

How to open

Select the **System** menu > **NAV Engine** > **Standard** > **Communication interface** > **Input/Output**.

Select the **DgnssLink** interface in the **Input/Output list**.

Example

The screenshot shows the 'Input/Output list' window. It contains a table with the following data:

Interface	Type	Direction	I/O Properties	Description
☒ DgnssLink2	Ethernet	In	UDP LAN2 15010 MULTICAST	Link #2
☐ DgnssLink3	Ethernet	In	UDP LAN2 13911 BROADCAST	Link #3
☐ DgnssLink4	Serial	In	COM1 38400 n 8 1 rs-232	Link #4
☐ DgnssLink5	Ethernet	In	UDP LAN2 32111 MULTICAST	Link #5

Below the table are status icons: Disabled, OK, Warning, and Error.

Configuration details:

Interface: DgnssLink2 Description: Link #2

Type: Ethernet

Cable ID:

I/O properties:

DGNSS link properties:

Interface: 3710 DGNSS receiver Name: RTCM Timeout [s]: 60

Format: RTCM v2 and XP/G2/G4

☐ GGA interval [s]: 0

Details

Interface

Select which external equipment you want to interface. Some configuration parameters are dependent on the interface selection.

Name

Type the name you want to give the DGNSS correction link.

Timeout

This is an age limit. If the age of the corrections exceeds this limit, the corrections are invalid.

Format

This is the format types which are supported by the system.

GGA interval

If this option is selected, the system sends GGA messages to the DGNSS receiver at specified intervals in seconds.

Related tasks

[Setting up the DGNSS correction link parameters](#), page 131

[Setting up NTRIP client](#), page 142

Communication interface - MGC interface page

Here you can select which priority the MGC heading input shall have in the system if you have several heading sources in your system. You can also select interval for message output.

How to open

Select the **System** menu > **NAV Engine** > **Standard** > **Communication interface** > **Input/Output**.

Select the **MGC** interface in the **Input/Output** list.

Example

The screenshot shows the 'Input/Output list' dialog box. It contains a table with the following data:

Interface	Type	Direction	I/O Properties	Description
☒ GnssRec1	Serial	In/Out	GNSSA1 57600 n 8 1	Receiver #1
☒ MGC	Serial	In/Out	MRU 115200 n 8 1 rs-422	IMU #1
☒ Gyro1	Serial	In	COM11 9600 n 8 1 rs-232	Gyro #1
☐ Gyro2	In	NONE		Gyro #2

Below the table, there are configuration details for the selected MGC interface:

- Configuration details:**
 - Interface: MRU
 - Type: Serial
 - Cable ID:
 - Description: IMU #1
- I/O properties:**
 - Port: MRU
 - Baud rate: 115200
 - rs-232 (radio button)
 - rs-422 (radio button, selected)
- Advanced:**
 - Parity: None
 - Data bits: 8
 - Stop bits: 1
- MGC properties:**
 - Heading priority: 0
 - ☒ NMEA output interval [s]: 0.7

A warning message at the bottom states: "WARNING: Enabling output to an MGC used as compass will make its IMO type approval void."

Description

WARNING:



Enabling output to an MGC used as compass will void the IMO type approval.

Details

Heading priority

Set priority for the heading input from the MGC in your system.

NMEA output interval

Enable output of NMEA GGA, VTG and ZDA messages to the MGC and at which interval the message shall be output.

Related tasks

[Setting up the MGC as an inertial navigation system \(INS\)](#), page 140

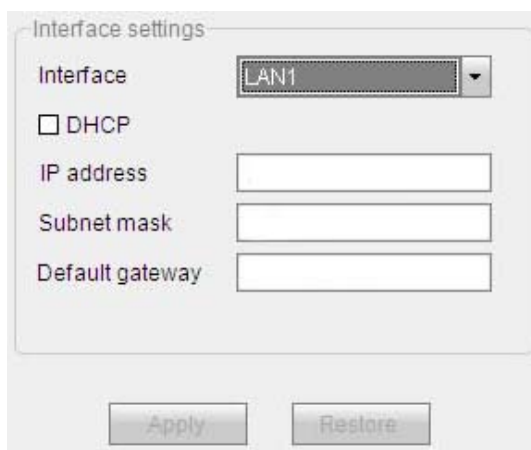
Network page

Here you can change the IP address for the Processing Unit.

How to open

Select the **System** menu > **NAV Engine** > **Standard** > **Network**.

Example

The image shows a screenshot of a 'Interface settings' dialog box. It has a title bar that says 'Interface settings'. Inside, there is a label 'Interface' next to a dropdown menu showing 'LAN1'. Below that is a checkbox labeled 'DHCP' which is currently unchecked. Underneath the checkbox are three text input fields labeled 'IP address', 'Subnet mask', and 'Default gateway'. At the bottom of the dialog box are two buttons: 'Apply' and 'Restore'.

Details

Interface

This is the interface for which you want to change the IP address.

DHCP

Select this box if the IP address is given by a DHCP server. This selection will disable the rest of the parameters.

IP Address

This is the new IP address for the interface.

Subnet mask

This is the subnet mask for the interface.

Default gateway

This is the default gateway for the Processing Unit.

Note: _____



Only one default gateway can be set up.

Apply button

Select **Apply** to save the settings.

Restore button

If you select Restore, you will return to the previous interface settings.

Related tasks

[Changing the Sensor Unit IP address](#), page 132

Sensors DGNSS SBAS page

The SBAS parameters enable the system to track SBAS satellites.

How to open

Select the **System** menu > **NAV Engine** > **Standard** > **Sensors** > **DGNSS** > **SBAS**.

Example

The screenshot shows a configuration window for SBAS. At the top, there are three radio buttons: **Enabled** (selected), **Automatic**, and **Manual**. Below the **Manual** option, there are four sections, each with a list of satellite IDs and checkboxes:

- EGNOS**: 120 (checked), 124 (unchecked), 126 (checked)
- WAAS**: 133 (unchecked), 135 (unchecked), 138 (unchecked)
- MSAS**: 129 (unchecked), 137 (unchecked)
- GAGAN**: 127 (unchecked), 128 (unchecked)

Details

Enable

Select this box if you want your system to track SBAS satellites.

Automatic

If you select **Automatic**, the GNSS receiver will select which SBAS satellites to track. This option may be unavailable for some systems.

Manual

Here you must select which SBAS satellites the system shall track. If two SBAS satellites are selected, the system will automatically use data from the best satellite. If only one SBAS satellite is selected, only correction data from this satellite will be used in the computations.

If no specific SBAS satellite is selected, the system will select and use data from the best of the available satellites.

If the selected satellite is not available, the system will not use the SBAS correction data in the computations.

Maximum two SBAS satellites can be tracked by the GNSS receiver.

Related tasks

[Selecting SBAS satellites](#), page 137

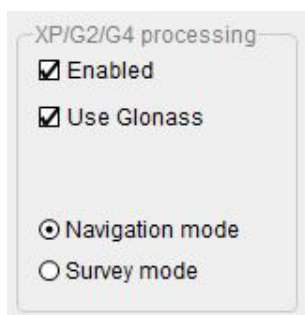
Sensors DGNSS XP/G2/G4 page

The **XP/G2/G4** parameter allows you to use high precision services to improve the accuracy of the GNSS signal. This will result in a more accurate position.

How to open

Select the **System** menu > **NAV Engine** > **Standard** > **Sensors** > **DGNSS** > **XP/G2/G4**.

Example



Details

Enabled

Select **Enabled** if you want to enable the use of high precision services in the position solution.

Use Glonass

Select **Use Glonass** if you want to enable the use of GLONASS corrections in the position solution.

Navigation mode

Select **Navigation mode** if you want more reliability on the position solution during difficult GNSS conditions.

Survey mode

Select **Survey mode** if you want continuous output of data even under difficult GNSS conditions and uncertainty on data quality.

Related tasks

[Enabling Fugro high precision services](#), page 138

Communication interface - Gyro interface page

Here you can set up the system to receive heading input from a gyro compass or similar.

How to open

Select the **System** menu > **NAV Engine** > **Standard** > **Communication interface** > **Input/Output**.

Select **Gyro** in the **Input/Output list**.

Example

The screenshot shows the 'Input/Output list' dialog box. It contains a table with the following data:

Interface	Type	Direction	I/O Properties	Description
☒ GnssRec1	Serial	In/Out	GNSSA1 57600 n 8 1	Receiver #1
☒ MGC	Serial	In/Out	MRU 115200 n 8 1 rs-422	IMU #1
☒ Gyro1	Serial	In	COM11 9600 n 8 1 rs-232	Gyro #1
☐ Gyro2		In	NONE	Gyro #2

Below the table, there are configuration details for the selected 'Gyro1' interface:

- Configuration details:**
 - Interface: Gyro1
 - Description: Gyro #1
 - Type: Serial
 - Cable ID:
- I/O properties:**
 - Port: COM11
 - Baud rate: 9600
 - rs-232 (selected) / rs-422
- Advanced:**
 - Parity: None
 - Data bits: 8
 - Stop bits: 1
- Telegram in properties:**
 - Format: NMEA HDT
 - Timeout [s]: 5
 - Interval [s]: 0.10
 - Priority: 2
 - ☒ Checksum required
 - ☐ GGA/VTG
 - Interval [s]: 0

Description

Gyro interface is for external heading input to the system. External heading may be received on either serial line or Ethernet.

Details

Telegram in properties

Format

This is the format of the input telegram.

Timeout

This is an age limit. If the age of the heading message exceeds this limit, the heading message is invalid. [s].

Interval

This is the expected interval in seconds between incoming telegrams. This option can be configured.

Priority

This is the priority of the gyro interface. If more than one gyro interface is defined and available, one is selected for use, based on the specified priority.

Checksum required

This option enables or disables NMEA checksum requirement. The option is default set to **Enabled**. This is the recommended setting.

GGA/VTG

If this option is selected the system sends GGA and VTG messages to the gyro at specific intervals.

Related tasks

[Selecting heading input format from a gyro compass](#), page 139

Operator software configuration

Topics

[Operator software configuration - View page](#), page 233

[Operator software configuration - Sky view page](#), page 233

[Operator software configuration - Position Integrity page](#), page 235

[Operator software configuration - Compass page](#), page 236

[Operator software configuration - UTM page](#), page 237

[Operator software configuration - Data source page](#), page 238

[Operator software configuration - Alarms page](#), page 239

Operator software configuration - View page

Here you can select which view you want to appear where in the display when the HMI (Human Machine Interface) application starts.

How to open

Select the **System** menu > **Operator SW** > **View**.

Example



Description

The **View** page has the same layout as the views in the display. You can select which information you want to appear in the various views.

Two views cannot have the same contents. When one view is selected as contents in View 1, other contents will automatically be selected for View 2.

Related tasks

[Selecting the position of views in the display](#), page 145

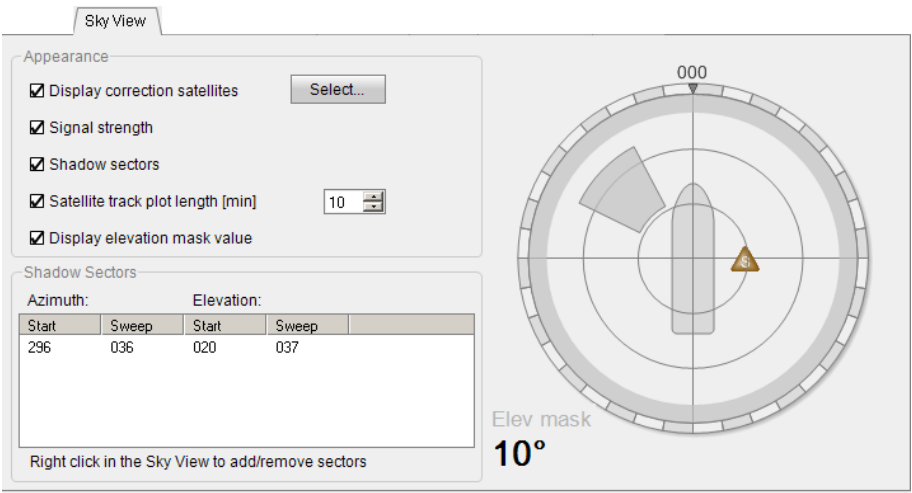
Operator software configuration - Sky view page

Here you can define the appearance of the *Sky View*.

How to open

Select the **System** menu > **Operator SW** > **Sky View**.

Example



Details

Display correction satellites

This option allows you to show correction satellites such as Inmarsat and Spotbeam in the Sky view. The satellite positions are predefined. You must enable the satellites which you want to appear in the Sky view where they are shown as brown triangles. Spotbeam satellites are marked with an S while Inmarsat satellites are marked with an I. When you hover the cursor over a correction satellite in the Sky view, a tooltip with satellite name, azimuth, elevation and position will appear.

Signal strength

This option allows you to display a signal bar under the satellites in the Sky view. The signal bar indicates the signal-to-noise ratio for the satellite, and the longer the bar, the stronger the signal.

Note: _____

 *The **Signal strength (L2)** option is only available on dual frequency, single receiver systems.*

Shadow sectors

This option allows you to show the shadow sectors in the Sky view. You must add a shadow sector before you can display it in the Sky view. A shadow sector is just an indicator and does not influence the position solution in any way. The shadow sector refers to the vessel centre and will follow the vessel heading. Azimuth start describes the starting angle of the sector in degrees (0 to 360) related to North. Azimuth sweep describes the size in degrees. Elevation start describes the starting angle of the sector in degrees (0 to 90) where 0 degrees is the horizon and 90 degrees is straight above the antenna.

Satellite track plot length

This option assists in determining if a satellite is rising or falling in elevation. The **Satellite track plot length** option defines how long the length of the track plot should be. When you select this option, the track plot starts to increase. The maximum length of the track plot is 720 minutes.

Display elevation mask value

When you select **Display elevation mask value**, the configured elevation mask is indicated in the lower left corner of the Sky view.

Related tasks

[Selecting the appearance of the Sky view](#), page 146

Operator software configuration - Position Integrity page

Under **Position Integrity** you can adjust the scaling of the Integrity view.

How to open

Select the **System** menu > **Operator SW** > **Position Integrity**.



Description

This is the estimated position error in North/South direction. The value is metres.

The error ellipse indicates a statistical error in the position solution. The smaller the ellipse, the more accurate and reliable position.

Details

Max ellipse EPE

Max ellipse EPE indicates the radius of the outer circle (grey area) in the Integrity view.

Ellipse diagram resolution

The **Ellipse diagram resolution** indicates the number of steps from the centre to the outer circle.

Related tasks

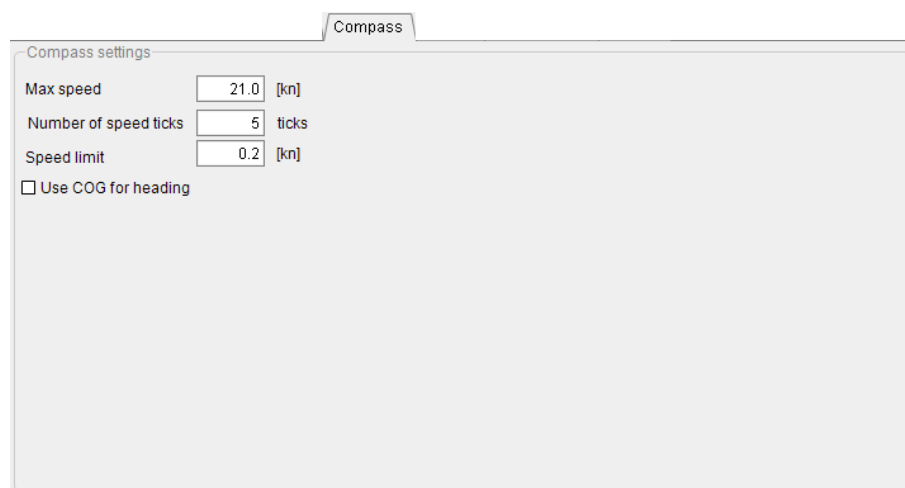
[Adjusting the Integrity view](#), page 147

Operator software configuration - Compass page

The **Compass** page allows you to adjust the speed scaling of the Compass view.

How to open

Select the **System** menu > **Operator SW** > **Compass**.



The screenshot shows a window titled "Compass settings" with a tab labeled "Compass". Inside the window, there are four input fields and one checkbox:

- Max speed**: A text box containing "21.0" followed by "[kn]".
- Number of speed ticks**: A text box containing "5" followed by "ticks".
- Speed limit**: A text box containing "0.2" followed by "[kn]".
- Use COG for heading**: A checkbox that is currently unchecked.

Details

Max speed

This is the maximum vessel speed in knots.

Number of speed ticks

This is the resolution of the graphical presentation of the speed in the compass.

Speed limit

This is the lower speed limit in knots for when the COG (Course Over Ground) and SOG (Speed Over Ground) shall be displayed in the view.

Use COG for heading

Select this box if you do not have true heading.

Related tasks

[Adjusting the Compass view](#), page 148

Operator software configuration - UTM page

This page allows you to control how UTM positions are treated by the application. UTM is the Universal Transverse Mercator coordinate system.

How to open

Select the **System** menu > **Operator SW** > **UTM**.

Example

Details

False Northing,

When you select **False Northing**, positions south of the equator will always be presented as positive in the Position data area in the display. A fixed offset of 10 000 000 m is added to the northing value to avoid negative coordinates in the southern hemisphere.

False Easting

When you select **False Easting**, a fixed offset of 500 000 m is added to the true easting value to avoid negative coordinates.

The UTM standard uses false northing and false easting, that is the coordinates are never negative. In case negative northing or easting is wanted, clear the **False Northing** check box.

Note: _____



*It is not possible to clear the **False Easting** check box.*

Zone options: Auto

When selecting **Auto** zone, the system zone is automatically calculated in accordance with the inserted coordinates.

Zone options: Auto extended

The UTM zone is automatically calculated by default. The **Auto extended zone** option is only applicable between 56 degrees to 64 degrees north and 3 degrees to 6 degrees east. The 32V zone is extended west to 3 degrees east, so when selecting the **Auto extended zone** in this area, zone 32V is used. When outside the current area and **Auto extended zone** is selected, the used zone is equal to the zone used when selecting **Auto** zone.

Zone options: Manual

Selecting **Manual** zone makes it possible to define which **Manual zone** and **Zone offset** to use. The **Zone offset** option allows a fixed offset to be applied to the longitudinal degrees. The UTM zone can be offset up to ± 3 degrees. The zone offset is typically used where the maps used have an offset. The zone range is from 1 to 60.

Related tasks

[Adjusting UTM presentation](#), page 149

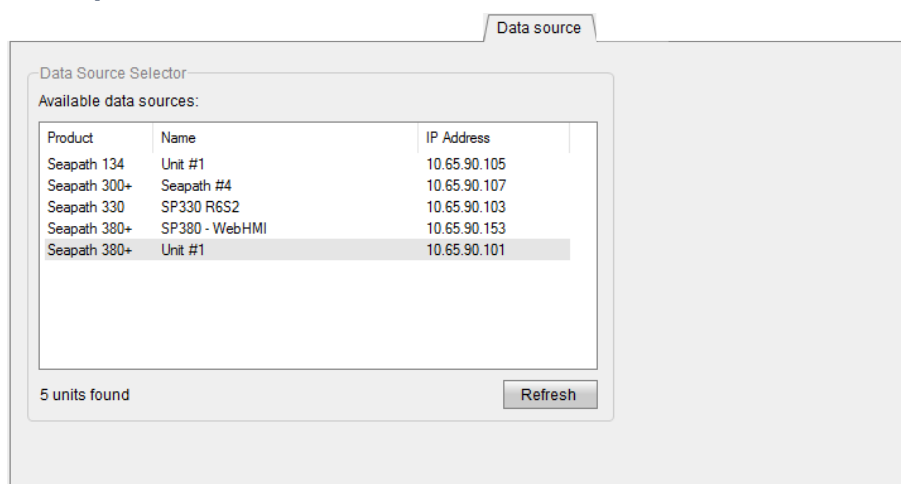
Operator software configuration - Data source page

This page allows you to select the data source from which the computer with the Seapath operator software installed on.

How to open

Select the **System** menu > **Operator SW** > **Data Source**.

Example



Details

Available data sources

This is a list of available Seapath sources in the system.

Refresh

Select **Refresh** to updated the list of available units. If the wanted data source is not displayed in the list, you can check the network connections and that all equipment is switched on.

Related tasks

[Selecting the Seapath Operator software data source](#), page 149

Operator software configuration - Alarms page

Here you can define how to receive alarm messages.

How to open

Select the **System** menu > **Operator SW** > **Alarms**.

Example



Description

UDP Broadcast is the default (and recommended) setting. Defining a multicast address for alarm message distribution requires advanced network configuration skills.

Details

UDP Multicast

If the operator software configuration which is performed, is not in the same network as the Processing Unit, IP multicast is required. To enable multicast, select **UDP Multicast** and enter the multicast address to use for reception of alarms.

UDP Broadcast

Select this option if alarm messages are transmitted to all network units.

Related tasks

[Selecting reception of alarm messages](#), page 150

Equipment handling

Topics

[Taking delivery, page 241](#)

[Unpacking and handling, page 241](#)

[Storage, page 242](#)

[Disposal, page 242](#)

Taking delivery

When the equipment arrives at its destination:

- Perform an inspection immediately to register any damage that may have occurred in transit.
- If you find any damage, both the insurance company and the shipping agent must be informed immediately.

Unpacking and handling

Care should be taken when unpacking and handling the equipment. A visual inspection should be made to check that the equipment has not been damaged during shipment and that all components and parts are present according to the packing list.

The equipment contains delicate electronic components – handle with care and avoid shocks.

The equipment can be lifted by hand.

Storage

After the equipment in the boxes has been inspected and it has been verified that no damage has occurred, the equipment must be stored in its original packaging until the time of installation. The storage premises must be dry and well protected.

Verify that the location meets the environmental requirements defined for the equipment.

Inertial Measurement Unit transportation box

The unit is shipped in a specially designed transportation box. Keep the unit stored within the box until everything is ready for installation of the unit.

Note:



After the unit has been installed, please keep the transportation box. The unit must be shipped in this box for maintenance or repair in order to maintain the warranty.

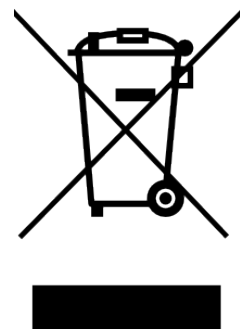
Related references

[Environmental specifications](#), page 163

Disposal

At the end of the product lifetime, all parts and products must be disposed of in an environmentally-friendly way.

All electrical and electronic parts and components must be disposed of separately from the municipal waste stream via designated collection facilities appointed by the government or local authorities. The correct disposal and separate collection of your old appliance will help prevent potential negative consequences for the environment and human health. This is a precondition for reuse and recycling of used electrical and electronic equipment. For more detailed information about disposal of your old appliance, please contact your local authorities or waste disposal service.



All disposal of mechanical, electromechanical, electronic and chemical waste - including all types of batteries - must take place according to national and international rules and regulations. Observe the relevant Waste Electrical and Electronic Equipment (WEEE) regulations.

The equipment can be returned to Kongsberg Discovery AS if there is no local WEEE collection. The equipment is marked with this waste pictogram.

Free and open source software

Topics

[General information, page 244](#)

[BSD license, page 245](#)

[f2c license, page 246](#)

[GCC license, page 246](#)

[GNU C library license, page 247](#)

[GNU general public license, version 2, page 250](#)

[GNU general public license, version 3, page 253](#)

[GNU lesser general public license, version 2.1, page 261](#)

[GNU lesser general public license, version 3, page 266](#)

[PHP license, page 268](#)

General information

Some of the software components in this product are free and open source software. These components are released under the licenses given here.

The source code for the relevant software components may be available upon request.

- **Company name:** Kongsberg Discovery AS
- **Address:** Havnegata 9, N-7010 Trondheim, Norway
- **Telephone:** +47 33 03 41 00
- **Telephone, global 24h support:**
 - Europe, the Middle East and Africa: +47 33 03 24 07
 - Asia Pacific: +65 97 11 24 07

Americas: +15 04 303 5244

- **E-mail address:** support.seatex@kd.kongsberg.com
- **Website:** <http://www.kongsberg.com/discovery>

The application software is proprietary and no source code is available for it.

BSD license

Copyright (c) 1983, 1988, 1989, 1990, 1993 The Regents of the University of California.

Copyright (c) 1996, 1997, 1998, 1999, 2003 Theodore Ts'o.

Copyright (c) 1997, 1998, 2001 Kungliga Tekniska Högskolan.

Copyright (c) 1991, 1992 Paul Kranenburg <pk@cs.few.eur.nl>.

Copyright (c) 1993 Branko Lankester <branko@hacktic.nl>.

Copyright (c) 1993 Ulrich Pegelow <pegelow@moorea.uni-muenster.de>.

Copyright (c) 1995, 1996 Michael Elizabeth Chastain <mec@duracef.shout.net>.

Copyright (c) 1993, 1994, 1995, 1996 Rick Sladkey <jrs@world.std.com>.

Copyright (c) 1998-2001 Wichert Akkerman <wakkerma@deephackmode.org>.

Copyright (c) 1995 Nick Simicich (njs@scifi.emi.net).

Copyright (c) 2000-2001 Gunnar Ritter.

Copyright (c) 2004, Jan Kneschke, incremental.

Copyright (c) 1997-2010 University of Cambridge

Copyright (c) 2007-2010, Google Inc.

All Rights Reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
3. The name of the author may not be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDER "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHOR BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING

IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

f2c license

Copyright 1990 - 1997 by AT&T, Lucent Technologies and Bellcore.

Permission to use, copy, modify, and distribute this software and its documentation for any purpose and without fee is hereby granted, provided that the above copyright notice appear in all copies and that both that the copyright notice and this permission notice and warranty disclaimer appear in supporting documentation, and that the names of AT&T, Bell Laboratories, Lucent or Bellcore or any of their entities not be used in advertising or publicity pertaining to distribution of the software without specific, written prior permission.

AT&T, Lucent and Bellcore disclaim all warranties with regard to this software, including all implied warranties of merchantability and fitness. In no event shall AT&T, Lucent or Bellcore be liable for any special, indirect or consequential damages or any damages whatsoever resulting from loss of use, data or profits, whether in an action of contract, negligence or other tortious action, arising out of or in connection with the use or performance of this software.

GCC license

GCC is released under the license shown below in addition to GPL and LGPL.

GCC RUNTIME LIBRARY EXCEPTION

Version 3.1, 31 March 2009

Copyright (C) 2009 Free Software Foundation, Inc. <<http://fsf.org/>>

Everyone is permitted to copy and distribute verbatim copies of this license document, but changing it is not allowed. This GCC Runtime Library Exception ("Exception") is an additional permission under section 7 of the GNU General Public License, version 3 ("GPLv3"). It applies to a given file (the "Runtime Library") that bears a notice placed by the copyright holder of the file stating that the file is governed by GPLv3 along with this Exception. When you use GCC to compile a program, GCC may combine portions of certain GCC header files and runtime libraries with the compiled program. The purpose of this Exception is to allow compilation of non-GPL (including proprietary) programs to use, in this way, the header files and runtime libraries covered by this Exception.

0. Definitions.

A file is an "Independent Module" if it either requires the Runtime Library for execution after a Compilation Process, or makes use of an interface provided by the Runtime Library, but is not otherwise based on the Runtime Library. "GCC" means a version of the GNU Compiler Collection, with or without modifications, governed by version 3 (or a specified later version) of the GNU General Public License (GPL) with the option of using any subsequent versions published by the FSF. "GPL-compatible Software" is software whose conditions of propagation, modification and use would permit combination with GCC in accord with the license of GCC. "Target Code" refers to output from any compiler for a real or virtual target processor architecture, in executable form or suitable for input to an assembler, loader, linker and/or execution phase. Notwithstanding that, Target Code does not include data in any format that is used as a compiler intermediate representation, or used for producing a compiler intermediate representation. The "Compilation Process" transforms code entirely represented in non-intermediate

languages designed for human-written code, and/or in Java Virtual Machine byte code, into Target Code. Thus, for example, use of source code generators and preprocessors need not be considered part of the Compilation Process, since the Compilation Process can be understood as starting with the output of the generators or preprocessors. A Compilation Process is "Eligible" if it is done using GCC, alone or with other GPL-compatible software, or if it is done without using any work based on GCC. For example, using non-GPL-compatible Software to optimize any GCC intermediate representations would not qualify as an Eligible Compilation Process.

1. Grant of Additional Permission.

You have permission to propagate a work of Target Code formed by combining the Runtime Library with Independent Modules, even if such propagation would otherwise violate the terms of GPLv3, provided that all Target Code was generated by Eligible Compilation Processes. You may then convey such a combination under terms of your choice, consistent with the licensing of the Independent Modules.

2. No Weakening of GCC Copyleft.

The availability of this Exception does not imply any general presumption that third-party software is unaffected by the copyleft requirements of the license of GCC.

GNU C library license

The GNU C library is released under the licenses shown below in addition to GPL and LGPL.

This file contains the copying permission notices for various files in the GNU C Library distribution that have copyright owners other than the Free Software Foundation. These notices all require that a copy of the notice be included in the accompanying documentation and be distributed with binary distributions of the code, so be sure to include this file along with any binary distributions derived from the GNU C Library.

All code incorporated from 4.4 BSD is distributed under the following license:

Copyright (C) 1991 Regents of the University of California. All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met: 1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer. 2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution. 3. [This condition was removed.] 4. Neither the name of the University nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE REGENTS AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE REGENTS OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

The DNS resolver code, taken from BIND 4.9.5, is copyrighted both by UC Berkeley and by Digital Equipment Corporation. The DEC portions are under the following license: Portions Copyright (C) 1993 by Digital Equipment Corporation. Permission to use, copy, modify, and distribute this software for any purpose with or without fee is hereby granted, provided that the above copyright notice and this

permission notice appear in all copies, and that the name of Digital Equipment Corporation not be used in advertising or publicity pertaining to distribution of the document or software without specific, written prior permission.

THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS" AND DIGITAL EQUIPMENT CORP. DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES WITH REGARD TO THIS SOFTWARE, INCLUDING ALL IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS. IN NO EVENT SHALL DIGITAL EQUIPMENT CORPORATION BE LIABLE FOR ANY SPECIAL, DIRECT, INDIRECT, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES OR ANY DAMAGES WHATSOEVER RESULTING FROM LOSS OF USE, DATA OR PROFITS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, NEGLIGENCE OR OTHER TORTIOUS ACTION, ARISING OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE USE OR PERFORMANCE OF THIS SOFTWARE.

The Sun RPC support (from rpcsrc-4.0) is covered by the following license: Copyright (C) 1984, Sun Microsystems, Inc. Sun RPC is a product of Sun Microsystems, Inc. and is provided for unrestricted use provided that this legend is included on all tape media and as a part of the software program in whole or part. Users may copy or modify Sun RPC without charge, but are not authorized to license or distribute it to anyone else except as part of a product or program developed by the user.

SUN RPC IS PROVIDED AS IS WITH NO WARRANTIES OF ANY KIND INCLUDING THE WARRANTIES OF DESIGN, MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, OR ARISING FROM A COURSE OF DEALING, USAGE OR TRADE PRACTICE.

Sun RPC is provided with no support and without any obligation on the part of Sun Microsystems, Inc. to assist in its use, correction, modification or enhancement.

SUN MICROSYSTEMS, INC. SHALL HAVE NO LIABILITY WITH RESPECT TO THE INFRINGEMENT OF COPYRIGHTS, TRADE SECRETS OR ANY PATENTS BY SUN RPC OR ANY PART THEREOF.

In no event will Sun Microsystems, Inc. be liable for any lost revenue or profits or other special, indirect and consequential damages, even if Sun has been advised of the possibility of such damages. The following CMU license covers some of the support code for Mach, derived from Mach 3.0: Mach Operating System Copyright (C) 1991,1990,1989 Carnegie Mellon University All Rights Reserved. Permission to use, copy, modify and distribute this software and its documentation is hereby granted, provided that both the copyright notice and this permission notice appear in all copies of the software, derivative works or modified versions, and any portions thereof, and that both notices appear in supporting documentation.

CARNEGIE MELLON ALLOWS FREE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE IN ITS "AS IS" CONDITION. CARNEGIE MELLON DISCLAIMS ANY LIABILITY OF ANY KIND FOR ANY DAMAGES WHATSOEVER RESULTING FROM THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE.

Carnegie Mellon requests users of this software to return to: Software Distribution Coordinator School of Computer Science Carnegie Mellon University Pittsburgh PA 15213-3890 or Software.Distribution@CS.CMU.EDU any improvements or extensions that they make and grant Carnegie Mellon the rights to redistribute these changes.

The file if_ppp.h is under the following CMU license: Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met: 1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer. 2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution. 3. Neither the name of the University nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY CARNEGIE MELLON UNIVERSITY AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE UNIVERSITY OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF

SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

The following license covers the files from Intel's "Highly Optimized Mathematical Functions for Itanium" collection: Intel License Agreement Copyright (c) 2000, Intel Corporation All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

- * Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
- * Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
- * The name of Intel Corporation may not be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL INTEL OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

The files inet/getnameinfo.c and sysdeps/posix/getaddrinfo.c are copyright (C) by Craig Metz and are distributed under the following license:

/* The Inner Net License, Version 2.00. The author(s) grant permission for redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, of the software and documentation provided that the following conditions are met: 0. If you receive a version of the software that is specifically labelled as not being for redistribution (check the version message and/or README), you are not permitted to redistribute that version of the software in any way or form. 1. All terms of the all other applicable copyrights and licenses must be followed. 2. Redistributions of source code must retain the authors' copyright notice(s), this list of conditions, and the following disclaimer. 3. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the authors' copyright notice(s), this list of conditions, and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution. 4. [The copyright holder has authorized the removal of this clause.] 5. Neither the name(s) of the author(s) nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY ITS AUTHORS AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHORS OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

If these license terms cause you a real problem, contact the author. */

GNU general public license, version 2

GNU GENERAL PUBLIC LICENSE, Version 2, June 1991

Copyright (C) 1989, 1991 Free Software Foundation, Inc., 51 Franklin Street, Fifth Floor, Boston, MA 02110-1301 USA

Everyone is permitted to copy and distribute verbatim copies of this license document, but changing it is not allowed.

Preamble

The licenses for most software are designed to take away your freedom to share and change it. By contrast, the GNU General Public License is intended to guarantee your freedom to share and change free software--to make sure the software is free for all its users. This General Public License applies to most of the Free Software Foundation's software and to any other program whose authors commit to using it. (Some other Free Software Foundation software is covered by the GNU Lesser General Public License instead.) You can apply it to your programs, too. When we speak of free software, we are referring to freedom, not price. Our General Public Licenses are designed to make sure that you have the freedom to distribute copies of free software (and charge for this service if you wish), that you receive source code or can get it if you want it, that you can change the software or use pieces of it in new free programs; and that you know you can do these things. To protect your rights, we need to make restrictions that forbid anyone to deny you these rights or to ask you to surrender the rights. These restrictions translate to certain responsibilities for you if you distribute copies of the software, or if you modify it. For example, if you distribute copies of such a program, whether gratis or for a fee, you must give the recipients all the rights that you have. You must make sure that they, too, receive or can get the source code. And you must show them these terms so they know their rights. We protect your rights with two steps: (1) copyright the software, and (2) offer you this license which gives you legal permission to copy, distribute and/or modify the software. Also, for each author's protection and ours, we want to make certain that everyone understands that there is no warranty for this free software. If the software is modified by someone else and passed on, we want its recipients to know that what they have is not the original, so that any problems introduced by others will not reflect on the original authors' reputations. Finally, any free program is threatened constantly by software patents. We wish to avoid the danger that redistributors of a free program will individually obtain patent licenses, in effect making the program proprietary. To prevent this, we have made it clear that any patent must be licensed for everyone's free use or not licensed at all. The precise terms and conditions for copying, distribution and modification follow.

GNU GENERAL PUBLIC LICENSE TERMS AND CONDITIONS FOR COPYING, DISTRIBUTION AND MODIFICATION

0. This License applies to any program or other work which contains a notice placed by the copyright holder saying it may be distributed under the terms of this General Public License. The "Program", below, refers to any such program or work, and a "work based on the Program" means either the Program or any derivative work under copyright law: that is to say, a work containing the Program or a portion of it, either verbatim or with modifications and/or translated into another language. (Hereinafter, translation is included without limitation in the term "modification".) Each licensee is addressed as "you". Activities other than copying, distribution and modification are not covered by this License; they are outside its scope. The act of running the Program is not restricted, and the output from the Program is covered only if its contents constitute a work based on the Program (independent of having been made by running the Program). Whether that is true depends on what the Program does.

1. You may copy and distribute verbatim copies of the Program's source code as you receive it, in any medium, provided that you conspicuously and appropriately publish on each copy an appropriate copyright notice and disclaimer of warranty; keep intact all the notices that refer to this License and to the absence of any warranty; and give any other recipients of the Program a copy of this License along

with the Program. You may charge a fee for the physical act of transferring a copy, and you may at your option offer warranty protection in exchange for a fee.

2. You may modify your copy or copies of the Program or any portion of it, thus forming a work based on the Program, and copy and distribute such modifications or work under the terms of Section 1 above, provided that you also meet all of these conditions: You must cause the modified files to carry prominent notices stating that you changed the files and the date of any change. You must cause any work that you distribute or publish, that in whole or in part contains or is derived from the Program or any part thereof, to be licensed as a whole at no charge to all third parties under the terms of this License. If the modified program normally reads commands interactively when run, you must cause it, when started running for such interactive use in the most ordinary way, to print or display an announcement including an appropriate copyright notice and a notice that there is no warranty (or else, saying that you provide a warranty) and that users may redistribute the program under these conditions, and telling the user how to view a copy of this License. (Exception: if the Program itself is interactive but does not normally print such an announcement, your work based on the Program is not required to print an announcement.) These requirements apply to the modified work as a whole. If identifiable sections of that work are not derived from the Program, and can be reasonably considered independent and separate works in themselves, then this License, and its terms, do not apply to those sections when you distribute them as separate works. But when you distribute the same sections as part of a whole which is a work based on the Program, the distribution of the whole must be on the terms of this License, whose permissions for other licensees extend to the entire whole, and thus to each and every part regardless of who wrote it. Thus, it is not the intent of this section to claim rights or contest your rights to work written entirely by you; rather, the intent is to exercise the right to control the distribution of derivative or collective works based on the Program. In addition, mere aggregation of another work not based on the Program with the Program (or with a work based on the Program) on a volume of a storage or distribution medium does not bring the other work under the scope of this License.

3. You may copy and distribute the Program (or a work based on it, under Section 2) in object code or executable form under the terms of Sections 1 and 2 above provided that you also do one of the following: Accompany it with the complete corresponding machine-readable source code, which must be distributed under the terms of Sections 1 and 2 above on a medium customarily used for software interchange; or, Accompany it with a written offer, valid for at least three years, to give any third party, for a charge no more than your cost of physically performing source distribution, a complete machine-readable copy of the corresponding source code, to be distributed under the terms of Sections 1 and 2 above on a medium customarily used for software interchange; or, Accompany it with the information you received as to the offer to distribute corresponding source code. (This alternative is allowed only for noncommercial distribution and only if you received the program in object code or executable form with such an offer, in accord with Subsection b above.) The source code for a work means the preferred form of the work for making modifications to it. For an executable work, complete source code means all the source code for all modules it contains, plus any associated interface definition files, plus the scripts used to control compilation and installation of the executable. However, as a special exception, the source code distributed need not include anything that is normally distributed (in either source or binary form) with the major components (compiler, kernel, and so on) of the operating system on which the executable runs, unless that component itself accompanies the executable. If distribution of executable or object code is made by offering access to copy from a designated place, then offering equivalent access to copy the source code from the same place counts as distribution of the source code, even though third parties are not compelled to copy the source along with the object code.

4. You may not copy, modify, sublicense, or distribute the Program except as expressly provided under this License. Any attempt otherwise to copy, modify, sublicense or distribute the Program is void, and will automatically terminate your rights under this License. However, parties who have received copies, or rights, from you under this License will not have their licenses terminated so long as such parties remain in full compliance.

5. You are not required to accept this License, since you have not signed it. However, nothing else grants you permission to modify or distribute the Program or its derivative works. These actions are prohibited

by law if you do not accept this License. Therefore, by modifying or distributing the Program (or any work based on the Program), you indicate your acceptance of this License to do so, and all its terms and conditions for copying, distributing or modifying the Program or works based on it.

6. Each time you redistribute the Program (or any work based on the Program), the recipient automatically receives a license from the original licensor to copy, distribute or modify the Program subject to these terms and conditions. You may not impose any further restrictions on the recipients' exercise of the rights granted herein. You are not responsible for enforcing compliance by third parties to this License.

7. If, as a consequence of a court judgment or allegation of patent infringement or for any other reason (not limited to patent issues), conditions are imposed on you (whether by court order, agreement or otherwise) that contradict the conditions of this License, they do not excuse you from the conditions of this License. If you cannot distribute so as to satisfy simultaneously your obligations under this License and any other pertinent obligations, then as a consequence you may not distribute the Program at all. For example, if a patent license would not permit royalty-free redistribution of the Program by all those who receive copies directly or indirectly through you, then the only way you could satisfy both it and this License would be to refrain entirely from distribution of the Program. If any portion of this section is held invalid or unenforceable under any particular circumstance, the balance of the section is intended to apply and the section as a whole is intended to apply in other circumstances. It is not the purpose of this section to induce you to infringe any patents or other property right claims or to contest validity of any such claims; this section has the sole purpose of protecting the integrity of the free software distribution system, which is implemented by public license practices. Many people have made generous contributions to the wide range of software distributed through that system in reliance on consistent application of that system; it is up to the author/donor to decide if he or she is willing to distribute software through any other system and a licensee cannot impose that choice. This section is intended to make thoroughly clear what is believed to be a consequence of the rest of this License.

8. If the distribution and/or use of the Program is restricted in certain countries either by patents or by copyrighted interfaces, the original copyright holder who places the Program under this License may add an explicit geographical distribution limitation excluding those countries, so that distribution is permitted only in or among countries not thus excluded. In such case, this License incorporates the limitation as if written in the body of this License.

9. The Free Software Foundation may publish revised and/or new versions of the General Public License from time to time. Such new versions will be similar in spirit to the present version, but may differ in detail to address new problems or concerns. Each version is given a distinguishing version number. If the Program specifies a version number of this License which applies to it and "any later version", you have the option of following the terms and conditions either of that version or of any later version published by the Free Software Foundation. If the Program does not specify a version number of this License, you may choose any version ever published by the Free Software Foundation.

10. If you wish to incorporate parts of the Program into other free programs whose distribution conditions are different, write to the author to ask for permission. For software which is copyrighted by the Free Software Foundation, write to the Free Software Foundation; we sometimes make exceptions for this. Our decision will be guided by the two goals of preserving the free status of all derivatives of our free software and of promoting the sharing and reuse of software generally.

NO WARRANTY

11. BECAUSE THE PROGRAM IS LICENSED FREE OF CHARGE, THERE IS NO WARRANTY FOR THE PROGRAM, TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW. EXCEPT WHEN OTHERWISE STATED IN WRITING THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND/OR OTHER PARTIES PROVIDE THE PROGRAM "AS IS" WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EITHER EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. THE ENTIRE RISK AS TO THE QUALITY AND PERFORMANCE OF THE PROGRAM IS WITH YOU. SHOULD THE PROGRAM PROVE DEFECTIVE, YOU ASSUME THE COST OF ALL NECESSARY SERVICING, REPAIR OR CORRECTION.

12. IN NO EVENT UNLESS REQUIRED BY APPLICABLE LAW OR AGREED TO IN WRITING WILL ANY COPYRIGHT HOLDER, OR ANY OTHER PARTY WHO MAY MODIFY AND/OR REDISTRIBUTE THE PROGRAM AS PERMITTED ABOVE, BE LIABLE TO YOU FOR DAMAGES, INCLUDING ANY GENERAL, SPECIAL, INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF THE USE OR INABILITY TO USE THE PROGRAM (INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO LOSS OF DATA OR DATA BEING RENDERED INACCURATE OR LOSSES SUSTAINED BY YOU OR THIRD PARTIES OR A FAILURE OF THE PROGRAM TO OPERATE WITH ANY OTHER PROGRAMS), EVEN IF SUCH HOLDER OR OTHER PARTY HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES.

END OF TERMS AND CONDITIONS

How to Apply These Terms to Your New Programs

If you develop a new program, and you want it to be of the greatest possible use to the public, the best way to achieve this is to make it free software which everyone can redistribute and change under these terms. To do so, attach the following notices to the program. It is safest to attach them to the start of each source file to most effectively convey the exclusion of warranty; and each file should have at least the "copyright" line and a pointer to where the full notice is found. <one line to give the program's name and an idea of what it does>

Copyright ©<year> <name of author>

This program is free software; you can redistribute it and/or modify it under the terms of the GNU General Public License as published by the Free Software Foundation; either version 2 of the License, or (at your option) any later version. This program is distributed in the hope that it will be useful, but WITHOUT ANY WARRANTY; without even the implied warranty of MERCHANTABILITY or FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. See the GNU General Public License for more details. You should have received a copy of the GNU General Public License along with this program; if not, write to the Free Software Foundation, Inc., 51 Franklin Street, Fifth Floor, Boston, MA 02110-1301 USA. Also add information on how to contact you by electronic and paper mail. If the program is interactive, make it output a short notice like this when it starts in an interactive mode: Gnomovision version 69, Copyright (C) year name of author. Gnomovision comes with ABSOLUTELY NO WARRANTY; for details type `show w'. This is free software, and you are welcome to redistribute it under certain conditions; type `show c' for details. The hypothetical commands `show w' and `show c' should show the appropriate parts of the General Public License. Of course, the commands you use may be called something other than `show w' and `show c'; they could even be mouse-clicks or menu items--whatever suits your program. You should also get your employer (if you work as a programmer) or your school, if any, to sign a "copyright disclaimer" for the program, if necessary. Here is a sample; alter the names: Yoyodyne, Inc., hereby disclaims all copyright interest in the program `Gnomovision' (which makes passes at compilers) written by James Hacker. <signature orf TyCoon> 1 April 1989 Ty Coon, President of Vice This General Public License does not permit incorporating your program into proprietary programs. If your program is a subroutine library, you may consider it more useful to permit linking proprietary applications with the library. If this is what you want to do, use the GNU Lesser General Public License instead of this License.

GNU general public license, version 3

GNU GENERAL PUBLIC LICENSE Version 3, 29 June 2007

Copyright (C) 2007 Free Software Foundation, Inc. <<http://fsf.org/>>

Everyone is permitted to copy and distribute verbatim copies of this license document, but changing it is not allowed.

Preamble

The GNU General Public License is a free, copyleft license for software and other kinds of works. The licenses for most software and other practical works are designed to take away your freedom to share and change the works. By contrast, the GNU General Public License is intended to guarantee your freedom to share and change all versions of a program to make sure it remains free software for all its users. We, the Free Software Foundation, use the GNU General Public License for most of our software; it applies also to any other work released this way by its authors. You can apply it to your programs, too. When we speak of free software, we are referring to freedom, not price. Our General Public Licenses are designed to make sure that you have the freedom to distribute copies of free software (and charge for them if you wish), that you receive source code or can get it if you want it, that you can change the software or use pieces of it in new free programs, and that you know you can do these things. To protect your rights, we need to prevent others from denying you these rights or asking you to surrender the rights. Therefore, you have certain responsibilities if you distribute copies of the software, or if you modify it: responsibilities to respect the freedom of others. For example, if you distribute copies of such a program, whether gratis or for a fee, you must pass on to the recipients the same freedoms that you received. You must make sure that they, too, receive or can get the source code. And you must show them these terms so they know their rights. Developers that use the GNU GPL protect your rights with two steps: (1) assert copyright on the software, and (2) offer you this License giving you legal permission to copy, distribute and/or modify it. For the developers' and authors' protection, the GPL clearly explains that there is no warranty for this free software. For both users' and authors' sake, the GPL requires that modified versions be marked as changed, so that their problems will not be attributed erroneously to authors of previous versions. Some devices are designed to deny users access to install or run modified versions of the software inside them, although the manufacturer can do so. This is fundamentally incompatible with the aim of protecting users' freedom to change the software. The systematic pattern of such abuse occurs in the area of products for individuals to use, which is precisely where it is most unacceptable. Therefore, we have designed this version of the GPL to prohibit the practice for those products. If such problems arise substantially in other domains, we stand ready to extend this provision to those domains in future versions of the GPL, as needed to protect the freedom of users. Finally, every program is threatened constantly by software patents. States should not allow patents to restrict development and use of software on general-purpose computers, but in those that do, we wish to avoid the special danger that patents applied to a free program could make it effectively proprietary. To prevent this, the GPL assures that patents cannot be used to render the program non-free. The precise terms and conditions for copying, distribution and modification follow.

TERMS AND CONDITIONS

0. Definitions. "This License" refers to version 3 of the GNU General Public License. "Copyright" also means copyright-like laws that apply to other kinds of works, such as semiconductor masks. "The Program" refers to any copyrightable work licensed under this License. Each licensee is addressed as "you". "Licensees" and "recipients" may be individuals or organizations. To "modify" a work means to copy from or adapt all or part of the work in a fashion requiring copyright permission, other than the making of an exact copy. The resulting work is called a "modified version" of the earlier work or a work "based on" the earlier work. A "covered work" means either the unmodified Program or a work based on the Program. To "propagate" a work means to do anything with it that, without permission, would make you directly or secondarily liable for infringement under applicable copyright law, except executing it on a computer or modifying a private copy. Propagation includes copying, distribution (with or without modification), making available to the public, and in some countries other activities as well. To "convey" a work means any kind of propagation that enables other parties to make or receive copies. Mere interaction with a user through a computer network, with no transfer of a copy, is not conveying. An interactive user interface displays "Appropriate Legal Notices" to the extent that it includes a convenient and prominently visible feature that (1) displays an appropriate copyright notice, and (2) tells the user that there is no warranty for the work (except to the extent that warranties are provided), that licensees may convey the work under this License, and how to view a copy of this License. If the interface presents a list of user commands or options, such as a menu, a prominent item in the list meets this criterion.

1. Source Code.

The "source code" for a work means the preferred form of the work for making modifications to it. "Object code" means any non-source form of a work. A "Standard Interface" means an interface that either is an official standard defined by a recognized standards body, or, in the case of interfaces specified for a particular programming language, one that is widely used among developers working in that language. The "System Libraries" of an executable work include anything, other than the work as a whole, that (a) is included in the normal form of packaging a Major Component, but which is not part of that Major Component, and (b) serves only to enable use of the work with that Major Component, or to implement a Standard Interface for which an implementation is available to the public in source code form. A "Major Component", in this context, means a major essential component (kernel, window system, and so on) of the specific operating system (if any) on which the executable work runs, or a compiler used to produce the work, or an object code interpreter used to run it. The "Corresponding Source" for a work in object code form means all the source code needed to generate, install, and (for an executable work) run the object code and to modify the work, including scripts to control those activities. However, it does not include the work's System Libraries, or general-purpose tools or generally available free programs which are used unmodified in performing those activities but which are not part of the work. For example, Corresponding Source includes interface definition files associated with source files for the work, and the source code for shared libraries and dynamically linked subprograms that the work is specifically designed to require, such as by intimate data communication or control flow between those subprograms and other parts of the work. The Corresponding Source need not include anything that users can regenerate automatically from other parts of the Corresponding Source. The Corresponding Source for a work in source code form is that same work.

2. Basic Permissions.

All rights granted under this License are granted for the term of copyright on the Program, and are irrevocable provided the stated conditions are met. This License explicitly affirms your unlimited permission to run the unmodified Program. The output from running a covered work is covered by this License only if the output, given its content, constitutes a covered work. This License acknowledges your rights of fair use or other equivalent, as provided by copyright law. You may make, run and propagate covered works that you do not convey, without conditions so long as your license otherwise remains in force. You may convey covered works to others for the sole purpose of having them make modifications exclusively for you, or provide you with facilities for running those works, provided that you comply with the terms of this License in conveying all material for which you do not control copyright. Those thus making or running the covered works for you must do so exclusively on your behalf, under your direction and control, on terms that prohibit them from making any copies of your copyrighted material outside their relationship with you. Conveying under any other circumstances is permitted solely under the conditions stated below. Sublicensing is not allowed; section 10 makes it unnecessary.

3. Protecting Users' Legal Rights From Anti-Circumvention Law.

No covered work shall be deemed part of an effective technological measure under any applicable law fulfilling obligations under article 11 of the WIPO copyright treaty adopted on 20 December 1996, or similar laws prohibiting or restricting circumvention of such measures. When you convey a covered work, you waive any legal power to forbid circumvention of technological measures to the extent such circumvention is effected by exercising rights under this License with respect to the covered work, and you disclaim any intention to limit operation or modification of the work as a means of enforcing, against the work's users, your or third parties' legal rights to forbid circumvention of technological measures.

4. Conveying Verbatim Copies.

You may convey verbatim copies of the Program's source code as you receive it, in any medium, provided that you conspicuously and appropriately publish on each copy an appropriate copyright notice; keep intact all notices stating that this License and any non-permissive terms added in accord with section 7 apply to the code; keep intact all notices of the absence of any warranty; and give all recipients a copy of this License along with the Program. You may charge any price or no price for each copy that you convey, and you may offer support or warranty protection for a fee.

5. Conveying Modified Source Versions.

You may convey a work based on the Program, or the modifications to produce it from the Program, in the form of source code under the terms of section 4, provided that you also meet all of these conditions: a) The work must carry prominent notices stating that you modified it, and giving a relevant date. b) The work must carry prominent notices stating that it is released under this License and any conditions added under section 7. This requirement modifies the requirement in section 4 to "keep intact all notices". c) You must license the entire work, as a whole, under this License to anyone who comes into possession of a copy. This License will therefore apply, along with any applicable section 7 additional terms, to the whole of the work, and all its parts, regardless of how they are packaged. This License gives no permission to license the work in any other way, but it does not invalidate such permission if you have separately received it. d) If the work has interactive user interfaces, each must display Appropriate Legal Notices; however, if the Program has interactive interfaces that do not display Appropriate Legal Notices, your work need not make them do so. A compilation of a covered work with other separate and independent works, which are not by their nature extensions of the covered work, and which are not combined with it such as to form a larger program, in or on a volume of a storage or distribution medium, is called an "aggregate" if the compilation and its resulting copyright are not used to limit the access or legal rights of the compilation's users beyond what the individual works permit. Inclusion of a covered work in an aggregate does not cause this License to apply to the other parts of the aggregate.

6. Conveying Non-Source Forms.

You may convey a covered work in object code form under the terms of sections 4 and 5, provided that you also convey the machine-readable Corresponding Source under the terms of this License, in one of these ways: a) Convey the object code in, or embodied in, a physical product (including a physical distribution medium), accompanied by the Corresponding Source fixed on a durable physical medium customarily used for software interchange. b) Convey the object code in, or embodied in, a physical product (including a physical distribution medium), accompanied by a written offer, valid for at least three years and valid for as long as you offer spare parts or customer support for that product model, to give anyone who possesses the object code either (1) a copy of the Corresponding Source for all the software in the product that is covered by this License, on a durable physical medium customarily used for software interchange, for a price no more than your reasonable cost of physically performing this conveying of source, or (2) access to copy the Corresponding Source from a network server at no charge. c) Convey individual copies of the object code with a copy of the written offer to provide the Corresponding Source. This alternative is allowed only occasionally and noncommercially, and only if you received the object code with such an offer, in accord with subsection 6b. d) Convey the object code by offering access from a designated place (gratis or for a charge), and offer equivalent access to the Corresponding Source in the same way through the same place at no further charge. You need not require recipients to copy the Corresponding Source along with the object code. If the place to copy the object code is a network server, the Corresponding Source may be on a different server (operated by you or a third party) that supports equivalent copying facilities, provided you maintain clear directions next to the object code saying where to find the Corresponding Source. Regardless of what server hosts the Corresponding Source, you remain obligated to ensure that it is available for as long as needed to satisfy these requirements. e) Convey the object code using peer-to-peer transmission, provided you inform other peers where the object code and Corresponding Source of the work are being offered to the general public at no charge under subsection 6d. A separable portion of the object code, whose source code is excluded from the Corresponding Source as a System Library, need not be included in conveying the object code work. A "User Product" is either (1) a "consumer product", which means any tangible personal property which is normally used for personal, family, or household purposes, or (2) anything designed or sold for incorporation into a dwelling. In determining whether a product is a consumer product, doubtful cases shall be resolved in favor of coverage. For a particular product received by a particular user, "normally used" refers to a typical or common use of that class of product, regardless of the status of the particular user or of the way in which the particular user actually uses, or expects or is expected to use, the product. A product is a consumer product

regardless of whether the product has substantial commercial, industrial or non-consumer uses, unless such uses represent the only significant mode of use of the product. "Installation Information" for a User Product means any methods, procedures, authorization keys, or other information required to install and execute modified versions of a covered work in that User Product from a modified version of its Corresponding Source. The information must suffice to ensure that the continued functioning of the modified object code is in no case prevented or interfered with solely because modification has been made. If you convey an object code work under this section in, or with, or specifically for use in, a User Product, and the conveying occurs as part of a transaction in which the right of possession and use of the User Product is transferred to the recipient in perpetuity or for a fixed term (regardless of how the transaction is characterized), the Corresponding Source conveyed under this section must be accompanied by the Installation Information. But this requirement does not apply if neither you nor any third party retains the ability to install modified object code on the User Product (for example, the work has been installed in ROM). The requirement to provide Installation Information does not include a requirement to continue to provide support service, warranty, or updates for a work that has been modified or installed by the recipient, or for the User Product in which it has been modified or installed. Access to a network may be denied when the modification itself materially and adversely affects the operation of the network or violates the rules and protocols for communication across the network. Corresponding Source conveyed, and Installation Information provided, in accord with this section must be in a format that is publicly documented (and with an implementation available to the public in source code form), and must require no special password or key for unpacking, reading or copying.

7. Additional Terms.

"Additional permissions" are terms that supplement the terms of this License by making exceptions from one or more of its conditions. Additional permissions that are applicable to the entire Program shall be treated as though they were included in this License, to the extent that they are valid under applicable law. If additional permissions apply only to part of the Program, that part may be used separately under those permissions, but the entire Program remains governed by this License without regard to the additional permissions. When you convey a copy of a covered work, you may at your option remove any additional permissions from that copy, or from any part of it. (Additional permissions may be written to require their own removal in certain cases when you modify the work.) You may place additional permissions on material, added by you to a covered work, for which you have or can give appropriate copyright permission. Notwithstanding any other provision of this License, for material you add to a covered work, you may (if authorized by the copyright holders of that material) supplement the terms of this License with terms: a) Disclaiming warranty or limiting liability differently from the terms of sections 15 and 16 of this License; or b) Requiring preservation of specified reasonable legal notices or author attributions in that material or in the Appropriate Legal Notices displayed by works containing it; or c) Prohibiting misrepresentation of the origin of that material, or requiring that modified versions of such material be marked in reasonable ways as different from the original version; or d) Limiting the use for publicity purposes of names of licensors or authors of the material; or e) Declining to grant rights under trademark law for use of some trade names, trademarks, or service marks; or f) Requiring indemnification of licensors and authors of that material by anyone who conveys the material (or modified versions of it) with contractual assumptions of liability to the recipient, for any liability that these contractual assumptions directly impose on those licensors and authors. All other non-permissive additional terms are considered "further restrictions" within the meaning of section 10. If the Program as you received it, or any part of it, contains a notice stating that it is governed by this License along with a term that is a further restriction, you may remove that term. If a license document contains a further restriction but permits relicensing or conveying under this License, you may add to a covered work material governed by the terms of that license document, provided that the further restriction does not survive such relicensing or conveying. If you add terms to a covered work in accord with this section, you must place, in the relevant source files, a statement of the additional terms that apply to those files, or a notice indicating where to find the applicable terms. Additional terms, permissive or non-permissive, may be stated in the form of a separately written license, or stated as exceptions; the above requirements apply either way.

8. Termination.

You may not propagate or modify a covered work except as expressly provided under this License. Any attempt otherwise to propagate or modify it is void, and will automatically terminate your rights under this License (including any patent licenses granted under the third paragraph of section 11). However, if you cease all violation of this License, then your license from a particular copyright holder is reinstated (a) provisionally, unless and until the copyright holder explicitly and finally terminates your license, and (b) permanently, if the copyright holder fails to notify you of the violation by some reasonable means prior to 60 days after the cessation. Moreover, your license from a particular copyright holder is reinstated permanently if the copyright holder notifies you of the violation by some reasonable means, this is the first time you have received notice of violation of this License (for any work) from that copyright holder, and you cure the violation prior to 30 days after your receipt of the notice. Termination of your rights under this section does not terminate the licenses of parties who have received copies or rights from you under this License. If your rights have been terminated and not permanently reinstated, you do not qualify to receive new licenses for the same material under section 10.

9. Acceptance Not Required for Having Copies.

You are not required to accept this License in order to receive or run a copy of the Program. Ancillary propagation of a covered work occurring solely as a consequence of using peer-to-peer transmission to receive a copy likewise does not require acceptance. However, nothing other than this License grants you permission to propagate or modify any covered work. These actions infringe copyright if you do not accept this License. Therefore, by modifying or propagating a covered work, you indicate your acceptance of this License to do so.

10. Automatic Licensing of Downstream Recipients.

Each time you convey a covered work, the recipient automatically receives a license from the original licensors, to run, modify and propagate that work, subject to this License. You are not responsible for enforcing compliance by third parties with this License. An "entity transaction" is a transaction transferring control of an organization, or substantially all assets of one, or subdividing an organization, or merging organizations. If propagation of a covered work results from an entity transaction, each party to that transaction who receives a copy of the work also receives whatever licenses to the work the party's predecessor in interest had or could give under the previous paragraph, plus a right to possession of the Corresponding Source of the work from the predecessor in interest, if the predecessor has it or can get it with reasonable efforts. You may not impose any further restrictions on the exercise of the rights granted or affirmed under this License. For example, you may not impose a license fee, royalty, or other charge for exercise of rights granted under this License, and you may not initiate litigation (including a cross-claim or counterclaim in a lawsuit) alleging that any patent claim is infringed by making, using, selling, offering for sale, or importing the Program or any portion of it.

11. Patents.

A "contributor" is a copyright holder who authorizes use under this License of the Program or a work on which the Program is based. The work thus licensed is called the contributor's "contributor version". A contributor's "essential patent claims" are all patent claims owned or controlled by the contributor, whether already acquired or hereafter acquired, that would be infringed by some manner, permitted by this License, of making, using, or selling its contributor version, but do not include claims that would be infringed only as a consequence of further modification of the contributor version. For purposes of this definition, "control" includes the right to grant patent sublicenses in a manner consistent with the requirements of this License. Each contributor grants you a non-exclusive, worldwide, royalty-free patent license under the contributor's essential patent claims, to make, use, sell, offer for sale, import and otherwise run, modify and propagate the contents of its contributor version. In the following three paragraphs, a "patent license" is any express agreement or commitment, however denominated, not to enforce a patent (such as an express permission to practice a patent or covenant not to sue for patent infringement). To "grant" such a patent license to a party means to make such an agreement or commitment not to enforce a patent against the party. If you convey a covered work, knowingly relying

on a patent license, and the Corresponding Source of the work is not available for anyone to copy, free of charge and under the terms of this License, through a publicly available network server or other readily accessible means, then you must either (1) cause the Corresponding Source to be so available, or (2) arrange to deprive yourself of the benefit of the patent license for this particular work, or (3) arrange, in a manner consistent with the requirements of this License, to extend the patent license to downstream recipients. "Knowingly relying" means you have actual knowledge that, but for the patent license, your conveying the covered work in a country, or your recipient's use of the covered work in a country, would infringe one or more identifiable patents in that country that you have reason to believe are valid. If, pursuant to or in connection with a single transaction or arrangement, you convey, or propagate by procuring conveyance of, a covered work, and grant a patent license to some of the parties receiving the covered work authorizing them to use, propagate, modify or convey a specific copy of the covered work, then the patent license you grant is automatically extended to all recipients of the covered work and works based on it. A patent license is "discriminatory" if it does not include within the scope of its coverage, prohibits the exercise of, or is conditioned on the non-exercise of one or more of the rights that are specifically granted under this License. You may not convey a covered work if you are a party to an arrangement with a third party that is in the business of distributing software, under which you make payment to the third party based on the extent of your activity of conveying the work, and under which the third party grants, to any of the parties who would receive the covered work from you, a discriminatory patent license (a) in connection with copies of the covered work conveyed by you (or copies made from those copies), or (b) primarily for and in connection with specific products or compilations that contain the covered work, unless you entered into that arrangement, or that patent license was granted, prior to 28 March 2007. Nothing in this License shall be construed as excluding or limiting any implied license or other defenses to infringement that may otherwise be available to you under applicable patent law.

12. No Surrender of Others' Freedom. If conditions are imposed on you (whether by court order, agreement or otherwise) that contradict the conditions of this License, they do not excuse you from the conditions of this License. If you cannot convey a covered work so as to satisfy simultaneously your obligations under this License and any other pertinent obligations, then as a consequence you may not convey it at all. For example, if you agree to terms that obligate you to collect a royalty for further conveying from those to whom you convey the Program, the only way you could satisfy both those terms and this License would be to refrain entirely from conveying the Program.

13. Use with the GNU Affero General Public License.

Notwithstanding any other provision of this License, you have permission to link or combine any covered work with a work licensed under version 3 of the GNU Affero General Public License into a single combined work, and to convey the resulting work. The terms of this License will continue to apply to the part which is the covered work, but the special requirements of the GNU Affero General Public License, section 13, concerning interaction through a network will apply to the combination as such.

14. Revised Versions of this License.

The Free Software Foundation may publish revised and/or new versions of the GNU General Public License from time to time. Such new versions will be similar in spirit to the present version, but may differ in detail to address new problems or concerns. Each version is given a distinguishing version number. If the Program specifies that a certain numbered version of the GNU General Public License "or any later version" applies to it, you have the option of following the terms and conditions either of that numbered version or of any later version published by the Free Software Foundation. If the Program does not specify a version number of the GNU General Public License, you may choose any version ever published by the Free Software Foundation. If the Program specifies that a proxy can decide which future versions of the GNU General Public License can be used, that proxy's public statement of acceptance of a version permanently authorizes you to choose that version for the Program. Later license versions may give you additional or different permissions. However, no additional obligations are imposed on any author or copyright holder as a result of your choosing to follow a later version.

15. Disclaimer of Warranty.

THERE IS NO WARRANTY FOR THE PROGRAM, TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW. EXCEPT WHEN OTHERWISE STATED IN WRITING THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND/OR OTHER PARTIES PROVIDE THE PROGRAM "AS IS" WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EITHER EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. THE ENTIRE RISK AS TO THE QUALITY AND PERFORMANCE OF THE PROGRAM IS WITH YOU. SHOULD THE PROGRAM PROVE DEFECTIVE, YOU ASSUME THE COST OF ALL NECESSARY SERVICING, REPAIR OR CORRECTION.

16. Limitation of Liability.

IN NO EVENT UNLESS REQUIRED BY APPLICABLE LAW OR AGREED TO IN WRITING WILL ANY COPYRIGHT HOLDER, OR ANY OTHER PARTY WHO MODIFIES AND/OR CONVEYS THE PROGRAM AS PERMITTED ABOVE, BE LIABLE TO YOU FOR DAMAGES, INCLUDING ANY GENERAL, SPECIAL, INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF THE USE OR INABILITY TO USE THE PROGRAM (INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO LOSS OF DATA OR DATA BEING RENDERED INACCURATE OR LOSSES SUSTAINED BY YOU OR THIRD PARTIES OR A FAILURE OF THE PROGRAM TO OPERATE WITH ANY OTHER PROGRAMS), EVEN IF SUCH HOLDER OR OTHER PARTY HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES.

17. Interpretation of Sections 15 and 16.

If the disclaimer of warranty and limitation of liability provided above cannot be given local legal effect according to their terms, reviewing courts shall apply local law that most closely approximates an absolute waiver of all civil liability in connection with the Program, unless a warranty or assumption of liability accompanies a copy of the Program in return for a fee.

END OF TERMS AND CONDITIONS

How to Apply These Terms to Your New Programs

If you develop a new program, and you want it to be of the greatest possible use to the public, the best way to achieve this is to make it free software which everyone can redistribute and change under these terms. To do so, attach the following notices to the program. It is safest to attach them to the start of each source file to most effectively state the exclusion of warranty; and each file should have at least the "copyright" line and a pointer to where the full notice is found. <one line to give the program's name and a brief idea of what it does.> Copyright (C) <year> <name of author> This program is free software: you can redistribute it and/or modify it under the terms of the GNU General Public License as published by the Free Software Foundation, either version 3 of the License, or (at your option) any later version. This program is distributed in the hope that it will be useful, but WITHOUT ANY WARRANTY; without even the implied warranty of MERCHANTABILITY or FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. See the GNU General Public License for more details. You should have received a copy of the GNU General Public License along with this program. If not, see <<http://www.gnu.org/licenses/>>. Also add information on how to contact you by electronic and paper mail. If the program does terminal interaction, make it output a short notice like this when it starts in an interactive mode: <program> Copyright (C) <year><name of author> This program comes with ABSOLUTELY NO WARRANTY; for details type `show w'. This is free software, and you are welcome to redistribute it under certain conditions; type `show c' for details. The hypothetical commands `show w' and `show c' should show the appropriate parts of the General Public License. Of course, your program's commands might be different; for a GUI interface, you would use an "about box". You should also get your employer (if you work as a programmer) or school, if any, to sign a "copyright disclaimer" for the program, if necessary. For more information on this, and how to apply and follow the GNU GPL, see <<http://www.gnu.org/licenses/>>. The GNU General Public License does not permit incorporating your program into proprietary programs. If your program is a subroutine library, you may consider it more useful to permit linking proprietary applications with the library. If this is what you want to do, use the GNU Lesser General Public License instead of this License. But first, please read <<http://www.gnu.org/philosophy/why-not-lgpl.html>>.

GNU lesser general public license, version 2.1

GNU LESSER GENERAL PUBLIC LICENSE Version 2.1, February 1999

Copyright (C) 1991, 1999 Free Software Foundation, Inc. 51 Franklin Street, Fifth Floor, Boston, MA 02110-1301 USA

Everyone is permitted to copy and distribute verbatim copies of this license document, but changing it is not allowed. [This is the first released version of the Lesser GPL. It also counts as the successor of the GNU Library Public License, version 2, hence the version number 2.1.]

Preamble

The licenses for most software are designed to take away your freedom to share and change it. By contrast, the GNU General Public Licenses are intended to guarantee your freedom to share and change free software to make sure the software is free for all its users. This license, the Lesser General Public License, applies to some specially designated software packages - typically libraries - of the Free Software Foundation and other authors who decide to use it. You can use it too, but we suggest you first think carefully about whether this license or the ordinary General Public License is the better strategy to use in any particular case, based on the explanations below. When we speak of free software, we are referring to freedom of use, not price. Our General Public Licenses are designed to make sure that you have the freedom to distribute copies of free software (and charge for this service if you wish); that you receive source code or can get it if you want it; that you can change the software and use pieces of it in new free programs; and that you are informed that you can do these things. To protect your rights, we need to make restrictions that forbid distributors to deny you these rights or to ask you to surrender these rights. These restrictions translate to certain responsibilities for you if you distribute copies of the library or if you modify it. For example, if you distribute copies of the library, whether gratis or for a fee, you must give the recipients all the rights that we gave you. You must make sure that they, too, receive or can get the source code. If you link other code with the library, you must provide complete object files to the recipients, so that they can relink them with the library after making changes to the library and recompiling it. And you must show them these terms so they know their rights. We protect your rights with a two-step method: (1) we copyright the library, and (2) we offer you this license, which gives you legal permission to copy, distribute and/or modify the library. To protect each distributor, we want to make it very clear that there is no warranty for the free library. Also, if the library is modified by someone else and passed on, the recipients should know that what they have is not the original version, so that the original author's reputation will not be affected by problems that might be introduced by others. Finally, software patents pose a constant threat to the existence of any free program. We wish to make sure that a company cannot effectively restrict the users of a free program by obtaining a restrictive license from a patent holder. Therefore, we insist that any patent license obtained for a version of the library must be consistent with the full freedom of use specified in this license. Most GNU software, including some libraries, is covered by the ordinary GNU General Public License. This license, the GNU Lesser General Public License, applies to certain designated libraries, and is quite different from the ordinary General Public License. We use this license for certain libraries in order to permit linking those libraries into non-free programs. When a program is linked with a library, whether statically or using a shared library, the combination of the two is legally speaking a combined work, a derivative of the original library. The ordinary General Public License therefore permits such linking only if the entire combination fits its criteria of freedom. The Lesser General Public License permits more lax criteria for linking other code with the library. We call this license the "Lesser" General Public License because it does less to protect the user's freedom than the ordinary General Public License. It also provides other free software developers less of an advantage over competing non-free programs. These disadvantages are the reason we use the ordinary General Public License for many libraries. However, the Lesser license provides advantages in certain special circumstances. For example, on rare occasions, there may be a special need to encourage the widest possible use of a certain library, so that it becomes a de-facto standard. To achieve this, non-free programs must be allowed to use the library. A more frequent case is that a free library does the same job as widely used non-free libraries. In this case, there is little to gain

by limiting the free library to free software only, so we use the Lesser General Public License. In other cases, permission to use a particular library in non-free programs enables a greater number of people to use a large body of free software. For example, permission to use the GNU C Library in non-free programs enables many more people to use the whole GNU operating system, as well as its variant, the GNU/Linux operating system. Although the Lesser General Public License is less protective of the users' freedom, it does ensure that the user of a program that is linked with the Library has the freedom and the wherewithal to run that program using a modified version of the Library. The precise terms and conditions for copying, distribution and modification follow. Pay close attention to the difference between a "work based on the library" and a "work that uses the library". The former contains code derived from the library, whereas the latter must be combined with the library in order to run.

GNU LESSER GENERAL PUBLIC LICENSE TERMS AND CONDITIONS FOR COPYING, DISTRIBUTION AND MODIFICATION

0. This License Agreement applies to any software library or other program which contains a notice placed by the copyright holder or other authorized party saying it may be distributed under the terms of this Lesser General Public License (also called "this License"). Each licensee is addressed as "you". A "library" means a collection of software functions and/or data prepared so as to be conveniently linked with application programs (which use some of those functions and data) to form executables. The "Library", below, refers to any such software library or work which has been distributed under these terms. A "work based on the Library" means either the Library or any derivative work under copyright law: that is to say, a work containing the Library or a portion of it, either verbatim or with modifications and/or translated straightforwardly into another language. (Hereinafter, translation is included without limitation in the term "modification".) "Source code" for a work means the preferred form of the work for making modifications to it. For a library, complete source code means all the source code for all modules it contains, plus any associated interface definition files, plus the scripts used to control compilation and installation of the library. Activities other than copying, distribution and modification are not covered by this License; they are outside its scope. The act of running a program using the Library is not restricted, and output from such a program is covered only if its contents constitute a work based on the Library (independent of the use of the Library in a tool for writing it). Whether that is true depends on what the Library does and what the program that uses the Library does.

1. You may copy and distribute verbatim copies of the Library's complete source code as you receive it, in any medium, provided that you conspicuously and appropriately publish on each copy an appropriate copyright notice and disclaimer of warranty; keep intact all the notices that refer to this License and to the absence of any warranty; and distribute a copy of this License along with the Library. You may charge a fee for the physical act of transferring a copy, and you may at your option offer warranty protection in exchange for a fee.

2. You may modify your copy or copies of the Library or any portion of it, thus forming a work based on the Library, and copy and distribute such modifications or work under the terms of Section 1 above, provided that you also meet all of these conditions: The modified work must itself be a software library. You must cause the files modified to carry prominent notices stating that you changed the files and the date of any change. You must cause the whole of the work to be licensed at no charge to all third parties under the terms of this License. If a facility in the modified Library refers to a function or a table of data to be supplied by an application program that uses the facility, other than as an argument passed when the facility is invoked, then you must make a good faith effort to ensure that, in the event an application does not supply such function or table, the facility still operates, and performs whatever part of its purpose remains meaningful. (For example, a function in a library to compute square roots has a purpose that is entirely well-defined independent of the application. Therefore, Subsection 2d requires that any application-supplied function or table used by this function must be optional: if the application does not supply it, the square root function must still compute square roots.) These requirements apply to the modified work as a whole. If identifiable sections of that work are not derived from the Library, and can be reasonably considered independent and separate works in themselves, then this License, and its terms, do not apply to those sections when you distribute them as separate works. But when you distribute the same sections as part of a whole which is a work based on the Library, the distribution

of the whole must be on the terms of this License, whose permissions for other licensees extend to the entire whole, and thus to each and every part regardless of who wrote it. Thus, it is not the intent of this section to claim rights or contest your rights to work written entirely by you; rather, the intent is to exercise the right to control the distribution of derivative or collective works based on the Library. In addition, mere aggregation of another work not based on the Library with the Library (or with a work based on the Library) on a volume of a storage or distribution medium does not bring the other work under the scope of this License.

3. You may opt to apply the terms of the ordinary GNU General Public License instead of this License to a given copy of the Library. To do this, you must alter all the notices that refer to this License, so that they refer to the ordinary GNU General Public License, version 2, instead of to this License. (If a newer version than version 2 of the ordinary GNU General Public License has appeared, then you can specify that version instead if you wish.) Do not make any other change in these notices. Once this change is made in a given copy, it is irreversible for that copy, so the ordinary GNU General Public License applies to all subsequent copies and derivative works made from that copy. This option is useful when you wish to copy part of the code of the Library into a program that is not a library.

4. You may copy and distribute the Library (or a portion or derivative of it, under Section 2) in object code or executable form under the terms of Sections 1 and 2 above provided that you accompany it with the complete corresponding machine-readable source code, which must be distributed under the terms of Sections 1 and 2 above on a medium customarily used for software interchange. If distribution of object code is made by offering access to copy from a designated place, then offering equivalent access to copy the source code from the same place satisfies the requirement to distribute the source code, even though third parties are not compelled to copy the source along with the object code.

5. A program that contains no derivative of any portion of the Library, but is designed to work with the Library by being compiled or linked with it, is called a "work that uses the Library". Such a work, in isolation, is not a derivative work of the Library, and therefore falls outside the scope of this License. However, linking a "work that uses the Library" with the Library creates an executable that is a derivative of the Library (because it contains portions of the Library), rather than a "work that uses the library". The executable is therefore covered by this License. Section 6 states terms for distribution of such executables. When a "work that uses the Library" uses material from a header file that is part of the Library, the object code for the work may be a derivative work of the Library even though the source code is not. Whether this is true is especially significant if the work can be linked without the Library, or if the work is itself a library. The threshold for this to be true is not precisely defined by law. If such an object file uses only numerical parameters, data structure layouts and accessors, and small macros and small inline functions (ten lines or less in length), then the use of the object file is unrestricted, regardless of whether it is legally a derivative work. (Executables containing this object code plus portions of the Library will still fall under Section 6.) Otherwise, if the work is a derivative of the Library, you may distribute the object code for the work under the terms of Section 6. Any executables containing that work also fall under Section 6, whether or not they are linked directly with the Library itself.

6. As an exception to the Sections above, you may also combine or link a "work that uses the Library" with the Library to produce a work containing portions of the Library, and distribute that work under terms of your choice, provided that the terms permit modification of the work for the customer's own use and reverse engineering for debugging such modifications. You must give prominent notice with each copy of the work that the Library is used in it and that the Library and its use are covered by this License. You must supply a copy of this License. If the work during execution displays copyright notices, you must include the copyright notice for the Library among them, as well as a reference directing the user to the copy of this License. Also, you must do one of these things: Accompany the work with the complete corresponding machine-readable source code for the Library including whatever changes were used in the work (which must be distributed under Sections 1 and 2 above); and, if the work is an executable linked with the Library, with the complete machine-readable "work that uses the Library", as object code and/or source code, so that the user can modify the Library and then relink to produce a modified executable containing the modified Library. (It is understood that the user who changes

the contents of definitions files in the Library will not necessarily be able to recompile the application to use the modified definitions.) Use a suitable shared library mechanism for linking with the Library. A suitable mechanism is one that (1) uses at run time a copy of the library already present on the user's computer system, rather than copying library functions into the executable, and (2) will operate properly with a modified version of the library, if the user installs one, as long as the modified version is interface-compatible with the version that the work was made with. Accompany the work with a written offer, valid for at least three years, to give the same user the materials specified in Subsection 6a, above, for a charge no more than the cost of performing this distribution. If distribution of the work is made by offering access to copy from a designated place, offer equivalent access to copy the above specified materials from the same place. Verify that the user has already received a copy of these materials or that you have already sent this user a copy. For an executable, the required form of the "work that uses the Library" must include any data and utility programs needed for reproducing the executable from it. However, as a special exception, the materials to be distributed need not include anything that is normally distributed (in either source or binary form) with the major components (compiler, kernel, and so on) of the operating system on which the executable runs, unless that component itself accompanies the executable. It may happen that this requirement contradicts the license restrictions of other proprietary libraries that do not normally accompany the operating system. Such a contradiction means you cannot use both them and the Library together in an executable that you distribute.

7. You may place library facilities that are a work based on the Library side-by-side in a single library together with other library facilities not covered by this License, and distribute such a combined library, provided that the separate distribution of the work based on the Library and of the other library facilities is otherwise permitted, and provided that you do these two things: a) Accompany the combined library with a copy of the same work based on the Library, uncombined with any other library facilities. This must be distributed under the terms of the Sections above. b) Give prominent notice with the combined library of the fact that part of it is a work based on the Library, and explaining where to find the accompanying uncombined form of the same work.

8. You may not copy, modify, sublicense, link with, or distribute the Library except as expressly provided under this License. Any attempt otherwise to copy, modify, sublicense, link with, or distribute the Library is void, and will automatically terminate your rights under this License. However, parties who have received copies, or rights, from you under this License will not have their licenses terminated so long as such parties remain in full compliance.

9. You are not required to accept this License, since you have not signed it. However, nothing else grants you permission to modify or distribute the Library or its derivative works. These actions are prohibited by law if you do not accept this License. Therefore, by modifying or distributing the Library (or any work based on the Library), you indicate your acceptance of this License to do so, and all its terms and conditions for copying, distributing or modifying the Library or works based on it.

10. Each time you redistribute the Library (or any work based on the Library), the recipient automatically receives a license from the original licensor to copy, distribute, link with or modify the Library subject to these terms and conditions. You may not impose any further restrictions on the recipients' exercise of the rights granted herein. You are not responsible for enforcing compliance by third parties with this License.

11. If, as a consequence of a court judgment or allegation of patent infringement or for any other reason (not limited to patent issues), conditions are imposed on you (whether by court order, agreement or otherwise) that contradict the conditions of this License, they do not excuse you from the conditions of this License. If you cannot distribute so as to satisfy simultaneously your obligations under this License and any other pertinent obligations, then as a consequence you may not distribute the Library at all. For example, if a patent license would not permit royalty-free redistribution of the Library by all those who receive copies directly or indirectly through you, then the only way you could satisfy both it and this License would be to refrain entirely from distribution of the Library. If any portion of this section is held invalid or unenforceable under any particular circumstance, the balance of the section is intended to apply, and the section as a whole is intended to apply in other circumstances. It is not the purpose

of this section to induce you to infringe any patents or other property right claims or to contest validity of any such claims; this section has the sole purpose of protecting the integrity of the free software distribution system which is implemented by public license practices. Many people have made generous contributions to the wide range of software distributed through that system in reliance on consistent application of that system; it is up to the author/donor to decide if he or she is willing to distribute software through any other system and a licensee cannot impose that choice. This section is intended to make thoroughly clear what is believed to be a consequence of the rest of this License.

12. If the distribution and/or use of the Library is restricted in certain countries either by patents or by copyrighted interfaces, the original copyright holder who places the Library under this License may add an explicit geographical distribution limitation excluding those countries, so that distribution is permitted only in or among countries not thus excluded. In such case, this License incorporates the limitation as if written in the body of this License.

13. The Free Software Foundation may publish revised and/or new versions of the Lesser General Public License from time to time. Such new versions will be similar in spirit to the present version, but may differ in detail to address new problems or concerns. Each version is given a distinguishing version number. If the Library specifies a version number of this License which applies to it and "any later version", you have the option of following the terms and conditions either of that version or of any later version published by the Free Software Foundation. If the Library does not specify a license version number, you may choose any version ever published by the Free Software Foundation.

14. If you wish to incorporate parts of the Library into other free programs whose distribution conditions are incompatible with these, write to the author to ask for permission. For software which is copyrighted by the Free Software Foundation, write to the Free Software Foundation; we sometimes make exceptions for this. Our decision will be guided by the two goals of preserving the free status of all derivatives of our free software and of promoting the sharing and reuse of software generally.

NO WARRANTY

15. BECAUSE THE LIBRARY IS LICENSED FREE OF CHARGE, THERE IS NO WARRANTY FOR THE LIBRARY, TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW. EXCEPT WHEN OTHERWISE STATED IN WRITING THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND/OR OTHER PARTIES PROVIDE THE LIBRARY "AS IS" WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EITHER EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. THE ENTIRE RISK AS TO THE QUALITY AND PERFORMANCE OF THE LIBRARY IS WITH YOU. SHOULD THE LIBRARY PROVE DEFECTIVE, YOU ASSUME THE COST OF ALL NECESSARY SERVICING, REPAIR OR CORRECTION. 16. IN NO EVENT UNLESS REQUIRED BY APPLICABLE LAW OR AGREED TO IN WRITING WILL ANY COPYRIGHT HOLDER, OR ANY OTHER PARTY WHO MAY MODIFY AND/OR REDISTRIBUTE THE LIBRARY AS PERMITTED ABOVE, BE LIABLE TO YOU FOR DAMAGES, INCLUDING ANY GENERAL, SPECIAL, INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF THE USE OR INABILITY TO USE THE LIBRARY (INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO LOSS OF DATA OR DATA BEING RENDERED INACCURATE OR LOSSES SUSTAINED BY YOU OR THIRD PARTIES OR A FAILURE OF THE LIBRARY TO OPERATE WITH ANY OTHER SOFTWARE), EVEN IF SUCH HOLDER OR OTHER PARTY HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES.

END OF TERMS AND CONDITIONS

How to Apply These Terms to Your New Libraries

If you develop a new library, and you want it to be of the greatest possible use to the public, we recommend making it free software that everyone can redistribute and change. You can do so by permitting redistribution under these terms (or, alternatively, under the terms of the ordinary General Public License). To apply these terms, attach the following notices to the library. It is safest to attach them to the start of each source file to most effectively convey the exclusion of warranty; and each file should have at least the "copyright" line and a pointer to where the full notice is found. <one line to give the program's name and an idea of what it does>. Copyright ©<year> <name of author>. This library is free software; you can redistribute it and/or modify it under the terms of the GNU Lesser General Public License as published by the Free Software Foundation; either version 2.1 of the License, or (at your

option) any later version. This library is distributed in the hope that it will be useful, but WITHOUT ANY WARRANTY; without even the implied warranty of MERCHANTABILITY or FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. See the GNU Lesser General Public License for more details. You should have received a copy of the GNU Lesser General Public License along with this library; if not, write to the Free Software Foundation, Inc., 51 Franklin Street, Fifth Floor, Boston, MA 02110-1301 USA. Also add information on how to contact you by electronic and paper mail. You should also get your employer (if you work as a programmer) or your school, if any, to sign a "copyright disclaimer" for the library, if necessary. Here is a sample; alter the names: Yoyodyne, Inc., hereby disclaims all copyright interest in the library. `Frob' (a library for tweaking knobs) written by James Random Hacker. <signature orf TyCoon> 1 April 1990 Ty Coon, President of Vice. That's all there is to it!

GNU lesser general public license, version 3

GNU LESSER GENERAL PUBLIC LICENSE Version 3, 29 June 2007

Copyright (C) 2007 Free Software Foundation, Inc. <<http://fsf.org/>>

Everyone is permitted to copy and distribute verbatim copies of this license document, but changing it is not allowed. This version of the GNU Lesser General Public License incorporates the terms and conditions of version 3 of the GNU General Public License, supplemented by the additional permissions listed below.

0. Additional Definitions.

As used herein, "this License" refers to version 3 of the GNU Lesser General Public License, and the "GNU GPL" refers to version 3 of the GNU General Public License. "The Library" refers to a covered work governed by this License, other than an Application or a Combined Work as defined below. An "Application" is any work that makes use of an interface provided by the Library, but which is not otherwise based on the Library. Defining a subclass of a class defined by the Library is deemed a mode of using an interface provided by the Library. A "Combined Work" is a work produced by combining or linking an Application with the Library. The particular version of the Library with which the Combined Work was made is also called the "Linked Version". The "Minimal Corresponding Source" for a Combined Work means the Corresponding Source for the Combined Work, excluding any source code for portions of the Combined Work that, considered in isolation, are based on the Application, and not on the Linked Version. The "Corresponding Application Code" for a Combined Work means the object code and/or source code for the Application, including any data and utility programs needed for reproducing the Combined Work from the Application, but excluding the System Libraries of the Combined Work.

1. Exception to Section 3 of the GNU GPL.

You may convey a covered work under sections 3 and 4 of this License without being bound by section 3 of the GNU GPL.

2. Conveying Modified Versions.

If you modify a copy of the Library, and, in your modifications, a facility refers to a function or data to be supplied by an Application that uses the facility (other than as an argument passed when the facility is invoked), then you may convey a copy of the modified version: a) under this License, provided that you make a good faith effort to ensure that, in the event an Application does not supply the function or data, the facility still operates, and performs whatever part of its purpose remains meaningful, or b) under the GNU GPL, with none of the additional permissions of this License applicable to that copy.

3. Object Code Incorporating Material from Library Header Files.

The object code form of an Application may incorporate material from a header file that is part of the Library. You may convey such object code under terms of your choice, provided that, if the incorporated

material is not limited to numerical parameters, data structure layouts and accessors, or small macros, inline functions and templates (ten or fewer lines in length), you do both of the following: a) Give prominent notice with each copy of the object code that the Library is used in it and that the Library and its use are covered by this License. b) Accompany the object code with a copy of the GNU GPL and this license document.

4. Combined Works.

You may convey a Combined Work under terms of your choice that, taken together, effectively do not restrict modification of the portions of the Library contained in the Combined Work and reverse engineering for debugging such modifications, if you also do each of the following: a) Give prominent notice with each copy of the Combined Work that the Library is used in it and that the Library and its use are covered by this License. b) Accompany the Combined Work with a copy of the GNU GPL and this license document. c) For a Combined Work that displays copyright notices during execution, include the copyright notice for the Library among these notices, as well as a reference directing the user to the copies of the GNU GPL and this license document. d) Do one of the following: 0) Convey the Minimal Corresponding Source under the terms of this License, and the Corresponding Application Code in a form suitable for, and under terms that permit, the user to recombine or relink the Application with a modified version of the Linked Version to produce a modified Combined Work, in the manner specified by section 6 of the GNU GPL for conveying Corresponding Source. 1) Use a suitable shared library mechanism for linking with the Library. A suitable mechanism is one that (a) uses at run time a copy of the Library already present on the user's computer system, and (b) will operate properly with a modified version of the Library that is interface-compatible with the Linked Version. e) Provide Installation Information, but only if you would otherwise be required to provide such information under section 6 of the GNU GPL, and only to the extent that such information is necessary to install and execute a modified version of the Combined Work produced by recombining or relinking the Application with a modified version of the Linked Version. (If you use option 4d0, the Installation Information must accompany the Minimal Corresponding Source and Corresponding Application Code. If you use option 4d1, you must provide the Installation Information in the manner specified by section 6 of the GNU GPL for conveying Corresponding Source.)

5. Combined Libraries.

You may place library facilities that are a work based on the Library side by side in a single library together with other library facilities that are not Applications and are not covered by this License, and convey such a combined library under terms of your choice, if you do both of the following: a) Accompany the combined library with a copy of the same work based on the Library, uncombined with any other library facilities, conveyed under the terms of this License. b) Give prominent notice with the combined library that part of it is a work based on the Library, and explaining where to find the accompanying uncombined form of the same work.

6. Revised Versions of the GNU Lesser General Public License.

The Free Software Foundation may publish revised and/or new versions of the GNU Lesser General Public License from time to time. Such new versions will be similar in spirit to the present version, but may differ in detail to address new problems or concerns. Each version is given a distinguishing version number. If the Library as you received it specifies that a certain numbered version of the GNU Lesser General Public License "or any later version" applies to it, you have the option of following the terms and conditions either of that published version or of any later version published by the Free Software Foundation. If the Library as you received it does not specify a version number of the GNU Lesser General Public License, you may choose any version of the GNU Lesser General Public License ever published by the Free Software Foundation. If the Library as you received it specifies that a proxy can decide whether future versions of the GNU Lesser General Public License shall apply, that proxy's public statement of acceptance of any version is permanent authorization for you to choose that version for the Library.

PHP license

The PHP License, version 3.01 Copyright (c) 1999 - 2010

The PHP Group. All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, is permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.

Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.

The name "PHP" must not be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without prior written permission. For written permission, please contact group@php.net.

Products derived from this software may not be called "PHP", nor may "PHP" appear in their name, without prior written permission from group@php.net. You may indicate that your software works in conjunction with PHP by saying "Foo for PHP" instead of calling it "PHP Foo" or "phpfoo".

The PHP Group may publish revised and/or new versions of the license from time to time. Each version will be given a distinguishing version number. Once covered code has been published under a particular version of the license, you may always continue to use it under the terms of that version. You may also choose to use such covered code under the terms of any subsequent version of the license published by the PHP Group. No one other than the PHP Group has the right to modify the terms applicable to covered code created under this License.

Redistributions of any form whatsoever must retain the following acknowledgment: "This product includes PHP software, freely available from <http://www.php.net/software/>".

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE PHP DEVELOPMENT TEAM ``AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE PHP DEVELOPMENT TEAM OR ITS CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

This software consists of voluntary contributions made by many individuals on behalf of the PHP Group. The PHP Group can be contacted via Email at group@php.net. For more information on the PHP Group and the PHP project, please see <http://www.php.net>. PHP includes the Zend Engine, freely available at <http://www.zend.com>.

Index

Numerics

1PPS, NMEA ZDA format 13	
datagram format	200
1PPS, Trimble format 14	
datagram format	201

A

about	
export license	11
maintenance	12
Portable Hydrographic System	76
product license	11
registered trademarks	11
sensor survey	60
subscriptions	11
target audience	11
this publication	11
accuracy values	
survey	75
additional optional items	
not provided with the delivery	18
adjusting	
scaling of Integrity view	147
speed scaling of Compass view	148
UTM presentation	149
alarm message	
receiving	150
Alarms page	
description	239
antenna height difference	
use Calibration Wizard	106
antenna location from origin	104
antenna location parameters	
entering	104

B

basic items	
provided with the delivery	17
broadcast	100
BSD license	
copyright	245

C

cable	
specifications	169
cable drawing	
cable plan	43
cable plan	
description	43
cable Sensor Unit	
terminating	30
cables	

cables (continued)

PHS interface cables description	79
cabling	
Sensor Unit	45
Calibration format 7	
datagram format	197
Calibration Wizard	
using	106
centre of gravity (CG)	102
changing	
Sensor Unit IP address	132
system mode	96
communication interface	
description	97
how to set	98
communication interfaces	
description	48
Compass view	
adjusting speed scaling	148
configuration	
copy system configuration	152
PHS	84
configuration backup	
restoring	153
configuration management system	
how to enter	93
conformity declaration	170
connections	
cabling	43
connectors	
pin layout	46
connectors subsea bottle	
description	40
coordinate system	61
copy	
system configuration	152
copyright	
BSD license	245
f2c license	246
GCC license	246
GNU C library license	247
GNU general public license, v 2	250
GNU general public license, v3	253
GNU lesser general public license, version 2.1	261
GNU lesser general public license, version 3	266
PHP license	268
CRP	61
cycling redundancy check (CRC) algorithm	
description	203

D

data inputs	
Sensor Unit	168

data outputs	
Sensor Unit	168
data source HMI	
selecting	149
Data source page	
description	238
datagram format	
1PPS, NMEA ZDA format 13	200
1PPS, Trimble format 14	201
Calibration format 7	197
Echo sounder 18, TSS1 format	199
Echo sounder 9 format	198
EM Attitude 3000	193
HDT (true heading)	182
KM Binary	195
Kongsberg EM Attitude 3000	193
Motion EM3000	193
PFreeHeave	201
RDI ADCP format	200
RTCM format 80	202
Seapath Binary 26	191
datum specifications	
Sensor Unit	169
DDC	
sentence format	174
deleting	
monitoring points	125
description	
Alarms page	239
bottle connectors	40
cable plan	43
communication interface	97
communication interfaces	48
cycling redundancy check (CRC) algorithm	203
Data source page	238
determining sensor position and orientation	62
DGNSS corrections	49
DgnssLink parameters page	226
Ethernet connections	48
Gyro interface parameters page	231
interface cables PHS	79
MGC	20
MGC interface parameters page	227
MGC mounting orientation	67
MGC Mounting Wizard page	211, 215
miniMRU	20
Monitoring points Geometry page	219
MRU	19
MRU mounting orientation	64
MRU subsea bottle	19
Network page parameters	228
operator software configuration	95
Portable Hydrographic System	76
Position Integrity page	235, 236
PPS signal	49
Sensors DGNSS SBAS page	229
Sensors DGNSS XP/G2/G4 page	230
Sensors GNSS Geometry page	208
Sensors MGC Geometry page	214, 215
Sensors MRU Geometry page	210, 211

description (<i>continued</i>)	
Sensors MRU/MGC Heave config page	218
serial interface page	221
Sky view page	233
spider cable	20
subsea bottle pin configuration	40
system	13
TelegramOut parameters page	223
UTM page	237
Vessel description	207
Vessel geometry page	206
View page	233
descriptionEthernet interface page	221
determining	
distance vectors	75
MGC mounting angles	117
miniMRU mounting angles	121
miniMRU mounting orientation	69
MRU mounting angles	112
determining distance vectors	73
determining sensor position and orientation	
description	62
determining system coordinates	73
DGNSS correction link	
setting up	131
DGNSS corrections	
description	49
DgnssLink parameters page	
description	226
diagram	
system	16, 77
dimensions	
MGC subsea bottle	162
MGC subsea bottle SB50	158
miniMRU subsea housing	160, 162
MRU subsea bottle	162
MRU subsea bottle SB12	157
sensor unit	156, 161
technical specifications	161
disposal	
of equipment	242
distance vectors	
determining	75
what to determine	73
drawing	
cable plan	43
MGC subsea bottle SB50	158
miniMRU subsea housing	160
MRU subsea bottle	157
drawings	
installation	26
DTM	
sentence format	175
E	
Echo sounder 18, TSS1	
datagram format	199
Echo sounder 9	
datagram format	198

EM Attitude 3000	
datagram format	193
enabling	
Fugro high precision services	138
entering	
antenna location parameters	104
vessel identification parameters	134
entering configuration management system	93
environmental specifications	
MGC subsea bottle	164
miniMRU subsea housing	164
MRU subsea bottle	164
Sensor Unit	163
equipment	
disposal	242
storage	242
taking delivery	241
unpacking	241
WEEE waste handling	242
equipment handling	241
Ethernet connections	
description	48
Ethernet interface	
how to use	100
Ethernet interface page	
description	221
export	
license	21
restrictions	21
export license	11
external interface specifications	
sensor unit	165
F	
f2c license	
copyright	246
free and open source software	244
frequencies	
Seapath radio frequencies	26
front interfaces	
Processing Unit	79
G	
GBS	
sentence format	175
GCC license	
copyright	246
GGA	
sentence format	176
GGK	
sentence format	177
GNS	
sentence format	178, 179
GNSS antenna	
location	27
GNU C library license	
copyright	247
GNU general public license, v 2	
copyright	250

GNU general public license, v3	
copyright	253
GNU lesser general public license, v 2.1	
copyright	261
GNU lesser general public license, version 3	
copyright	266
GRS	
sentence format	180
GSA	
sentence format	180
GST	
sentence format	181
GSV	
sentence format	182
Gyro interface parameters page	
description	231

H

handling	
WEEE waste	242
HDT	
datagram format	182
heading accuracy	
specifications	165, 167
heading offset	
use Calibration Wizard	106
heave accuracy	
specifications	166, 167
heave filter options	
selecting	124
high precision services	
enabling	138
how to	
change Sensor Unit IP address	132
change system mode	96
copy system configuration	152
delete a monitoring point	125
enable high precision services	138
enter antenna location parameters	104
enter configuration management system	93
enter vessel identification parameters	134
import vessel shape from file	134
select heading input from gyro	139
set MGC location	116
set MGC mounting angles	116
set monitoring points	125
set MRU location	111
set MRU mounting angles	111
set up a communication interface	98
set up DGNSS correction link	131
set up TelegramOut interface	129
set vessel dimensions	102
set vessel reference points	102
use Seapath as NTP server	22
use the Ethernet interface	100
use the serial interface	99
use Wizard to determine MGC mounting angles	117
use Wizard to determine MRU mounting angles	112
verify the Seapath 130 is ready for use	151

how to

adjust scaling of Integrity view	147
adjust speed scaling of Compass view	148
adjust UTM presentation	149
apply power to the system	93
cabling for the Seapath system	45
install operator software	41
mount MGC subsea bottle	36
mount miniMRU housing	38
mount miniMRU subsea housing	39
mount MRU subsea bottle	34
mount Sensor Unit	32
receive alarm messages	150
restore configuration backup	153
select appearance of Sky view	146
select heave filter options	124
select HMI software data source	149
select position of view in display	145
select SBAS satellites	137
set miniMRU location	119
set miniMRU mounting angles	119
set up K-Controller	89
set up MGC an INS	140
set up NTRIP client	142
set up SIS version 4	87
terminate Sensor Unit cable	30
uninstall operator software	42
use Calibration Wizard	106
use Wizard to determine miniMRU mounting angles	121

I

importing	
vessel shape from file	134
Inertial Measurement Unit	
select location	28
Inertial Navigation System	
setting up MGC as INS	140
information	24
input from gyro compass	
selecting	139
installation	
drawings	26
junction box	53
installing	
Sensor Unit	32
Integrity view	
adjusting scaling	147
interface cables PHS	
description	79
interface options	
TelegramOut interface	171
interfaces	
front of Processing Unit	79
sensor unit	165
internet	
network security	23
introduction	

introduction (continued)

Seapath 130 sensor unit	18
IP address Sensor Unit	
changing	132

J

junction box	
installation	53

K

K-Controller	
setting up	89
KM Binary	
datagram format	195
KM Binary datagram format	195
Kongsberg Discovery AS	
support	24
Kongsberg EM Attitude 3000	
datagram format	193
Kongsberg EM Attitude 3000 datagram format	193

L

license	
export	21
export license	11
product license	11
location	
GNSS antenna	27
Inertial Measurement Unit	28
location MGC	
how to set	116
location MRU	
how to set	111

M

main items	
provided with the delivery	17
maintenance	12
MGC	
description	20
purpose	20
sensor point	71
sensor survey	71
MGC interface parameters page	
description	227
MGC location	
how to set	116
MGC mounting angles	
how to determine with Wizard	117
how to set	116
MGC mounting orientation	
description	67
MGC Mounting Wizard page	
description	211, 215
MGC subsea bottle	
dimensions	162
environmental specifications	164
mounting	36

MGC subsea bottle (<i>continued</i>)	
Power specifications	163
weight	162
MGC subsea bottle SB50	
drawing	158
outline dimensions	158
miniMRU	
description	20
purpose	20
sensor point	72
sensor survey	72
setting location	119
setting mounting angles	119
miniMRU mounting orientation	
determining	69
miniMRU subsea housing	
dimensions	162
drawing	160
environmental specifications	164
mounting	38, 39
outline dimensions	160
Power specifications	163
weight	162
mode	
changing system mode	96
monitoring point	
how to delete	125
monitoring point (MP)	75
monitoring points	
how to set	125
Monitoring points Geometry page	
description	219
Motion EM3000	
datagram format	193
mounting	
Sensor Unit	32
mounting angles MGC	
how to determine with Wizard	117
how to set	116
mounting angles miniMRU	
using Wizard to determine	121
mounting angles MRU	
how to determine with Wizard	112
how to set	111
Mounting Wizard	
MGC mounting angles	117
miniMRU mounting angles	121
MRU mounting angles	112
MRU	
description	19
purpose	19
sensor point	70
sensor survey	70
MRU location	
how to set	111
MRU mounting angles	
how to determine with Wizard	112
how to set	111
MRU mounting orientation	
description	64

MRU subsea bottle	
description	19
dimensions	162
drawing	157
environmental specifications	164
mounting	34
Power specifications	163
purpose	19
weight	162
MRU subsea bottle SB12	
outline dimensions	157
multicast	100

N

NAVEngine configuration	
Standard	94
navigation reference point (NRP)	75, 102
Network page parameters	
description	228
network security	23
NMEA datagram	
HDT (true heading)	182
NMEA DDC	
sentence format	174
NMEA DTM	
sentence format	175
NMEA GBS	
sentence format	175
NMEA GGA	
sentence format	176
NMEA GGK	
sentence format	177
NMEA GNS	
sentence format	178, 179
NMEA GRS	
sentence format	180
NMEA GSA	
sentence format	180
NMEA GST	
sentence format	181
NMEA GSV	
sentence format	182
NMEA HDT	
datagram format	182
NMEA RMC	
sentence format	183
NMEA ROT	
sentence format	184
NMEA sentence	
DDC (display dimming, control)	174
DTM local geodetic datum)	175
GBS (RAIM support)	175
GGA (GPS fix data)	176
GGK time position, type and DOP	177
GNS (position fix)	178, 179
GRS (RAIM support)	180
GST (GNSS pseudorange error)	181
GSV (GNSS satellites in view)	182
RMC (time, date, position, course, speed)	183

NMEA sentence (<i>continued</i>)	
ROT (vessel heading)	184
THS (vessel heading)	185
VBW (water/ground speed)	184
VER (version)	186
VTG (COG, GS)	187
ZDA (time, date)	187
NMEA THS	
sentence format	185
NMEA VBW	
sentence format	184
NMEA VER	
sentence format	186
NMEA VTG	
sentence format	187
NMEA ZDA	
sentence format	187
NTP server	
using Seapath as NTP server	22
NTRIP client	
setting up	142
O	
offset angles	75
open source software	244
operating voltage	
Sensor Unit	163
operator software	
installing	41
uninstalling	42
operator software configuration	93
description	95
optional items	
not provided with the delivery	18
options	
TelegramOut interface	171
origin	61
origin location	102
outline dimensions	
MGC subsea bottle SB50	158
miniMRU subsea housing	160
MRU subsea bottle SB12	157
sensor unit	156
technical specifications	161
overview	
Seapath 130 sensor unit	18

P

page	
Alarms	239
Data source	238
DgnssLink parameters	226
Ethernet interface	221
Gyro interface parameters	231
MGC interface parameters	227
MGC Mounting Wizard	211, 215
Monitoring points Geometry	219
Network parameters	228
Position Integrity	235, 236

page (<i>continued</i>)	
Sensors DGNSS SBAS	229
Sensors DGNSS XP/G2/G4	230
Sensors GNSS Geometry	208
Sensors MGC Geometry	214, 215
Sensors MRU Geometry	210, 211
Sensors MRU/MGC Heave config	218
serial interface	221
Sky view	233
TelegramOut parameters page	223
UTM	237
Vessel description	207
Vessel geometry	206
View page	233
password	
system password	96
performance	
specifications	165, 167
personnel	
qualifications	27
PFreeHeave	
datagram format	201
PHP license	
copyright	268
PHS	
configuration	84
pin configuration subsea bottle	
description	40
pin layout	
connectors	46
Portable Hydrographic System	
about	76
position accuracy	
specifications	166, 167
position drift	
specifications	166, 167
Position Integrity page	
description	235, 236
position of view in display	
selecting	145
positioning services	
subscriptions	11
power	
apply power to the system	93
power requirements	
Sensor Unit	163
Power specifications	
MGC subsea bottle	163
miniMRU subsea housing	163
MRU subsea bottle	163
PPS signal	
description	49
procedure	
adjusting scaling of Integrity view	147
adjusting speed scaling of Compass view	148
adjusting UTM presentation	149
applying power to the system	93
cabling for the Seapath system	45
changing Sensor Unit IP address	132
changing system mode	96

procedure (<i>continued</i>)		
copy system configuration	152	
deleting monitoring points	125	
determining MGC mounting angles with Wizard ..	117	
determining MRU mounting angle with Wizard ..	112	
enabling high precision services	138	
enter vessel identification parameters	134	
entering antenna location parameters	104	
import vessel shape from file	134	
installing operator software	41	
mounting MGC subsea bottle	36	
mounting miniMRU housing	38	
mounting miniMRU subsea housing	39	
mounting MRU subsea bottle	34	
mounting Sensor Unit	32	
receiving alarm messages	150	
restoring configuration backup	153	
selecting appearance of Sky view	146	
selecting heading input from gyro	139	
selecting heave filter options	124	
selecting HMI software data source	149	
selecting position of view in display	145	
selecting SBAS satellites	137	
setting MGC location	116	
setting MGC mounting angles	116	
setting miniMRU location	119	
setting miniMRU mounting angles	119	
setting monitoring points	125	
setting MRU location	111	
setting MRU mounting angles	111	
setting up communication interfaces	98	
setting up DGNSS correction link	131	
setting up K-Controller	89	
setting up MGC as INS	140	
setting up NTRIP client	142	
setting up SIS version 4	87	
setting up TelegramOut interface	129	
setting vessel dimensions	102	
setting vessel reference points	102	
terminating Sensor Unit cable	30	
uninstalling operator software	42	
using Calibration Wizard	106	
using Ethernet interface	100	
using serial interface	99	
using Wizard to determine miniMRU mounting angles	121	
verifying the Seapath 130 is ready for use	151	
Processing Unit		
front interfaces	79	
product		
conformity declaration	170	
restrictions	21, 22	
product license	11	
PSXN20	188	
PSXN21	189	
PSXN22	189	
PSXN23	190	
PSXN24	191	
purpose		
MGC	20	
purpose (<i>continued</i>)		
miniMRU	20	
MRU	19	
MRU subsea bottle	19	
Seapath 130 sensor unit	18	
spider cable	20	
this publication	11	
Q		
qualifications		
personnel	27	
R		
radio frequencies		
Seapath	26	
RDI ADCP		
datagram format	200	
receiving		
alarm messages	150	
reference plane	61	
registered trademarks	11	
requirements		
personnel qualifications	27	
restoring		
configuration backup	153	
restrictions		
export	21	
use of product	21, 22	
warranty	21	
RMC		
sentence format	183	
roll and pitch accuracy		
specifications	165, 167	
ROT		
sentence format	184	
RTCM format 80		
datagram format	202	
S		
SBAS satellites		
selecting	137	
scope of supply		
basic items	17	
optional items not provided with the delivery	18	
Seapath		
radio frequencies	26	
Seapath 130		
system diagram	16, 77	
Seapath 130 sensor unit		
introduction	18	
overview	18	
purpose	18	
Seapath Binary 26		
datagram format	191	
security		
network	23	
selecting		
appearance of Sky view	146	

selecting (<i>continued</i>)		
heading input from gyro	139	
heave filter options	124	
HMI software data source	149	
position of view in display	145	
SBAS satellites	137	
sensor orientation		
determining	62	
sensor point		
MGC	71	
miniMRU	72	
MRU	70	
sensor unit	70	
sensor position		
determining	62	
sensor survey		
MGC	71	
miniMRU	72	
MRU	70	
sensor unit	70	
sensor survey on vessels	60	
sensor unit		
dimensions	156, 161	
external interface specifications	165	
sensor point	70	
sensor survey	70	
weight	161	
Sensor Unit		
cabling	45	
data inputs	168	
data outputs	168	
datum specifications	169	
environmental specifications	163	
mounting	32	
power requirements	163	
transportation box	26	
Sensors DGNSS SBAS page		
description	229	
Sensors DGNSS XP/G2/G4 page		
description	230	
Sensors GNSS Geometry page		
description	208	
Sensors MGC Geometry page		
description	214, 215	
Sensors MRU Geometry page		
description	210, 211	
Sensors MRU/MGC Heave config page		
description	218	
sentence format		
DDC (display dimming, control)	174	
DTM (local geodetic datum)	175	
GBS (RAIM support)	175	
GGA (GPS fix data)	176	
GGK time, position, type and DOP	177	
GNS (position fix)	178, 179	
GRS (RAIM support)	180	
GSA (GNSS DOP, active satellites)	180	
GST (GNSS pseudorange error)	181	
GSV (GNSS satellites in view)	182	
RMC (time, date, position, course, speed)	183	
sentence format (<i>continued</i>)		
ROT (vessel heading)	184	
THS (vessel heading)	185	
VBW (water/ground speed)	184	
VER (version)	186	
VTG (COG, GS)	187	
ZDA (time, date)	187	
serial interface		
how to use	99	
serial interface page		
description	221	
server		
Seapath used as NTP server	22	
setting		
MGC location	116	
MGC mounting angles	116	
miniMRU location	119	
miniMRU mounting angles	119	
monitoring points	125	
MRU location	111	
MRU mounting angles	111	
vessel dimensions	102	
vessel reference points	102	
setting to work		
summary	91	
Setting to work summary	91	
setting up		
communication interface	98	
DGNSS correction link	131	
setting up t		
TelegramOut interface	129	
shape dimensions	102	
shape type	102	
SIS version 4		
setting up	87	
size		
MGC subsea bottle	162	
MGC subsea bottle SB50	158	
miniMRU subsea housing	160, 162	
MRU subsea bottle	162	
MRU subsea bottle SB12	157	
sensor unit	161	
technical specifications	161	
Sky view appearance		
selecting	146	
Sky view page		
description	233	
software		
source code	244	
source code		
software	244	
specification		
dimensions sensor unit	161	
external interfaces sensor unit	165	
weight sensor unit	161	
specifications		
cable	169	
data inputs	168	
data outputs	168	
datum	169	

specifications (<i>continued</i>)	
heading accuracy	165, 167
heave accuracy	166, 167
outline dimensions	161
performance	165, 167
position accuracy	166, 167
position drift	166, 167
roll and pitch accuracy	165, 167
velocity accuracy	166, 167
weight	161
spider cable	
description	20
purpose	20
standard configuration	94
standard items	
provided with the delivery	17
standard tools	
installation of system units	25
storage	
of equipment	242
subscriptions	
high performance positioning services	11
subsea bottle connectors	
description	40
summary	
setting to work	91
supply voltage	
Sensor Unit	163
support	
Kongsberg Discovery AS	24
support information	24
survey	
accuracy values	75
miniMRU	72
survey of sensors on vessels	60
system	
description	13
diagram	16, 77
system configuration	
Advanced	93
copying	152
Standard	93, 94
system coordinates	
what to determine	73
system mode	
how to change	96
system password	96
T	
taking delivery	
of equipment	241
target audience	
this publication	11
technical specifications	
outline dimensions	161
performance	165, 167
weight	161
TelegramOut	
interface options	171
TelegramOut interface	
setting up	129
TelegramOut parameters page	
description	223
terminating	
Sensor Unit cable	30
this publication	
about	11
purpose	11
target audience	11
this user manual	
about	11
purpose	11
target audience	11
THS	
sentence format	185
tools	
installation of system units	25
transportation box	
Sensor Unit	26
U	
unicast	100
unpacking	
equipment	241
use of product	
restrictions	21, 22
using	
Ethernet interface	100
Seapath used as NTP server	22
serial interface	99
UTM page	
description	237
UTM presentation	
adjusting	149
V	
VBW	
sentence format	184
velocity accuracy	
specifications	166, 167
VER	
sentence format	186
verifying	
Seapath 130 is ready for use	151
vessel coordinate system	61
vessel description	
entering identification parameters	134
Vessel description page	
description	207
vessel dimensions	
setting	102
Vessel geometry page	
description	206
vessel reference points	
setting	102
vessel shape	
import shape from file	134
View page	

View page (<i>continued</i>)		
description	233	
VTG		
sentence format	187	
W		
warranty		
restrictions	21	
waste		
handling	242	
WEEE (Waste Electrical and Electronic Equipment) .	242	
weight		
MGC subsea bottle	162	
miniMRU subsea housing	162	
MRU subsea bottle	162	
weight (<i>continued</i>)		
sensor unit	161	
technical specifications	161	
X		
X-axis	61	
Y		
Y-axis	61	
Z		
Z-axis	61	
ZDA		
sentence format	187	

©2025 Kongsberg Discovery AS